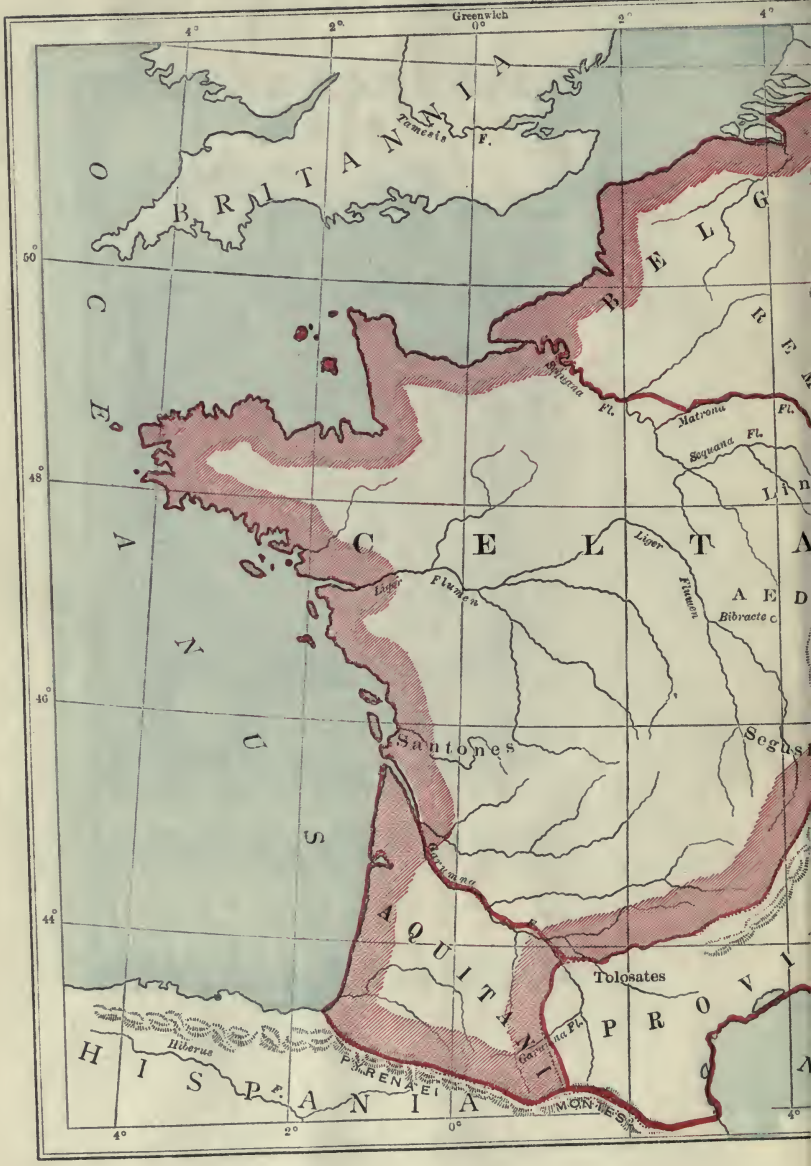
GIFT OF
Benjamin Ide Wheeler

SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
MDCCCLXVIII
LVX
FIAT

EX LIBRIS

760f
J33


Greenwich
4°
2°
0°
2°
4°
50°
48°
46°
44°
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
BRITANNIA
Tamesis F.
BELGAE
Sequana Fl.
Matrona Fl.
Sequana Fl.
CELTAE
Liger Fluvius
Liger Fluvius
Bibracte
Santones
Segusiani
AQUITANI
Tolosates
PROVINCIA
Hiberus
PYRENAEI MONTES
HISPANIA

GAUL
in CAESAR'S time
Taken with some changes from
H. Meusel
0 50 100 150
Roman miles
GERMANIA
Rhenus Fl.
Danuvius Fl.
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Helvetii
Sequani
Vosegus Mons
Rhenus Fl.
Rhodanus Fl.
Genava
Lacus Lemannus
Allobroges
Gallia Cisalpina
(Provincia Citerior)
Padus Fl.
Ocelum
Cottius
Alpes
Noreia
Aquileia
ILLYRICUM
MARE ADRIATICUM
APPENNINUS MONS
ITALIA
MARE
ROMA
6°
8°
10°
12°
14°
50°
48°
46°
44°

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/bellumhelveticum00janerich

1. turris *2. testudo arietaria* *3. testudo* *4. onager* *5. ballista*

STORMING A CITY

The Lake Classical Series

BELLUM HELVETICUM

A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN

(REVISED EDITION)

BY

ARTHUR L. JANES

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, N. Y.

AND

PAUL R. JENKS

FLUSHING HIGH SCHOOL, LONG ISLAND, N. Y.

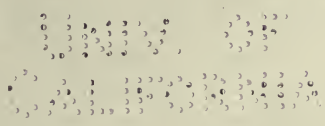
WITH

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph. D.

UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS



SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO NEW YORK

Benj I Wheeler

COPYRIGHT, 1906, 1913
BY SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

PREFACE

The experience of many teachers has proved the excellence of *Bellum Helveticum*. It has been found interesting and stimulating to both teachers and classes during the actual time of using the book; and the advantage of using it appears still more clearly when the student advances to his second year's work. The chasm between the beginner's book and Caesar does not exist when the student has been reading Caesar from almost his first lesson in Latin.

But these teachers have suggested many improvements which have led to the revision and rearrangement of the book. Furthermore, since the last edition, Professor Lodge's studies in vocabulary and Mr. Byrne's studies in syntax have appeared, and these have been used as a basis in the present edition.

The leading features of the present revision are:

First: The text of Chapters 1 – 3 of Caesar's Gallic War is given in simplified form, Chapters 4 – 14 in both simplified and original form, and Chapters 15 – 29 in the original form only. Caesar's great work presents a model of perfect Latinity, sufficiently simple in form and structure for the beginner, when it is taken slowly. It affords an illustration of the most important principles of the language, and prepares the pupil for a further study of Latin.

Second: Sixteen lessons preliminary to the text have been given in order to inculcate a real knowledge of forms before the translation of the narrative is begun. Throughout the book practically no form or construction occurs in the text until it is understood by the pupil.

417190

Third: In the notes on the text, only such material has been included as is necessary for translation. Paradigms of inflection and the principles of syntax are introduced gradually and logically—not depending on their chance occurrence in the text—thus giving a thorough grammar method based upon connected narrative. The sentences almost without exception are new, and are based upon the vocabulary of the text and upon the principle taught in the lesson. Nothing has been included in the body of the book which is not needed for the second year's work, as shown by Byrne's *Syntax of High School Latin*. Each construction is reviewed in at least three successive lessons.

Fourth: In the first half of the book, vocabularies have been so arranged that new words are used in the short Latin-English and English-Latin sentences before they are met in the text. It is expected that the student will master the words of each lesson, so that he will recognize them as they occur again in the text. This saves the time of the student—often wasted in looking up the same words repeatedly—strengthens the memory, cultivates the attention, and secures accurate knowledge.

Fifth: The vocabulary of the body of the book (which includes Chapters 1–13, 7) contains 519 words. Such of these words as are assigned by Professor Lodge to the prescribed list for the first year (with a very few additions) are repeated in the vocabularies of the review lessons. Of these, the 365 which are the most common are made the basis of the English-Latin sentences, and are also repeated in the English-Latin vocabularies of the review lessons.

Sixth: When Lesson LXXXV has been reached, the pupil will have had all the forms, syntax, and vocabulary needed for starting his second year's work. Provision is made, however, in the lessons based upon Chapters 13 and 14, for those teachers who want additional forms and syntax. For

those who wish more translation, Chapters 15–29 have been added, with copious notes. Upon these chapters are based sentences which review the forms and, in related groups, the principles of syntax of the earlier lessons.

Seventh: Lessons upon word formation have been added, treating all the affixes which can profitably be studied in the first year.

Eighth: Derivation of English words has received attention throughout, and various methods of treating this valuable part of Latin study have been suggested.

Ninth: The vocabularies are fuller than is usual, and much information generally placed in the notes has been inserted, with the idea that the pupil may be encouraged to use the vocabulary rather than the notes.

Tenth: A classroom edition is supplied, containing the exercises which the pupil has prepared, but no information; supplementary sentences for each section, to give additional matter for drill and for sight work, if desired; also material for impromptu oral practice.

The work of rewriting has been very materially assisted by suggestions from many teachers, for whose kindness hearty thanks are extended. It was impossible to carry out all the suggestions, but none was passed over without consideration, and all the changes made are in accord with what seemed to be the general trend of opinion.

Arthur L. Janes.
Paul R. Jenks.

New York City,
June, 1913.

PUBLISHERS' ANNOUNCEMENT

BELLUM HELVETIUM, by Professors C. M. Lowe and Nathaniel Butler, was published in 1889. The book was revised by the same authors and published under the title of BELLUM HELVETICUM in 1892. Both authors having gone into other fields of study and work in 1897, an arrangement was made with Professor Arthur Tappan Walker, of the University of Kansas, to rewrite the Grammatical Appendix, and recast somewhat the lessons in the body of the book. This was done, and the book immediately took on new life, increasing its sale four-fold.

Two years ago, Messrs. Janes and Jenks, of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, where the book had been used since 1891, began working out some modifications and improvements, as they believed, on the BELLUM HELVETICUM for their class recitations. An arrangement was made with them to embody these changes in a new edition of the book, to be published over their names, and Professor Walker was to provide the Grammatical Appendix. The book, with this successful career, and with the benefit of this experienced and scholarly authorship, is given to the teaching public by the publishers with great confidence in its worth.

June, 1906.

June, 1913.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Lesson.		Page.
Introductory		19
I.	First Declension	25
II.	First Declension (continued)	27
III.	Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation	29
IV.	Second Declension	33
V.	Present Indicative Active of Second Conjugation	35
VI.	Second Declension (continued)	37
VII.	Gender	38
VIII.	Adjectives of the First and Second Declension (continued). Present Indicative of **sum**	41
First Review		43
IX.	Third Declension	45
X.	Third Declension (continued)	48
XI.	Third Declension (continued)	50
XII.	Third Declension (continued)	51
XIII.	Adjectives of the Third Declension	54
XIV.	Comparison of Adjectives. Use of Prepositions	56
XV.	Present Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation	59
XVI.	Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation and of the Third Conjugation in **-iō**	60
Second Review		62
XVII.	The Demonstratives **hīc** and **ille**	64
XVIII.	The Demonstrative **is**	66
XIX.	The Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	68
XX.	Imperfect and Future Indicative of **sum**	71
XXI.	Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of the First and Second Conjugations	73
XXII.	Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations	76
XXIII.	Present Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations	79

XXIV. Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations 81
XXV. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations... 84
THIRD REVIEW 87
XXVI. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of **sum** 88
XXVII. Principal Parts and Their Uses. Perfect Active System 91
XXVIII. Principal Parts (continued)..... 95
XXIX. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive 97
XXX. Simple and Compound Verbs..... 100
FOURTH REVIEW 102
XXXI. Adjectives with Genitive in **ius**..... 104
XXXII. Fourth Declension 106
XXXIII. Fifth Declension 108
XXXIV. Ablative of Agent 110
XXXV. Ablative of Means 112
XXXVI. Ablative of Time 114
XXXVII. Accusative of Extent 115
XXXVIII. Subjunctive of **sum** 117
XXXIX. Subjunctive Active of the First and Second Conjugations 119
XL. Subjunctive Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations 122
XLI. Subjunctive Passive of all Conjugations..... 125
XLII. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses..... 128
XLIII. Infinitives 131
FIFTH REVIEW 134
XLIV. Participles 136
XLV. Ablative Absolute 139
XLVI. The Intensive and Reflexive Pronouns..... 141
XLVII. Purpose Clauses 144
XLVIII. Deponent Verbs 147
XLIX. Subjunctive with Verbs of Fearing..... 150
L. Subjunctive of Result..... 153
LI. Gerunds. Impersonal Verbs 155
SIXTH REVIEW 158
LII. Declension of **domus**..... 159
LIII. Conjugation of **eō**..... 162
LIV. Place in which 165

LV. Declension of **īdem** ... 168
LVI. Possessive and Partitive Genitives ... 170
LVII. Declension of **vīs** ... 173
LVIII. Declension of **duo**. Conjugation of **possum** ... 176
SEVENTH REVIEW ... 179
LIX. Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Subject Accusative ... 181
LX. Dative with Special Verbs ... 183
LXI. Dative with Compound Verbs ... 186
LXII. Dative of Purpose. Dative with Adjectives ... 188
LXIII. Personal Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives ... 191
LXIV. Conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō** ... 195
LXV. Comparison of Adjectives in **er** and **lis** ... 198
LXVI. Comparison of Certain Irregular Adjectives ... 200
LXVII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs ... 204
LXVIII. Comparison of Certain Irregular Adverbs ... 207
LXIX. Direct Questions ... 210
EIGHTH REVIEW ... 213
LXX. Ablative of Separation. Ablative of Cause ... 215
LXXI. Ablative of Comparison. Ablative of Measure and Difference ... 218
LXXII. Ablative of Manner ... 221
LXXIII. Conjugation of **fīō** ... 223
LXXV. Ablative and Genitive of Description ... 228
LXXVI. Ablative of Specification ... 230
NINTH REVIEW ... 233
LXXVII. Imperative Mood. Commands ... 234
LXXVIII. Gerunds and Gerundives ... 238
LXXIX. Causal Clauses with **quod** and with **cum** ... 243
LXXX. Temporal Clauses with **cum** ... 246
LXXXI. Numerals ... 248
LXXXII. Conjugation of **ferō**. Declension of **deus** ... 251
LXXXIII. Periphrastic Conjugations ... 255
LXXXIV. Supines ... 259
TENTH REVIEW ... 263
LXXXV. Indirect Discourse ... 265
LXXXVI. Conditions ... 268
LXXXVII. Conditions (continued) ... 272
LXXXVIII. Wishes ... 277
LXXXIX. Word Formation ... 280
XC. Word Formation (continued) ... 284
ELEVENTH REVIEW ... 287

Annotated Text, Chapters 15-29 289
Connected Text, Chapters 1-29 317
Selected Rules 334
Appendix 339
Latin—English Vocabulary 385
English—Latin Vocabulary 424

TO TEACHERS

1. In the present edition of *Bellum Helveticum* it has been the constant endeavor of the authors to put nothing before the pupil that he does not need to know and understand. Consequently the lessons should be taken up in the order in which they occur, and nothing should be omitted.

2. The most important thing at the outset is the accurate acquirement of forms. When the declension of **porta** has been assigned, it should be written in full by each pupil, corrected, and returned. If forms are learned accurately and thoroughly when first assigned, they are easily retained; if not, a pupil becomes more and more confused as each new declension occurs.

In the teacher's class-book the section number of the written matter should be noted at the head of the column in which the marks are recorded (*e. g.*, §16 for **porta**), and the pupils who fail to get this perfectly should repeat it in subsequent recitations until a check mark in the class-book indicates that it has been given perfectly at least once. The indiscriminate oral recitation of forms is of little use.

3. It is a common mistake for teachers to think that mere rapidity in giving forms is an end in itself. Accuracy is the proper aim. When a pupil has attained accuracy in giving a certain set of forms, time is wasted in trying to attain rapidity, because he is gaining no mental power, and because the time is better spent in teaching him to *use* these forms in sentences. The true pedagogical object is to train him to think directly to a certain form (*e. g.*, a genitive plural), rather than to have him "run down" a declension

till he gets the desired form. And there is no advantage in having a pupil give a single form without associating with it its case and number, or tense, mood, voice, etc., for otherwise it is not truly apperceived. Consequently, at the start it is well to have the names of the cases written with the Latin, and to have the declension given orally.

4. During the first few weeks no effort or time should be spared in showing pupils how to reason out translations from the endings of Latin words. Strange as it seems to many teachers, a large number of pupils are absolutely incapable of grasping without assistance the mental processes that lie behind the art of translation; and too many teachers forget that to explain such matters is at once their duty and their greatest opportunity to win gratitude and confidence. For it is a fatal mistake to allow a pupil to get the idea that translation is a combination of guesswork and memory.

5. The assignment of the next lesson should be made absolutely definite and should be gone over with the class, so that new or difficult points may be thoroughly understood. Time spent in this way is saved many times over.

6. The suggestions about the derivation of English words will not be left unused by the live teacher. They are capable of much adaptation and extension. Teachers who believe that the formation of Latin words should be employed as an aid in acquiring and holding a vocabulary, will find in Lessons LXXXIX and XC the material they require. These lessons have been so planned that they can be used for reference or studied in part at any time during the year.

7. In the treatment of syntax, an effort has been made to get the synthetic point of view (the pupil's) rather than the analytic (the college professor's). About all the practical advantage that the average pupil sees in learning the different uses of the ablative is that he finds out about the

uses of prepositions in his composition. He will very likely see that it is a help, in translating Latin, to know about the dative with special verbs, the ablative with certain deponent verbs, and some uses of the partitive genitive. But deal gently with him if he fails to display much interest in the objective genitive, or occasionally cannot tell whether an ablative denotes cause or means or specification or accordance.

8. In the English-Latin exercises the authors have tried to furnish enough material for teachers who believe in extensive work along this line. But it is their opinion, based upon experience with both methods, that one sentence of Latin composition reviewed is more profitable than two sentences taken up but once, and they would recommend that the assigned sentences be thoroughly mastered and that the additional sentences found in the classroom edition be used for training in translation as suggested in 4, above.

9. The review lessons should be taken up in the most thorough manner, according to the directions given in them.

10. It is perfectly feasible for teachers who think that the original text of Caesar is too difficult for first year pupils to omit the regular Caesar text, and use only the simplified text to be found at the beginning of each lesson.

CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN WAR

The name of Gaius Julius Caesar has been called the greatest in history. He was Rome's greatest general. He laid the foundation of an empire which ruled the world for centuries, and from which have sprung, in a large degree, the modern nations of Europe. Although continually occupied with war and politics, he was great also in literature. We possess his two most important works, the "Commentaries on the Gallic War," which describe the conquest of Gaul, and the "Commentaries on the Civil War," which record his struggles with Pompey. The style of his works is characterized by great simplicity, conciseness, and vigor. Written in the purest Latin, they furnish excellent models for the study of the language.

When Caesar was forty-four years old—that is, in the year 58 B. C.—he set out for Gaul, ostensibly for the purpose of protecting Roman territory, but as the event showed, for the subjugation of the land. In nine years he subdued the whole of Gaul, and converted it into a Roman province. In the campaigns of these nine years he disciplined and attached to himself an army which afterward made him the master of Rome. The first Gallic people whom Caesar encountered were the Helvetians, the inhabitants of modern Switzerland. The Helvetians thought their country was too small, and, besides, were harassed by the neighboring tribes of Germany, and so resolved to seek wider limits and a more peaceful home to the west, on the borders of the ocean. Before leaving their country they provided themselves plentifully with provisions, and burned all their houses,

some four hundred villages, and twelve walled towns. By appointment they met at the southern end of Lake Geneva. There they assembled, in the spring of 58 B. C., to the number of three hundred and sixty-eight thousand, of whom ninety-two thousand were fighting men. Under modern civilization, the same country now supports a population of over three millions.

At Lake Geneva the Helvetians found their advance opposed by Caesar. Their most natural course was to cross the Rhone, passing through a corner of the Roman province in southeastern Gaul. They sent a deputation asking permission to pass through the province without damage. To gain time, Caesar put them off to a second conference, spent the interval in constructing a line of fortifications along the Rhone, and then formally forbade their passage.

After vainly endeavoring to force a passage of the Rhone, the Helvetians, by arrangement with the Sequanians, their neighbors on the northwest, proceeded to cross the Saône instead of the Rhone, and thence to march northwest. Caesar added five fresh legions to the one already at his disposal, and after about three-fourths of the Helvetian troops had crossed the Saône, fell upon the remainder and cut them to pieces. Efforts on the part of the Helvetians to procure terms of peace satisfactory to themselves proved unavailing, and after some minor contests, the final decisive battle was fought near the Aeduan town Bibracte, now Mont Beuvray. Caesar acknowledges that the battle was closely contested and for a long time doubtful, but in the end Roman arms and discipline won a victory that ended all the hopes of the Helvetians. At the command of Caesar they returned to their desolated homes, but with the loss of more than two thirds of their entire number. Remains of skeletons, ornaments and arms have been unearthed on the field of the great battle near Autun.

PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

SENTENCES

A *sentence* is a complete thought expressed in words.

Sentences are classed according to their meaning as *declarative, interrogative,* and *imperative.*

A declarative sentence is a statement.

An interrogative sentence is a question.

An imperative sentence is a command.

The *subject* is that about which something is stated (in a declarative sentence), asked (in an interrogative sentence), or commanded (in an imperative sentence).

The *predicate* is that which is stated, asked, or commanded about the subject.

A *clause* is a group of words containing a subject and a predicate.

Sentences are classed according to their clauses as *simple, complex,* or *compound.*

A simple sentence contains only one clause.

A complex sentence contains at least two clauses, one of which (the *subordinate* clause) modifies or depends upon some word or words in the other (the *principal* clause).

A compound sentence contains at least two clauses of equal rank or value in the sentence (*coördinate* clauses).

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

A *noun* is the name of a person, place, or thing.

Nouns have two *numbers,* singular and plural; and (in English) three *cases,* nominative, possessive, and objective.

The nominative is the form which is the subject of a clause.

[There are also the predicate nominative, the nominative by direct address, the nominative absolute (in English), and the nominative in apposition.]

The possessive is the form which indicates possession or ownership, and modifies another noun.

The objective is the form which is the object of a verb or preposition. [There are also the adverbial objective, the objective complement, the objective subject of an infinitive, and the objective in apposition.]

A *pronoun* is a word used in place of a noun.

Pronouns have number and case like nouns; *gender,* to indicate sex; and *person.*

The first person indicates the speaker; the second person, the person spoken to; the third person, that spoken of.

Substantive is the name given to any word or group of words used as a noun.

An *adjective* is a word which limits or describes a substantive.

Adjectives have three degrees of *comparison,* positive, comparative, and superlative.

A *verb* is a word that can declare something.

Verbs have *tense, mood, voice, person,* and *number.*

Tense indicates the *time* of the statement.

Mood indicates the *manner* of the statement.

Voice indicates whether the subject *acts* or *is acted upon.*

Person in verbs represents the person of the subject (see pronouns).

Number in verbs represents the number of the subject.

An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, adjective, or another adverb.

Adverbs have the same three degrees of comparison as adjectives.

A *preposition* shows the relation between a following substantive (its object) and some other word in the clause.

A preposition with its object forms a prepositional *phrase.*

A phrase may be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a noun.

A *conjunction* is a word which connects sentences or parts of sentences.

A *coördinate* conjunction connects words, phrases, or clauses of equal rank or value.

A *subordinate* conjunction connects a subordinate clause with a principal clause, or with some word in a principal clause.

A *conjunctive adverb* is one that serves at the same time as an adverb and a subordinate conjunction.

INFLECTION

The changes undergone by a word by which it expresses its meaning and its relation to other words are called its *inflection.*

In nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, inflection is called *declension.* In verbs it is called *conjugation.* Adjectives and adverbs may also have *comparison* (see above).

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

This lesson is to be read over in class and thoroughly explained, not assigned for recitation. Reference should be made to it continually during the early lessons. But no amount of explanation or rules can teach correct pronunciation. It can be done only by correct and constant practice, following the accurate pronunciation of the teacher.

The Latin language, the language of the ancient Romans, derives its name from the Latins, who once inhabited Latium in Italy. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are mainly derived from the Latin, and about sixty per cent of the words of the English tongue have a similar origin.

THE ALPHABET

1. The alphabet is the same as ours, except that there is no *j* or *w*. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.** The rest of the letters are consonants.

METHODS OF PRONUNCIATION

2. In the English method the letters are given sounds selected from the many sounds belonging to them in English. The Roman method is now almost universally adopted in this country, and is to be recommended. It is as close an approximation as can now be made to the pronunciation of the Romans themselves. In ordinary practice we recognize no exceptions in the pronunciation of individual words, but follow fixed rules.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

3. The quantity of a vowel is the length of time given to its pronunciation. Compare the first syllables in *alight* and *twilight*. The *a* is short, and the *i* long. In Latin every vowel is either short or long. The long vowels take twice as long to pronounce as the short. This point in Latin pronunciation is too likely to be neglected, because we do not make much of quantity (in this sense) in English. In this book every long vowel is marked (¯). Diphthongs are always long and are unmarked. Otherwise unmarked vowels are short. The student should be very careful to give twice as much time to the long vowels as to the short.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. It will be noticed in the following table that in some cases the short and long vowels have the same sound, in others a slightly different sound.

a = first vowel in *aha'*	**ā** = second vowel in *aha'*
e = *e* in *net*	**ē** = *ey* in *they*
i = *i* in *pin*	**ī** = *i* in *machine*
o = *o* in *obey*	**ō** = *oh*
u = *oo* in *foot*	**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*, intermediate between *oo* and *ee*.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the diphthongs which appear in Latin:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*	**ai** = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*	**ei** = *ei* in *eight*
au = *ow* in *how*	**oi** = *oi* in *oil*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ee*. The diphthong appears in **huius, huic, cuius,** and **cui.**

When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **huius, eius, cuius,** and **maior,** though **i** was written only once, it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were **huiius, eiius, cuiius,** and **maiior.** The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet.*

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*
i (consonant) = *y* in *yet*
n before **c, g, q,** and **x** = *ng* in *sing*
r pronounced distinctly.
s as in *this,* never as in *these*
t as in *tin,* never as in *nation*
v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
qu = *qu* in *quart*
ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*
su in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds = *sw.*

When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō, annus,** both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk, pen-knife.* In English, we sound only one consonant in *ditty, penny.*

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō,** the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words the consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i;** as **dēiciō,** pronounced as if **dēiiciō; abiciō,** as if **abiiciō.**

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel. For example, **fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.**

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (**b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph,** or **th,** followed by **l** or **r**) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the following vowel like a single consonant. For example, **pa-tris, a-grī.** Compare this division of syllables with the English word *con-se-crate.*

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as **mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. Syllables are long or short, according to the time taken in pronouncing them.

a. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or diphthong. For example, both syllables of **laudō.**

b. A syllable is long by position if its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants, **x** and **z.** For example, the first syllable of **lingua,** the first two syllables of **appellō,** and **ex.**

NOTE. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: **est** is **ĕst**; the syllable is long, but the vowel is short. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (§8, *c*), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in **mit-tō** (§6), **an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.**

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable. For example, **om'nis.**

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the syllable next to the last) if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult (the syllable before the penult). For example, **dīvī'sa, appel'lō, in'colunt.**

12. When an enclitic (a word that has no accent of its own) is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic. For example, **Gallia'que.**

EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION

13. In the following passage divide each word into syllables, tell the quantity of each syllable, and if long, in which way it is long (see §9, *a*, *b*), determine what syllable is accented, pronounce each syllable separately, and finally the whole word, properly accented.

The first few lines should be taken up in the classroom with the pupils; this may be done either before or after the rules of the lesson have been learned.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

PRACTICAL DIRECTIONS FOR PRONUNCIATION

1. **Gal'-li-a:** all vowels short; both **a**'s like final **a** as in *Cuba;* both **l**'s sounded. **est:** just as *-est* in *digest;* the syllable is long (§9, *b*), but this does not make the vowel long (compare §3 and §9, Note). **om'-nis: om-**, as in *obey;* **i** as in *pin.* **dī-vī'-sa:** *dee-wee'-sa;* **s** as in *said;* **a** as in *Cuba.* **in:** as *in.* **par'-tēs: par-** as in *party,* but with a very clearly sounded *r;* **-tēs** as *tas-* in *taste.* **trēs:** as *trace.*

2. **quā'-rum:** *kwah'-room; oo* as in *foot.* **ū'-nam:** *oo'-nam; oo* as in *boot;* **a**, see §4. **in'-co-lunt:** for vowels see §4. **Bel'-gae: bel-** as *bell;* **-gae** as *guy.* **a'-li-am:** for vowels see §4. **A-quī-tā'-nī:** *a-kwee-tah'-nee;* first **a** short. **ter'-ti-am:** **e** has its regular sound, as in *net;* English pronounces *er, ir, ur* all alike, Latin gives the proper sound to each vowel; both **t**'s hard. **quī:** *kwee.* **ip-sō'-rum:** for vowels see §4. **lin'-guā:** *lin'-gwah;* **ā** as final *a* in *aha'.* **Cel'-tae: c** hard; **-tae** as *tie.* **nos'-trā: ā**, see **linguā.** **ap-pel-lan'-tur:** sound both **p**'s and both **l**'s; the **p**'s should be distinct; the **l**'s should be run together.

3. **hī:** as *he.* **om'-nēs: ēs** as *ace.* **īn-sti-tū'-tīs: īn-**, *een;* **-tīs**, with **ī** = *ee.* **lē'-gi-bus: lē-** as *lay;* **g** hard; **-bus** not as in *omnibus,* but with **u** = *oo,* as in *foot.* **in'-ter: -ter** as first syllable in **tertiam**; see above. **sē:** as *say.* **dif'-fe-runt:** both **f**'s are sounded, but are run together.

BELLUM HELVETICUM

LESSON I

FIRST DECLENSION

THE LATIN CASES

14. Latin nouns have six cases. The names of these cases and their general English equivalents are as follows:

LATIN CASES	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS
Nominative	Nominative
Genitive	Possessive Objective with *of*
Dative	Indirect Objective Objective with *to* or *for*
Accusative	Objective
Vocative	Nominative by Direct Address
Ablative	Objective with *by, from, in,* or *with*

The English equivalents of the genitive are merely different ways of expressing the same idea; thus, *the boy's father = the father of the boy.*

The same thing is true of the equivalents given for the dative; thus, *he gave his son the book = he gave the book to his son.*

On the other hand, the ablative may represent any one of several different ideas.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

15. There are five declensions of Latin nouns. The ending of the genitive indicates to what declension a noun belongs.

16. FIRST DECLENSION

porta, *gate*

CASE	FORM	ENGLISH TRANSLATION	CASE ENDING
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	porta	(*a, the*) *gate;* subject	-a
Gen.	portae	(*a, the*) *gate's* / *of* (*a, the*) *gate*	-ae
Dat.	portae	*to* (*a, the*) *gate* / *for* (*a, the*) *gate*	-ae
Acc.	portam	(*a, the*) *gate;* object	-am
Voc.	porta	*O* (or *you*) *gate*	-a
Abl.	portā	*by, from, in, with* (*a, the*) *gate*	-ā
		PLURAL	
Nom.	portae	(*the*) *gates;* subject	-ae
Gen.	portārum	(*the*) *gates'* / *of* (*the*) *gates*	-ārum
Dat.	portīs	*to* (*the*) *gates* / *for* (*the*) *gates*	-īs
Acc.	portās	(*the*) *gates;* object	-ās
Voc.	portae	*O* (or *you*) *gates*	-ae
Abl.	portīs	*by, from, in, with* (*the*) *gates*	-īs

17. Notice that certain forms are alike,—

Nom. sing., Voc. sing. } **port-a**

Gen. sing., Dat. sing., Nom. plu., Voc. plu. } **port-ae**

Dat. plu., Abl. plu. } **port-īs**

18. The *base* of a word is the part that remains unchanged in inflection. The base of **porta** is **port.**

19. The various endings that are added to the base in declension are called the *case endings.* The case endings of the first declension are printed in heavy type in the above table.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION—Continued

20. VOCABULARY

Belga, -ae, *a* (*the*) *Belgian.*
causa, -ae, *reason.*
Celta, -ae, *a* (*the*) *Celt.*
cōpia, -ae, *plenty, supply.*
fuga, -ae, *flight.*

Gallia, -ae, *Gaul*, the name of the country which, roughly speaking, is now modern France.
lingua, -ae, *language.*
porta, -ae, *gate.*
prōvincia, -ae, *province.*
silva, -ae, *forest.*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

21. One great value of the study of Latin is that it helps one to understand the meaning of many English words. For example, we may recognize the fact that certain English words are derived from certain Latin words; or, again, if we know the Latin word from which a particular English word is derived, we recognize the original and, approximately, the present meaning of the English word.

Thus, in the above list, the first three words should sug-

gest the English words *Belgian, cause, Celt.* What English words are derived or descended from **porta** and **prōvincia?**

The English words *copious* and *linguist* are indirectly derived from words in this list. What would you judge to be their approximate meaning?

EXERCISES

22. 1. Write the declension of any three of the words in §20, placing a hyphen between the base and the ending. 2. Write the meaning of each form of one of them. 3. Write the nominative and genitive, both singular and plural, of each of the nouns in §20.

23. Of the following forms, give first the number and case, and then translate:

1. Galliam.

This is shown by the ending to be accusative singular, and the translation will therefore be *Gaul,* objective. If it were in a sentence the English equivalent *Gaul* would be made objective by putting it after the verb.

2. Prōvinciae.

This form may be genitive singular, dative singular, nominative plural, or vocative plural; there is no way of telling which it is here. In such cases always give a separate translation for each one of their possible forms.

NOTE. If this word were in a sentence, we could probably tell which one of these four forms it would be. So in English, if we see the word "sheep" standing alone, we do not know whether it is singular or plural, nominative or objective. But if the word "sheep" is used with the word "are," we say at once that it is nominative plural.

3. Belgārum. 4. Silvā. 5. Fuga. 6. Celtīs. 7. Causās. 8. Lingua. 9. Portae. 10. Cōpiam.

24. Write the Latin for the following words and phrases, first noting the number and the Latin case that will translate the English case or phrase:

1. To the Belgians.

The noun in this phrase is plural, hence the Latin word will be plural. No separate word is needed in Latin for "to," because the dative case may be translated by *to* with the objective. So, just as this phrase might be expressed without a preposition in English by making it an indirect object (*he gave this to the Belgians = he gave the Belgians this*), the single Latin word, the dative plural of **Belga,** translates the whole English phrase.

2. Of the Celts. 3. By a gate. 4. The flight (objective). 5. Gaul (nominative). 6. In the language. 7. The forests (objective). 8. O Celts. 9. With reasons. 10. The province's. 11. Of the supply. 12. Languages (nominative). 13. For the Celt.

LESSON III

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

25. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs. The first person singular present indicative and the present infinitive, *taken together,* indicate to what conjugation a verb belongs. These two forms constitute the first two principal parts of a Latin verb, and must be known in order to conjugate it.

26. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **laudō, laudāre,** *praise*

SINGULAR:	**laudō,**	*I praise, am praising, do praise*
	laudās,	*you praise, are praising, do praise*
	laudat,	*he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise*
PLURAL:	**laudāmus,**	*we praise, are praising, do praise*
	laudātis,	*you praise, are praising, do praise*
	laudant,	*they praise, are praising, do praise*

27. The vowel before the **re** in the second of the principal parts of a verb is the sign of the conjugation. If this vowel is **ā**, the verb belongs to the *first conjugation.*

28. The present *base* of this verb is **laud,** found by dropping the last three letters from the present infinitive active (the second principal part).

29. Except in the first person singular, the endings consist of the characteristic vowel of the conjugation, **ā** (§27), and the *personal endings* given below (§30).

30. The personal endings are so called because they take the place of personal pronouns. They are nearly alike for all tenses and all conjugations, and should be learned separately, as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First person	***ō, *m,** *I*	**mus,** *we*
Second person	**s,** (*thou*) *you*	**tis,** *you*
Third person	***t,** *he, she, it*	***nt,** *they*

*A vowel before these endings is always short.

LATIN CASE ENDINGS COMPARED WITH ENGLISH WORD ORDER

31. The case of a noun in English is generally determined by its position in the sentence; e. g.,

the Belgians (nom.) praise the Celts (obj.)
the Celts (nom.) praise the Belgians (obj.)

But in Latin the case is denoted by the ending; e. g.,

Belgae laudant Celtās
Celtās laudant Belgae

In both these sentences **Belgae** is nominative and **Celtās** accusative, and therefore the meaning of both sentences is the same.

RULES

The following rules of syntax are almost the same in Latin as in English:

32. ***RULE. The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.****

33. ***RULE. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative case.***

34. ***RULE. A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.†***

35. ***RULE. A noun which modifies another noun and does not mean the same person or thing is put in the genitive.***

---

* A finite verb is one that has person and number.
†Nouns are third person.

36. VOCABULARY

appellō, appellāre, *call.*
comparō, comparāre, *prepare.*
laudō, laudāre, *praise.*
occupō, occupāre, *seize.*
superō, superāre, *overcome, conquer.*

What English word is derived from **occupō**? What does the word *appellation* mean? What is a *laudatory* speech?

EXERCISES

37. 1. Write the conjugation of the present indicative of any three of the verbs in §36, placing a hyphen between the base and the ending. 2. Write the meaning of each form of one of them.

38. Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Appellant; superātis; occupāmus. 2. Linguam laudat. 3. Superant. 4. Belgae superant.

NOTE. When translating a Latin verb that has its subject expressed, omit the English pronoun which would be the subject if the verb stood alone. Thus **superant** means *they conquer,* but **Belgae superant** means *the Belgians conquer.*

5. Belgae prōvinciam superant. 6. Portās Celtae occupant. 7. Prōvinciam Galliam appellātis. 8. Celtae prōvinciās superant. 9. Silvās laudās. 10. Cōpiam comparō.

39. Translate the following sentences into Latin. In a Latin sentence the verb is usually placed last.

1. You (sing.) are preparing. 2. You (plu.) are conquering. 3. The Celts are conquering. 4. They are conquering Gaul. 5. I am seizing the province. 6. He praises the forest. 7. They call Gaul a province.

LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION

40. **mūrus**, *wall*

CASE	SINGULAR	CASE ENDING	PLURAL	CASE ENDING
Nom.	mūrus	-us	mūrī	-ī
Gen.	mūrī	-ī	mūrōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	mūrō	-ō	mūrīs	-īs
Acc.	mūrum	-um	mūrōs	-ōs
Voc.	mūre	-e	mūrī	-ī
Abl.	mūrō	-ō	mūrīs	-īs

The base of this noun is **mūr-**. See §18.

The cases have the same meanings in all declensions, and the pupil may therefore translate the different forms for himself.

NOTE 1. In all Latin nouns the vocative is like the nominative except in the singular of nouns declined like **mūrus**.

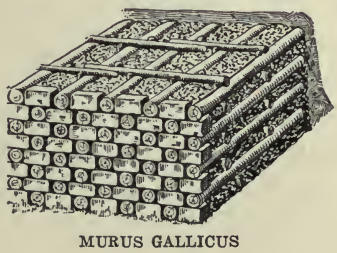
NOTE 2. Nouns ending in **-ius** often form the genitive and vocative singular with **-ī** (instead of **-iī** and **-ie**).

41. **VOCABULARY**

amīcus, **-ī**, *friend.*
Germānus, **-ī**, *a (the) German.*
gladius, **-ī**, *sword.*
Helvētius, **-ī**, *a (the) Helvetian,* or ancient *Swiss.*

lēgātus, **-ī**, *lieutenant, staff-officer.*
mūrus, **-ī**, *wall.*
numerus, **-ī**, *number.*

et, coördinate conjunction, *and.*



MURUS GALLICUS

Give an English word derived from **numerus**, and define it. Give the meaning of the italicized words in the following expressions: an *amicable* agreement; a *mural* painting; the *gladiators* of Rome.

EXERCISES

42. 1. Write the declension of any two of the nouns in §41, placing a hyphen between the base and the endings. 2. Write the declension of the expression **porta et mūrus.** 3. Write the declension of the expression **lēgātus et Belga.** 4. Write the nominative and genitive, both singular and plural, of all the nouns in §41.

43. Translate into English:

1. Helvētiō; mūrōrum; Germānīs. 2. Gladiōs; numerī; amīcum. 3. Helvētius Germānum laudat. 4. Belgās laudat lēgātus. 5. Celtam gladiō superat. 6. Mūrōs Helvētiī occupant. 7. Numerum Helvētiōrum et Germānōrum comparāmus. 8. Helvētiōs amīcōs appellās.

44. Translate into Latin:

1. To the German; to the Belgian. 2. With a sword; with a reason. 3. Of the lieutenant; of the lieutenants. 4. With walls. 5. I am praising the Helvetians. 6. You (sing.) are praising a number of friends. 7. We are seizing the walls and the gates.

LESSON V

SECOND DECLENSION—Continued

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

SECOND DECLENSION—Continued

45.

	ager, *field*	**puer**, *boy*	**vir**, *man*	CASE ENDINGS
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	ager	puer	vir	——
Gen.	agrī	puerī	virī	**-ī**
Dat.	agrō	puerō	virō	**-ō**
Acc.	agrum	puerum	virum	**-um**
Voc.	ager	puer	vir	——
Abl.	agrō	puerō	virō	**-ō**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	agrī	puerī	virī	**-ī**
Gen.	agrōrum	puerōrum	virōrum	**-ōrum**
Dat.	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	**-īs**
Acc.	agrōs	puerōs	virōs	**-ōs**
Voc.	agrī	puerī	virī	**-ī**
Abl.	agrīs	puerīs	virīs	**-īs**

Notice that except for the nominative and vocative singular, the endings of these nouns are the same as those of **mūrus**; that the bases, **agr**, **puer**, and **vir**, are found in the genitive singular (see §18); and that the vocative singular is like the nominative singular (see §40, Note 1).

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

46. Principal parts: **moneō**, **monēre**, *warn*

moneō, *I warn, am warning, do warn*	**monēmus**, *we warn*, etc.
monēs, *you warn*, etc.	**monētis**, *you warn*, etc.
monet, *he (she, it) warns*, etc.	**monent**, *they warn*, etc.

The **ē** before the final **re** of the second principal part is the sign of the second conjugation.

The present base of this verb is **mon.** See §28.

The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation, but the vowel before them is different.

47. VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, *field, farm.*
puer, puerī, *boy.*
vir, virī, *man.*

habeō, habēre, *have.*
moneō, monēre, *warn.*
prohibeō, prohibēre, *keep away.*
teneō, tenēre, *hold.*
videō, vidēre, *see.*

CAESAR

Give English words derived from the bases of **ager** and **prohibeō.** What are the approximate meanings of the adjectives *puerile* and *virile?* Of *monitor?* Of *tenacious?*

EXERCISES

48. Write, with the meanings, the conjugation of the present tense of **teneō** and of **habeō,** placing a hyphen between the base and the endings. 2. Write the conjugation of the present tense of **appellō et videō.**

49. Translate into English:

1. Tenet; prohibēmus; vidēs. 2. Habētis; monent. 3. Lēgātus mūrum tenet. 4. Puer Germānum videt. 5. Virī puerōs agrīs prohibent. 6. Fugam Helvētiōrum videō. 7. Belgae agrōs habent. 8. Cōpiam habēmus. 9. Silvās et agrōs prōvinciae vidētis.

50. Translate into Latin:

1. You (sing.) are warning; we see. 2. You (plu.) have; she holds. 3. I have a field. 4. The lieutenant is holding the walls and the gates. 5. He sees the boy's friends. 6. We are keeping away the men from the province.

LESSON VI

SECOND DECLENSION—Continued

51. **bellum**, *war*

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	PLURAL	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	bellum	-um	bella	-a
Gen.	bellī	-ī	bellōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	bellō	-ō	bellīs	-īs
Acc.	bellum	-um	bella	-a
Voc.	bellum	-um	bella	-a
Abl.	bellō	-ō	bellīs	-īs

The base of this noun is **bell.** Compare its endings carefully with those of **mūrus.**

52. **VOCABULARY**

bellum, -ī, *war.*
frūmentum, -ī, *grain.*
initium, -ī, *beginning.*
oppidum, -ī, *town.*
proelium, -ī, *battle.*

nōn, adverb, *not.*

dō, dare, *give.* This is inflected like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the **a** is usually short. The present is **dō, dās, dat; damus, datis, dant.**

What is the meaning of *initial?* Of *initiation?*

53. ***RULE. The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative.***

EXERCISES

54. 1. Write the declension of **frūmentum** and of **proelium**, placing a hyphen between the base and the endings. 2. Write the declension of the expression **mūrus et porta et bellum.** 3. Write the nominative and genitive, both singular and plural, of the nouns in §52.

55. Translate into English:

1. Initium proeliī; cōpia frūmentī; agrī prōvinciae. 2. Frūmentum puerō dō. 3. Oppida Galliae tenēmus. 4. Virōs oppidīs nōn prohibent. 5. Gladium habet vir. 6. Frūmentum virī amīcō dat. 7. Initium bellī vidēs.

56. Translate into Latin:

1. With grain; by wars; the beginnings of the battles. 2. Provinces and towns (nom.); provinces and towns (acc.). 3. They do not see the grain. 4. He is giving the sword to a friend. 5. You (plu.) give a supply of grain to the boys.

LESSON VII

GENDER

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

57. There are three genders in Latin as in English,—masculine, feminine, and neuter. In English we have only what is called *natural* gender, masculine and feminine nouns being, as a rule, only those which are names of objects that have sex.

58. In Latin there is this natural gender in the case of many words; but in the case of most words there is *grammatical* gender. The nouns of this latter class are masculine, feminine, or neuter according to rules which appear to us to be arbitrary.

RULES FOR GENDER

59. ***Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except names of male beings.***

Thus **Belga** and **Celta** are masculine.

60. ***Nouns of the second declension ending in* -um *are neuter; others are masculine.***

61. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

In English an adjective does not vary its form; in Latin most adjectives have gender, number, and case.

longus, -a, -um, *long*

	Masculine	*Feminine*	*Neuter*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	longus	longa	longum
Gen.	longī	longae	longī
Dat.	longō	longae	longō
Acc.	longum	longam	longum
Voc.	longe	longa	longum
Abl.	longō	longā	longō
		PLURAL	
Nom.	longī	longae	longa
Gen.	longōrum	longārum	longōrum
Dat.	longīs	longīs	longīs
Acc.	longōs	longās	longa
Voc.	longī	longae	longa
Abl.	longīs	longīs	longīs

It is evident at once that in an adjective of this sort the masculine has the endings of **mūrus**, the feminine the endings of **porta**, and the neuter the endings of **bellum**.

This is therefore called an adjective of the first-and-second declension. Its base is **long**.

62. VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large.*
proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, very near.*
tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

Give English words derived from **altus, lātus, longus** and **magnus**. What is the meaning of *proximity?*

63. USE OF ADJECTIVES

RULE. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Write in Latin: *the nearest Belgians* (nom.).

Since, according to the rule, the form of the adjective will depend upon the noun, write first the noun in its proper case and number: **Belgae**. This is masculine (§59), plural, nominative. The adjective required will therefore be the masculine, plural, nominative of **proximus, -a, -um**, which is **proximī**. Therefore **Belgae proximī** is the required Latin.

Other examples. *To the third Celt:* **Celtae** (mas. sing. dat.) **tertiō**. *Of the great wars:* **bellōrum** (neut. plu. gen.) **magnōrum**. *The nearest gates* (acc.): **portās** (fem. plu. acc.) **proximās**.

EXERCISES

64. Decline together **longus mūrus; lāta porta; magnum oppidum; ager lātus; Belga proximus.**

65. Translate into English:

1. Agrī lātī. 2. Oppidī magnī. 3. Oppida magna. 4. Celtae proximī. 5. Celtae proximō. 6. Proximōrum puerōrum. 7. Numerōs magnōs. 8. Gladiō longō. 9. Causam tertiam. 10. Altīs mūrīs.

66. Translate into Latin:

1. Of the third man. 2. With a long wall. 3. The great gates (nom.). 4. The nearest Helvetians (nom.). 5. The nearest Celts (nom.). 6. By wide forests. 7. Of the great battles. 8. To the nearest Belgian. 9. Of the high walls. 10. The nearest towns (acc.).

LESSON VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION—Continued

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

67. ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* OF THE FIRST-AND-SECOND DECLENSION

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill, sick*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī	aegrōrum	aegrārum	aegrōrum
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrum	aegram	aegrum	aegrōs	aegrās	aegra
Voc.	aeger	aegra	aegrum	aegrī	aegrae	aegra
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs

līber, lībera, līberum, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

68. The only forms in the declension of **aeger** and **līber** that are different in endings from **longus** are the nominative and vocative singular masculine.

The bases are **aegr** and **līber**, which are shown in the feminine and neuter forms of the nominative singular.

69. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

sum, esse, *be*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am*	**sumus,** *we are*
es, (*thou art*) *you are*	**estis,** *you are*
est, *he* (*she, it*) *is, there is*	**sunt,** *they are, there are*

70. VOCABULARY

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *ill, sick.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *daily.*
dīvīsus, -a, -um, *divided.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*
reliquus, reliqua, reliquum, *remaining, the-rest-of.*

sum, esse, *be.*

Give words derived from **dīvīsus** and **līber.** What is the meaning of *relic?*

EXERCISES

71. Decline together **ager noster; aeger amīcus; līber puer; līber Belga.**

72. Translate into English:

1. Helvētius est aeger; Helvētiī sunt aegrī. 2. Silva magna prōvinciae; silva magnae prōvinciae. 3. Sumus amīcī proximōrum Germānōrum; sumus amīcī proximī Germānōrum. 4. Oppidīs nostrīs Helvētiōs nōn prohibēmus. 5. Belgae reliquī sunt līberī. 6. Proelia bellī sunt cotīdiāna. 7. Gallia est dīvīsa. 8. Gladium longum virō damus.

73. Translate into Latin:

1. He is the sick friend of the Helvetian. 2. He is the friend of the sick Helvetian. 3. He is warning the nearest Belgians. 4. He is giving fields to our friends. 5. The Celt sees the nearest German. 6. The nearest Celt sees the German. 7. There are daily battles. 8. The Belgians are divided. 9. The lieutenant is free. 10. We are giving the men the remaining grain.

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

74. Memory Work.

1. Rules for quantity of syllables (§9).
2. Rules for accent (§§10-12).
3. First declension (nouns) (§16).
4. Second declension (nouns) (§§40, 45, 51).
5. Adjectives of the first-and-second declension (§§61, 67).
6. Rules for gender (§§59, 60).

7. Present indicative of **sum** (§69).
8. Present indicative active of first conjugation (§26).
9. Present indicative active of second conjugation (§46).

75. Latin-English Vocabulary.

1. Give the nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, and meaning of the following nouns:

ager	**frūmentum**	**initium**	**porta**
amīcus	**fuga**	**lēgātus**	**proelium**
Belga	**Gallia**	**lingua**	**prōvincia**
bellum	**Germānus**	**mūrus**	**puer**
causa	**gladius**	**numerus**	**silva**
Celta	**Helvētius**	**oppidum**	**vir**
cōpia			

2. Give the entire nominative singular and the meaning of the following adjectives:

aeger, altus, cotīdiānus, dīvīsus, lātus, līber, longus, magnus, noster, proximus, reliquus, tertius.

3. Give the first two principal parts and the meaning of the following verbs:

appellō, comparō, dō, habeō, laudō, moneō, occupō, prohibeō, sum, superō, teneō, videō.

76. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following words:

am	flight	keep away	reason
and	forest	language	remaining
are	free	large	the rest of
battle	friend	lieutenant	see
beginning	gate	long	seize

Belgian	Gaul	man	sick
boy	German	nearest	supply
broad	give	not	sword
call	grain	number	third
Celt	great	our	town
conquer	have	overcome	very near
daily	Helvetian	plenty	wall
deep	high	praise	war
divided	hold	prepare	warn
field	is	province	wide

LESSON IX

THIRD DECLENSION

FIRST DIVISION—GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

77. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

	cōnsul, M., *consul*	**mercātor**, M., *trader*	**homō**, M., F., *human being*	**legiō**, F., *legion*	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	cōnsul	mercātor	homō	legiō	——
Gen.	cōnsulis	mercātōris	hominis	legiōnis	-is
Dat.	cōnsulī	mercātōrī	hominī	legiōnī	-ī
Acc.	cōnsulem	mercātōrem	hominem	legiōnem	-em
Voc.	cōnsul	mercātor	homō	legiō	——
Abl.	cōnsule	mercātōre	homine	legiōne	-e
Nom.	cōnsulēs	mercātōrēs	hominēs	legiōnēs	-ēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	mercātōrum	hominum	legiōnum	-um
Dat.	cōnsulibus	mercātōribus	hominibus	legiōnibus	-ibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	mercātōrēs	hominēs	legiōnēs	-ēs
Voc.	cōnsulēs	mercātōrēs	hominēs	legiōnēs	-ēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	mercātōribus	hominibus	legiōnibus	-ibus

	lēx, F., *law*	**cīvitās**, F., *state*	**virtūs**, F., *manliness*	**mīles**, M., *soldier*	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	lēx	cīvitās	virtūs	mīles	**-s***
Gen.	lēgis	cīvitātis	virtūtis	mīlitis	**-is**
Dat.	lēgī	cīvitātī	virtūtī	mīlitī	**-ī**
Acc.	lēgem	cīvitātem	virtūtem	mīlitem	**-em**
Voc.	lēx	cīvitās	virtūs	mīles	**-s***
Abl.	lēge	cīvitāte	virtūte	mīlite	**-e**
Nom.	lēgēs	cīvitātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	lēgum	cīvitātum	virtūtum	mīlitum	**-um**
Dat.	lēgibus	cīvitātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus	**-ibus**
Acc.	lēgēs	cīvitātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs	**-ēs**
Voc.	lēgēs	cīvitātēs	virtūtēs	mīlitēs	**-ēs**
Abl.	lēgibus	cīvitātibus	virtūtibus	mīlitibus	**-ibus**

78. In the third declension both the nominative and the genitive singular must be committed to memory in order to be able to decline a word.

The base is found by dropping the ending **is** from the genitive singular. After the base is found, the same endings are added to it as for **cōnsul**. The vocative is always like the nominative.

79. VOCABULARY

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul,* the title given to each of the two executive officers of the Roman republic.

homō, hominis, m. or f., *man,* in the sense of *human being.*

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion;* a division of the Roman army which in actual service had about 3600 men.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*

mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader.*

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, bravery.*

---

* In **lēx, x=gs.**

Give English words derived from the bases of **lēx** and **mīles**, and from **virtūs** and **mercātor**.

EXERCISES

80. 1. Decline together the words meaning *our legion; the nearest man* (**homō**); *a great state.* 2. Give the memoranda* of all the words in §79.

81. 1. Cōnsulī; mercātōrem. 2. Lēge; hominum. 3. Legiōnibus; mīlitēs. 4. Cīvitātis; virtūte. 5. Virtūtem mīlitis laudāmus. 6. Cōnsul portās oppidī legiōne occupat. 7. Hominēs Celtās linguā Galliae appellātis. 8. Reliquae cīvitātēs sunt līberae. 9. Lēgēs Galliae nōn laudās. 10. Hominibus cōnsul frūmentum dat.

82. 1. To the trader; with the legions. 2. Of the man; of the laws. 3. To the consuls; the states. 4. The divided states (nom.); the divided states (acc.). 5. Our consuls and our laws. 6. He is giving grain to the soldier. 7. The bravery of the legions is not great.

**Memoranda* is the term which will be used to designate the nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, nominative plural, genitive plural, and meaning.

LESSON X

THIRD DECLENSION—Continued

FIRST DIVISION (Continued)—GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-UM*

83. NEUTER NOUNS

	flūmen, N., *river*	opus, N., *work*	tempus, N., *time*	iter, N., *journey*	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	flūmen	opus	tempus	iter	——
Gen.	flūminis	operis	temporis	itineris	-is
Dat.	flūminī	operī	temporī	itinerī	-ī
Acc.	flūmen	opus	tempus	iter	——
Voc.	flūmen	opus	tempus	iter	——
Abl.	flūmine	opere	tempore	itinere	-e
Nom.	flūmina	opera	tempora	itinera	-a
Gen.	flūminum	operum	temporum	itinerum	-um
Dat.	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	itineribus	-ibus
Acc.	flūmina	opera	tempora	itinera	-a
Voc.	flūmina	opera	tempora	itinera	-a
Abl.	flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	itineribus	-ibus

84. In the declension of these nouns two principles are involved:

1. In the third declension both the nominative and the genitive singular must be committed to memory. See §78.

2. In all neuter nouns (of whatever declension) the nominative, accusative, and vocative are alike, and in the plural they end in short a.

Compare the declension of **bellum**, §51.

85. ***RULE. An appositive or a predicate noun agrees in case with the word it explains.***

86. VOCABULARY

flūmen, flūminis, n., *river.*
iter, itineris, n., *journey, march, road.*
opus, operis, n., *work.*
tempus, temporis, n., *time.*

Garumna, -ae, *m., *the Garonne,* a river in southwestern Gaul.
Matrona, -ae, *m., *the Marne,* a tributary of the Seine from the northeast.
Sēquana, -ae, *m., *the Seine,* on which modern Paris is situated.

Give the meanings of the words, *flume, itinerary, operate, temporary,* and show their connection with words in the vocabulary.

EXERCISES

87. 1. Decline together the words meaning *our work; the river Seine; a long march.* 2. Give the memoranda of all the words in §86.

88. 1. Flūmine; itinera. 2. Operibus; temporum. 3. Itinera legiōnum; opus mercātōrum. 4. Opus est magnum, et tempus reliquum nōn longum est. 5. Lēgātus, amīcus cōnsulis, est proximus. 6. Gallia est dīvīsa flūminibus. 7. Garumna et Matrona et Sēquana sunt flūmina Galliae.

89. 1. Of the river; for the journey. 2. Work (acc.); times (acc.). 3. The beginning of our work. 4. The river is wide. 5. Our time is divided. 6. We are warning the traders, our friends. 7. The Gauls are not our friends.

---

* All names of rivers are masculine in Latin.

LESSON XI

THIRD DECLENSION—Continued

SECOND DIVISION—GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

90. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS

	pars, F., *part*	**hostis**, M. or F., *enemy*
Nom.	pars	hostis
Gen.	partis	hostis
Dat.	partī	hostī
Acc.	partem	hostem
Voc.	pars	hostis
Abl.	parte	hoste
Nom.	partēs	hostēs
Gen.	partium	hostium
Dat.	partibus	hostibus
Acc.	partēs (-īs)	hostēs (-īs)
Voc.	partēs	hostēs
Abl.	partibus	hostibus

91. Notice that nouns whose genitive plural ends in **-ium** may also have the ending **-īs** in the accusative plural. Some also have the ending **-im** in the accusative singular, and **-ī** in the ablative singular. These forms will be noted as they occur.

NOTE. Rules will be given later for determining what nouns have the ending **-ium** in the genitive plural. All the nouns in the vocabulary below are declined like **pars** or **hostis**.

92. VOCABULARY

collis, collis, m., *hill.*
fīnis, fīnis, m., abl. **fīne** or **fīnī**, *end, boundary;* plural, *territory.*
hostis, hostis, m. or f., *enemy.* Not a collective noun in Latin.
nāvis, nāvis, f., abl. often **nāvī**, *ship.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

Give English words derived from the last six Latin words.

EXERCISES

93. Decline the expressions **collis et mōns; nāvis et mercātor; pars magna.**

94. 1. Nāvibus; collium. 2. Pontis; monte. 3. Fīnis; fīnēs; fīnīs. 4. Hostēs oppida occupant. 5. Partem nāvium videō. 6. Collēs prōvinciae nōn magnī sunt. 7. Hostēs ponte prohibēmus. 8. Montēs Galliae vidētis. 9. Partem frūmentī nostrī hostibus damus. 10. Belgae hostēs gladiīs superant.

95. 1. Of the hill; with the ships. 2. By the bridge; of the mountains. 3. The end (acc.); territory (acc.). 4. Part of the great work; a great part of the work. 5. The ships of the enemy (plu.); the nearest mountains. 6. The bridges are long. 7. Our territory is wide.

LESSON XII

THIRD DECLENSION—Continued

SECOND DIVISION (Continued)—GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

96. NEUTER NOUNS

	mare, N., *sea*	**vectīgal,** N., *tax*	**mīlle,** *thousand*	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	mare	vectīgal		-e, —
Gen.	maris	vectīgālis	(mīlle, an	-is
Dat.	marī	vectīgālī	adj. in the	-ī
Acc.	mare	vectīgal	singular.)	-e, —
Voc.	mare	vectīgal		-e, —
Abl.	marī	vectīgālī		-ī

Nom.	maria	vectīgālia	mīlia	-ia
Gen.	marium	vectīgālium	mīlium	-ium
Dat.	maribus	vectīgālibus	mīlibus	-ibus
Acc.	maria	vectīgālia	mīlia	-ia
Voc.	maria	vectīgālia	mīlia	-ia
Abl.	maribus	vectīgālibus	mīlibus	-ibus

97. RULES FOR THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

The nouns that have **-ium** in the genitive plural are:

1. Those that end in **-is** (or **-ēs**) and have no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

2. Those that end in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant.

3. Neuters that end in **-e, -al** or **-ar.**

98. RULES FOR GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

1. Masculine are names of male beings, and nouns ending in **-or, -ōs, -er, -es.**

2. Feminine are names of female beings, and nouns ending in **-ō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -x,** and "consonant-and-**s.**"

3. Neuter are those ending in **-c, -i, -t, -y, -l, -a, -n, -e; -ar, -ur, -us.**

99. VOCABULARY

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

mīlle, indeclinable in the singular, which is usually an adjective, *a thousand;* plural, **mīlia, mīlium,** n., *thousands.*

vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *tax.*

Aquītānus, -ī, m., *an* (*the*) *Aquitanian,* an inhabitant of southwestern Gaul.

Gallus, -ī, m., *a* (*the*) *Gaul,* an inhabitant of the country called **Gallia.**

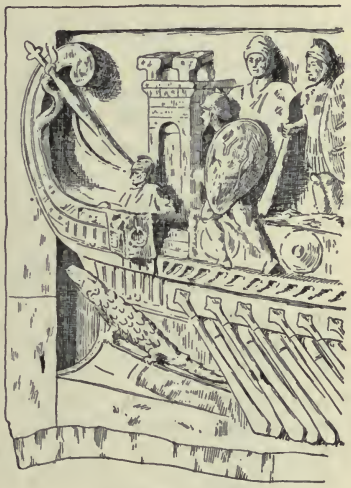
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a* (*the*) *Sequanian,* a member of a powerful tribe in central Gaul.

Give English words derived from **mare.**

EXERCISES

100. 1. Decline the expressions **flūmen et mare; lēx et vectīgal; collis et nāvis et mare.** 2. Give the memoranda of all the nouns in §99. 3. Give the rules for the gender of nouns of the first and the second declensions. 4. Give the gender of the following nouns according to the rules given in §98: **cīvitās, cōnsul, flūmen, homō, hostis, legiō, lēx, mercātor, mare, mīlia, nāvis, opus, pars, vectīgal, virtūs.** 5. Give the gender of the following nouns, which are exceptions to the rules given in §98: **iter, collis, fīnis, mōns, pōns.**

101. 1. Marī; vectīgālium. 2. Mīlle; mīlia. 3. Vectīgālia Gallōrum nōn magna sunt. 4. Mīlle Germānōs videō. 5. Mīlia Germānōrum videō. 6. Cōnsul est vir magnae virtūtis. 7. Sēquanī et Gallī reliquī sunt hostēs Germānōrum. 8. Aquītānī partem Galliae tenent. 9. Partem nāvium Sēquanī vident. 10. Collēs et montēs nostrī sunt altī.



ROMAN GALLEY

102. 1. The sea (acc.); with taxes. 2. A thousand Gauls; thousands of Gauls. 3. The remaining taxes are large. 4. The enemy (plu.) hold our territory. 5. You (plu.) praise the bravery of the legions. 6. We are keeping the Gauls away from the sea.

LESSON XIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

103. Adjectives of the third declension may have one, two, or three different forms for the nominative singular. Apart from this it will be seen that there is little difference between the adjectives whose declension is given below.

oriēns, *rising*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orientī	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	orientem	oriēns	orientēs (-īs)	orientēs (-īs)	orientia
Voc.	oriēns	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientēs	orientia
Abl.	orientī	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus	orientibus

fortis, *brave*

Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
Voc.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

ācer, *sharp, keen*

Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

104. The declensions of **fortis** and **oriēns** may be abbreviated by writing the masculine and feminine together as one column, as given in App. 37, 38. Thus:

	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	fortis	forte
Gen.	fortis	fortis
Dat.	fortī	fortī
	etc.	

105. All three may be abbreviated by writing only one form each for the genitive, dative, and ablative, which are alike for all three genders. Thus:

Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.		ācris	
Dat.		ācrī	
		etc.	

DECLENSION OF *TRĒS*

106. **Trēs** (base **tr-**) is declined like the plural of **fortis.**

trēs, *three*

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	trēs	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs (trīs)	trēs (trīs)	tria
Voc.	trēs	trēs	tria
Abl.	tribus	tribus	tribus

107. **VOCABULARY**

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen.*
celer, celeris, celere, *quick, swift.*
fortis, forte, *brave.*
nōbilis, nōbile, *noted, prominent.*
omnis, omne, *all.*
oriēns, genitive **orientis,** *rising.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*

SCUTUM

Give English words which you think are derived from each of the above, then look them up in the dictionary and see if you are right.

EXERCISES

108. Decline the Latin for the expressions *a brave soldier; a noted river; the rising sun.*

109. 1. Celerēs nāvēs; Helvētius nōbilis. 2. Ācris virī; Germānōrum fortium. 3. Lēgēs omnēs cīvitātum; lēgēs omnium cīvitātum. 4. Sōlem orientem videō. 5. Omnia oppida hostēs tenent. 6. Cōnsul trēs lēgātōs laudat. 7. Germānī ācrēs omnēs Gallōs superant. 8. Puerī sunt fortēs. 9. Sunt tria itinera. 10. Proelium est ācre.

110. 1. A sharp battle (acc.); of the brave lieutenant. 2. Of the noted consuls; of the rising sun. 3. All the boys (nom.); three friends (acc.). 4. The Belgian is brave; the Belgians are brave men. 5. We hold all the roads. 6. They see the soldier's bravery. 7. I see a swift ship.

LESSON XIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES USE OF PREPOSITIONS

111. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The comparative of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-ior**, and the superlative by adding **-issimus**, to the *base* of the positive. E. g.,

fort-is,	**fort-ior,**	**fort-issimus**
brave,	*braver,*	*bravest* or *very brave*
long-us,	**long-ior,**	**long-issimus**
long,	*longer,*	*longest* or *very long*

All comparatives are declined like **fortior** (§112).
All superlatives are declined like **longus** (§61).

112. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

fortior, *braver*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fortior	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Voc.	fortior	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

113. USE OF PREPOSITIONS

Latin prepositions are divided into three classes:

1. Those used with the accusative only.
2. Those used with the ablative only.
3. Those used with either the accusative or the ablative. With these there is a difference in meaning according to the case used.

114. VOCABULARY

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between.*

ā or **ab** (before vowels or **h**), prep. with abl., (*away*) *from; by.*
cum, prep. with abl., *with.*
dē, prep. with abl., (*down*) *from; concerning.*
ē or **ex** (before vowels or **h**), prep. with abl., (*out*) *from, out of.*

in, prep.; with acc., *into;* with abl., *in, on.*

Note that, as the ablative case alone is translated by *from, with, by, in,* so the Latin prepositions that mean *from, with, by, in,* are used with the ablative case.

State the meaning of the prefix in each of the following words: *intervene, absent, induce, descend, exit, addition.*

EXERCISES

115. 1. Like **fortis** and **longus** (§111), compare **altus, lātus,** and **nōbilis.** 2. Decline the expression for *a longer river.* 3. Decline **nōbilis** and its comparative.

116. 1. Ad fortem cōnsulem; ad fortiōrem cōnsulem. 2. Inter flūmina lāta; inter flūmina lātissima. 3. Ā flūmine; ab oppidīs. 4. In prōvinciam; in prōvinciā. 5. Dē monte altō; dē montibus altissimīs. 6. Cum legiōnibus fortiōribus; cum legiōne fortissimā. 7. Ē fīnibus nostrīs; ex oppidīs omnibus. 8. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 9. Germānī longōs gladiōs habent; gladiōs longiōrēs habēmus. 10. Belgās cum Germānīs superāmus.

117. NOTE. In the following sentences, and in all the English-Latin exercises in the following lessons (until special rules are learned in Lesson XXXIV and after), use a preposition when one is used in English, except when a whole prepositional phrase may be translated into Latin by the genitive or by the dative of indirect object with the verb **dō.**

1. Into the towns; in the towns; to (**ad**) the towns. 2. The brave Gauls; the braver Gauls; the bravest Gauls. 3. Among the brave Gauls; among the braver Gauls. 4. By the brave man; by a braver man; by the bravest man. 5. Down from the hill; out of the forest; with our legions. 6. I see a man of great bravery. 7. He is on a very wide river. 8. The road is longer.

LESSON XV

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

118. **dūcō, dūcere,** *lead*

dūcō, *I lead, am leading, do lead.*	**dūcimus,** *we lead,* etc.
dūcis, *you lead,* etc.	**dūcitis,** *you lead,* etc.
dūcit, *he (she, it) leads,* etc.	**dūcunt,** *they lead,* etc.

The short **e** before the final **re** of the second principal part is the sign of the third conjugation.

The present base of this verb is **dūc.**

The personal endings are the same as in the first and second conjugations, but the vowel before them is different. Here it is not the conjugation vowel as it appears in the second principal part (short **e**), but short **i**, except in the third person plural, where it is **u.**

119. **VOCABULARY**

contendō, contendere, (*struggle*)*; fight; hasten.*
dīvidō, dīvidere, *divide, separate.*
dūcō, dūcere, *lead.*
gerō, gerere, *carry on, do.*
incolō, incolere, *inhabit, live* (*in*).
mittō, mittere, *send.*

EXERCISES

120. 1. Write the conjugation of the phrase **appellō et moneō et mittō.** 2. Write the ablative singular and the genitive plural of the positive, comparative, and superlative of **fortis.** 3. Decline the Latin for *a wide river; a wider river.*

121. 1. Dūcitis; incolō; gerunt. 2. Mittis; dīvidit; contendimus. 3. Altior mōns; montēs altissimī. 4. Legiōnēs

fortēs; legiōnēs fortissimae. 5. Hominēs nōbilissimōs in Galliam dūcit. 6. Bellum magnum in Galliā gerimus. 7. Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquītānīs dīvidit. 8. Belgae partem Galliae incolunt. 9. Linguā nostrā Celtās Gallōs appellāmus. 10. Ex prōvinciā cōnsul contendit.

122. 1. Long walls; longer walls; the longest walls. 2. He leads; you send; I hasten. 3. They are carrying-on war with* a very brave enemy. 4. A wider river separates the Gauls from* the Germans. 5. The Sequanians inhabit a part of Gaul. 6. We are not sending men out of* the province into Gaul.

LESSON XVI

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, AND OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-IŌ*

123. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

audiō, audīre, *hear*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiō, *I hear, I am hearing, I do hear*	audīmus, *we hear,* etc.
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

The present base of this verb is **aud.**

The **ī** in the present infinitive is the sign of the fourth conjugation.

* See §117, Note.

124. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN *-IŌ*

A few verbs are partly like the third conjugation and partly like the fourth in their inflection. The first two principal parts indicate this; e. g., **capiō, capere,** *take.* The first form would apparently indicate a verb of the fourth conjugation, but the short **e** of the second principal part marks it as belonging to the third conjugation. Such a verb is described as belonging to the *third conjugation in* **-iō.**

125. Verbs belonging to the third conjugation in **-iō** have fourth conjugation forms where the fourth conjugation endings have two successive vowels, but elsewhere they have third conjugation forms.

capiō,* *I take,* etc.	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt*

126. VOCABULARY

audiō, audīre, *hear.*
impediō, impedīre, *hinder.*
mūniō, mūnīre, *fortify.*
veniō, venīre, *come.*

capiō, capere, *take.*
faciō, facere, *make, do.*

Give English words derived from **audiō, impediō,** and **capiō.**

EXERCISES

127. Conjugate in the present indicative active **prohibeō et superō; teneō et faciō; veniō et laudō.**

---

* Fourth conjugation endings.

128. 1. Audit; impediō; facimus. 2. Veniunt; capitis; mūnīs. 3. Hostēs ad oppidum itēr faciunt. 4. Nāvēs nostrās capit lēgātus. 5. Ad flūmina lātiōra venīmus. 6. Celtae tertiam partem Galliae incolunt. 7. Oppida omnia mūnīmus. 8. Virōs nōbilissimōs impedītis. 9. Mūrum longiōrem facit. 10. Flūmen Sēquana Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidit.

129. 1. You hear; you take. 2. We hinder; we make. 3. They fortify; they take. 4. We are coming down-from the higher mountains. 5. You are fortifying three towns. 6. They are making a very long bridge.

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

130. Memory Work.

1. Nouns of the Third Declension (§§77, 83, 90, 96).
2. Rules for the Genitive Plural of Third Declension Nouns (§97).
3. Rules for the Gender of Third Declension Nouns (§98).
4. Adjectives of the Third Declension (§§103, 112).
5. The Comparison of Adjectives (§111).
6. Present Indicative Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations (§§118, 123–125).

131. Latin-English Vocabulary.

1. Give the memoranda (the nominative singular, genitive singular, gender, nominative plural, genitive plural, and meaning) of the following nouns:

Aquītānus	**homō**	**mercātor**	**pars**
cīvitās	**hostis**	**mīles**	**pōns**
collis	**iter**	**mīlia**	**Sēquanus**
cōnsul	**legiō**	**mōns**	**sōl**
fīnis	**lēx**	**nāvis**	**tempus**
flūmen	**mare**	**opus**	**virtūs**
Gallus			

2. Give the entire nominative singular and the meaning of **ācer, celer, fortis, nōbilis, omnis,** and **oriēns**; the entire nominative plural and the meaning of **trēs.** Compare **altus, fortis, lātus, longus,** and **nōbilis.**

3. Give the first two principal parts and the meaning of the following verbs:

audiō, capiō, contendō, dīvidō, dūcō, faciō, gerō, impediō, incolō, mittō, mūniō, veniō.

4. Give the meanings of the following prepositions, and the case used with each:

ā or ab, ad, cum, dē, ē or ex, in, inter.

132. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following words:

all	fortify	manliness	ship
Aquitanian	from (three words)	march	soldier
away from	Gaul (a person)	mountain	state
between	hasten	noted	struggle
brave	hear, hear of	on	sun
bravery	hill	out from	swift
bridge	hinder	out of	take
by	in	part	territory
carry on	inhabit	prominent	three
come	into	quick	thousand
concerning	journey	rising	thousands
consul	keen	river	time

divide	law	road	to
do	lead	sea	toward
down from	legion	send	trader
end	live in	separate	with
enemy	make	Sequanian	work
fight	man (not **vir**)	sharp	

LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE*

133. **TEXT**

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; ūnam[1] partem incolunt Belgae, aliam[1] Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae. Nostrā linguā Celtās Gallōs appellāmus. (1–3,* Ch. 1.)

NOTE

1. **ūnam, aliam:** these forms are the feminine singular accusative of the adjectives **ūnus,** *one,* and **alius,** *another,* which are slightly irregular in their declension and will be given later.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE*

134. **hīc,** *this,* plu. *these*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**hīc**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**hōrum**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hīs**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**haec**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

For the pronunciation of the genitive and dative singular, see §5.

* The references after the text are to the lines as numbered in the continuous text, pages 317-333.

135. **ille**, *that*, plu. *those*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

136. These demonstratives have two uses.

1. When used like an adjective, **hīc** means *this* in the singular and *these* in the plural, and **ille** means *that* in the singular and *those* in the plural.

2. When used like a pronoun (or substantive), the masculine of **hīc** means *this man*, the feminine *this woman*, the neuter *this thing* (plural *these men, these women, these things*); and the masculine of **ille** means *that man*, the feminine *that woman*, the neuter *that thing* (plural *those men, those women, those things*).

Both these pronouns however are often to be translated by emphatic personal pronouns of the third person, *he, she, it, they*, and their other cases.

137. **VOCABULARY**

hīc, haec, hoc, *this*, plu. *these;* see §§134, 136.
ille, illa, illud, *that*, plu. *those;* see §§135, 136.

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *custom.*

differunt, present indicative active, third plural, of the irregular verb **differō**, *differ, be different.*

EXERCISES

138. Decline **hīc vir; illud iter; haec magna nāvis.**

139. 1. Hīc cōnsul; ille mercātor. 2. Huius īnstitūtī; illīus lēgis. 3. Illa tempora; haec opera. 4. Institūta nostra laudant. 5. Gallī īnstitūtīs differunt. 6. Ad illās silvās venīmus. 7. Hoc opus est longum. 8. Hōs impedītis. 9. Haec facimus. 10. Illās videō.

140. 1. These parts (nom.); of those mountains. 2. Those rivers are in* the mountains. 3. I am giving grain to* these (men). 4. We are making that bridge. 5. They are leading the legions into that state. 6. He is taking this (thing).

LESSON XVIII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

141. TEXT

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae. Nostrā linguā Celtās Gallōs appellāmus. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus differunt. (1–4, Ch. 1.)

142. THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

For the pronunciation of the genitive singular, see §5, *a*.

* See §117, Note.

143. The demonstrative **is** has two uses.

1. When it agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case, it is a demonstrative adjective meaning either *this* or *that,* plural *these* or *those.*

2. When it does not so agree, it is used as the personal pronoun of the third person, the singular meaning *he, she,* or *it,* according to the gender of the noun to which it refers, and the plural *they.*

Thus, **eī mercātōrēs,** *these* (or *those*) *traders;* **eōs mercātōrēs moneō,** *I am warning these* (or *those*) *traders.* But **eī** alone, *they,* **eōrum, eārum,** *their,* etc.; **eōs videō,** *I see them,* **eam videō,** *I see her,* **id videō,** *I see it.* Notice carefully the sentence, **est mōns proximus, atque ad eum Gallōs dūcō,** *there is a mountain very near, and to* IT *I am leading the Gauls;* here **eum** is masculine in Latin because it refers to **mōns,** while its English equivalent is neuter because the word *mountain* is neuter.

144. **VOCABULARY**

importō, importāre, *import.*
is, ea, id, *he, she, it, they,* etc.; *this, that,* etc.; see §§142, 143.
proptereā, adv., *on this account.*
quod, subordinate conjunction, *because.*
saepe, adv., *often.*

EXERCISES

145. 1. Decline **hīc** and **ille.** 2. Decline **id altum mare; is lātus pōns; ea nōbilis silva.**

146. 1. Eum videō; eam videō; eōs audiō. 2. Eōrum cīvitās; eius frūmentum. 3. Id ad Gallōs importāmus. 4. Eōs mīlitēs in Galliam dūcunt. 5. Saepe bellum cum Gallīs gerimus, proptereā quod in prōvinciam veniunt. 6. Saepe in nostrōs fīnēs haec Gallī important. 7. Īnstitūta illa differunt. 8. Belgae fortissimī sunt Gallōrum proptereā quod cum Germānīs saepe contendunt. 9. Hominēs ad id oppidum mittō. 10. Eius gladium habeō.

147. 1. He sees it. 2. They hear her. 3. I see their father. 4. We often come to him. 5. We are fortifying that part of the town. 6. A bridge separates them. 7. His legions are on the march.

LESSON XIX

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

148. TEXT

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit; Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.[1] (4–6, Ch. 1.)

NOTE

1 The two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular.

149. THE ENGLISH RELATIVE PRONOUN

		M., F.	N.	M., F., N.
Singular and plural	Nom.	who	which	that
	Poss.	whose		——
	Obj.	whom	which	that

150. THE LATIN RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who, which*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

For the pronunciation of the genitive and dative singular, see §5.

151. SYNTAX OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

MODEL

Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, videō, *I see the Germans, who live across the Rhine.*

NOTE. **Germānōs** is masculine plural accusative, while **quī** is masculine plural nominative. The same is true of the English words *Germans* and *who*. The rule then is evidently the same in the two languages.

152. ***RULE. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.***

153. MODEL FOR PARSING. **Quī** is a relative pronoun, agreeing with its antecedent **Germānōs** in masculine gender, plural number; it is nominative case, subject of **incolunt.**

154. DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

quis (quī), *who? what?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	(quae)	quae
Gen.	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quōrum	(quārum)	quōrum
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	(quibus)	quibus
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	(quās)	quae
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	(quibus)	quibus

The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives only.

Thus: *Who is coming?* **Quis venit**
What do you see? **Quid vidēs**

But: *What man is coming?* **Quī vir venit**
What river do you see? **Quod flūmen vidēs**

155. VOCABULARY

quī, quae, quod, relative pronoun, *who, which,* etc.; see §§149–152.

quis, quae, quid, interrogative pronoun and adjective, *who, what,* etc.; see §154.

ab-sum, ab-esse, *be from, be away;* conjugated like **sum.** In translating an adverb with this word, put the adverb before the word *from* or *away;* e. g., **longē abesse,** *to be far away.*

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f., *refinement.*

longē, adv., *far;* superlative **longissimē,** *farthest, very far.*

What is the English noun derived from **hūmānitās,** and what is its usual meaning? Can you see its connection with **homō,** from which **hūmānitās** is derived?

EXERCISES

156. Decline the words meaning *this river; a brave man; that soldier.*

157. 1. Videō hominem quī venit. 2. Homō quem videō venit. 3. Videō hominem cuius virtūs est magna. 4. Videō hominem cui frūmentum dant. 5. Videō hominēs quōrum frūmentum est in hōc oppidō. 6. Quis eum videt? 7. Quem audīs? 8. Belgae longissimē absunt. 9. Belgae sunt fortissimī omnium Gallōrum propterea quod ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt. 10. Hūmānitās prōvinciae est magna. 11. Cōnsul est vir magnae hūmānitātis. 12. Quem hominem audīs?

NOTE. In translating English into Latin, use forms of **is** to mean *this* or *that* only when a relative pronoun is to follow. In other places use **hīc** or **ille.**

158. 1. The man whom you see. 2. The men whom you see. 3. The town which you see. 4. The towns which are

large. 5. The mountain which you see. 6. The ships which you see. 7. Those (things) which we import. 8. The part which the Celts inhabit is far away. 9. Whom do you see? 10. What is he making? 11. What men do you see?

LESSON XX

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

159. TEXT

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit; Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. (4–7, Ch. 1.)

160. PRESENT (reviewed), IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

sum, esse, *be*

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*
es, *you are*	**estis**, *you are*
est, *he is, there is*	**sunt**, *they are, there are*

Imperfect

eram, *I was*	**erāmus**, *we were*
erās, *you were*	**erātis**, *you were*
erat, *he was, there was*	**erant**, *they were, there were*

Future

erō, *I shall be*	**erimus**, *we shall be*
eris, *you will be*	**eritis**, *you will be*
erit, *he will be, there will be*	**erunt**, *they will be, there will be*

161. *Imperfect* is the name given to the Latin tense that is equivalent to the English *past progressive* or the simple *past*. In the verb **sum** the imperfect is regularly translated by the simple *past*.

Notice that the future has the same endings as the present of **dūcō**.

162. **VOCABULARY**

animus, -ī, m., *mind, energy, courage.*

commeō, commeāre, *resort.*
effēminō, effēmināre, *weaken.*
spectō, spectāre, *face, stretch.*

Give English words derived from **effēminō** and **spectō**.

EXERCISES

163. 1. Write the declension of the words meaning: *What soldier? What law? What work?* 2. Write the declension of the masculine of **is**, and translate each form.

164. 1. Es; erās; eris. 2. Erunt; erant. 3. Legiō quam vidēs fortissima erat. 4. Mercātōrēs nōn saepe ad Belgās commeant. 5. Ad reliquōs Gallōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant. 6. Mercātōrēs important ea quae animōs Gallōrum effēminant. 7. Prōvincia ad orientem sōlem spectat. 8. Quem in oppidum dūcitis?

165. 1. We are; we were; we shall be. 2. The man whom you see was our friend. 3. The men whom you see will be in the province. 4. Those (things) which we import weaken our minds. 5. I see towns which are large. 6. This was the nearest road into Gaul.

LESSON XXI

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

166. TEXT

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, et nōn saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs commeant et ea quae animōs effēminant important. (6–9, Ch. 1.)

PRESENT (reviewed), IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

167. FIRST CONJUGATION

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. laudō, *I praise, I am praising, I do praise*	laudāmus, *we praise*
2. laudās, *you praise*	laudātis, *you praise*
3. laudat, *he praises*	laudant, *they praise*

Imperfect

1. laudābam, *I was praising, I praised*	laudābāmus, *we were praising, we praised*
2. laudābās, *you were praising, you praised*	laudābātis, *you were praising, you praised*
3. laudābat, *he was praising, he praised*	laudābant, *they were praising, they praised*

Future

1. laudābō, *I shall praise*	laudābimus, *we shall praise*
2. laudābis, *you will praise*	laudābitis, *you will praise*
3. laudābit, *he will praise*	laudābunt, *they will praise*

168. SECOND CONJUGATION

Present

1.	**moneō**, *I warn, I am warning,* [*I do-warn*	**monēmus**, *we warn*, etc.
2.	**monēs**	**monētis**
3.	**monet**	**monent**

Imperfect

1.	**monēbam**, *I was warning,* [*I warned*	**monēbāmus**, *we were warning,* [*we warned*
2.	**monēbās**	
3.	**monēbat**	**monēbant**

Future

1.	**monēbō**, *I shall warn*	**monēbimus**, *we shall warn*
2.	**monēbis**	**monēbitis**
3.	**monēbit**	**monēbunt**

169. After the conjugation vowel in the imperfect and future comes the *tense sign*, which in the imperfect is **bā**, in the future **bi**. These are followed by the usual personal endings.

The endings of the future are the same as in the present of **dūcō**. See §118.

DRILL EXERCISES

170. Decline the Latin for *a keen mind; three traders.*

171. MODEL FOR VERB ANALYSIS: (1) **laudābam**, (2) **laudābis**. 1. **laud** is the present base, **ā** is the conjugation vowel, **bā** is the sign of the imperfect tense, and **m** is the ending of the first person singular active. 2. **laud** is the present base, **ā** is the conjugation vowel, **bi** is the sign of the future tense, and **s** is the ending of the second person singular active.

172. Analyze the following forms, as above, and translate.

1. Superat; superābat; superābit. 2. Tenēbit; tenēbat.

3. Appellābam; appellābunt. 4. Vidēbit; habēbis. 5. Prohibēmus; occupābitis.

173. Give the tense, voice, person, and number of the following forms, and translate:

1. We shall conquer. 2. We shall have. 3. You were seizing the town. 4. You were holding the town. 5. We are preparing. 6. They see.

174. **VOCABULARY**

continenter, adv., *continually.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone.*

trāns, preposition with accusative, *across.*

Give English words in which *trans-* is used as a prefix, and tell their meaning.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

175. 1. Trāns Rhēnum Germānōs vidēbāmus. 2. Omnia oppida trāns Rhodanum habēbitis. 3. Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 4. Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs quibuscum* bellum saepe gerunt. 5. Belgae continenter cum Germānīs bellum gerunt.

176. 1. This is the Rhine; that is the Rhone. 2. We were far away from the sea. 3. I shall see the rivers which you are praising. 4. There were very brave men in that legion. 5. Our soldiers were on a longer march.

---

* In this phrase **cum** is *enclitic,* i. e., it is appended to the word which it governs. Translate it before **quibus.** See §12.

LESSON XXII

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

177. TEXT

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, et nōn saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs commeant et ea quae animōs effēminant important; et proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. (6–11, Ch. 1.)

PRESENT (reviewed), IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

178. THIRD CONJUGATION

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcō, *I lead,* etc.	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

Imperfect

dūcēbam, *I was leading, I led*	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

Future

dūcam, *I shall lead*	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

179. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present

audiō, *I hear*, etc.	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

Imperfect

audiēbam, *I was hearing, I heard*	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future

audiam, *I shall hear*	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

180. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

Present

capiō, *I take*, etc.	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

Imperfect

capiēbam, *I was taking, I took*	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

Future

capiam, *I shall take*	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capient

DRILL EXERCISES

181. Give a *synopsis** of **videō et superō** in the third person plural. 2. Give a synopsis of **gerō et faciō** in the third person singular. 3. Conjugate in the future **occupō et habeō.** 4. Conjugate in the imperfect **faciō et gerō.**

182. Analyze the following forms, as in §170, and translate:

1. Dūcit; dūcēbat; dūcet. 2. Mūniēs; mūniēbās. 3. Capient; capiunt. 4. Tenet; mittet. 5. Gerētis; incolēbātis; facitis.

183. Give the tense, voice, person, and number of the following forms, and translate:

1. I am fortifying; I was fortifying; I shall fortify. 2. You (sing.) are sending; you (sing.) were sending; you (sing.) will send. 3. He sees; he hears. 4. We shall hear; we shall hold. 5. You (plu.) will take; we inhabited; they were importing.

184. VOCABULARY

ob, preposition with acc., *on account of.*
prae-cēdō, prae-cēdere, literally, *go before,* i. e., *surpass.*
quoque, adverb, *also.*

What is the English verb derived from **praecēdō?**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

185. 1. Helvētiī quoque sunt fortēs. 2. Ob eam causam Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. 3. Hominēs quōs vidēs capiēmus. 4. Ob eās causās hominēs continenter ex proximīs cīvitātibus veniēbant. 5. Montēs erant altiōrēs et flūmina lātissima.

* A *synopsis* of a verb consists of the forms of the same person and number from each tense.

186. 1. The lieutenant was coming to that river. 2. We shall make a march to the river Rhine also. 3. They will lèad to the Rhone the men that they see. 4. You will see the men that they are leading. 5. (There) will be daily battles in the mountains.

LESSON XXIII

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

187. **TEXT**

Ob eam causam Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. (11, 12, Ch. 1.)

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

188. FIRST CONJUGATION

laud**or**, *I am called, am being called*	laudā**mur**, *we are called,* etc.
laudā**ris**	laudā**minī**
laudā**tur**	laud**antur**

189. SECOND CONJUGATION

mone**or**, *I am warned, am being warned*	monē**mur**, *we are warned,* etc.
monē**ris**	monē**minī**
monē**tur**	mon**entur**

190. The personal endings of the passive voice are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First person	*or, *r	mur
Second person	ris	minī
Third person	tur	*ntur

*A vowel before these endings is always short.

DRILL EXERCISES

191. 1. Decline the Latin for *all the supply.* 2. Make **is** agree with the following nouns, and then decline the expressions: **tempus; virtūs; lēgātus.**

192. Analyze the following verb forms, and translate.

1. Laudō; laudor. 2. Vidēs; vidēris. 3. Mīles laudat; mīles laudātur. 4. Hostēs prohibēmus; hostēs prohibentur. 5. Hostēs capiēmus; hostēs audiēbāmus.

193. Give the tense, voice, person, and number of the following forms, and translate:

1. I see; I am seen. 2. You are conquering; you are being conquered. 3. They are praising the troops; the troops are being praised. 4. You are called brave. 5. We shall see and hear.

194. VOCABULARY

atque, coördinate conjunction, *and;* emphasizing what follows.
cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, supply;* plural, *forces, troops.*
ferē, adv., *almost.*
undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

195. 1. Celtae linguā nostrā Gallī appellantur. 2. Helvētiī ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs contendunt. 3. Cōpiae hostium undique videntur. 4. Portae nostrae atque mūrī occupantur. 5. Animī Gallōrum effēminantur. 6. Laudāmur propterea quod Helvētiōs praecēdimus.

196. 1. The towns which you see are held by the enemy (plu.). 2. The Belgians are called the bravest of the Gauls.

3. On all sides were those high mountains. 4. We shall send our troops into Gaul. 5. You were carrying on war in almost all the towns.

LESSON XXIV

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

197. TEXT

Ob eam causam Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. (11–13, Ch. 1.)

PRESENT (reviewed), IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

198. FIRST CONJUGATION

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
laudor, *I am (being) called*	laudāmur
laudāris *or* -re	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur
Imperfect	
laudābar, *I was (being) called*	laudābāmur
laudābāris *or* -re	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur
Future	
laudābor, *I shall be called*	laudābimur
laudāberis *or* -re	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

199. SECOND CONJUGATION

Present

moneor, *I am (being) warned*	**monēmur**
monēris *or* **-re**	**monēminī**
monētur	**monentur**

Imperfect

monēbar, *I was (being) warned*	**monēbāmur**
monēbāris *or* **-re**	**monēbāminī**
monēbātur	**monēbantur**

Future

monēbor, *I shall be warned*	**monēbimur**
monēberis *or* **-re**	**monēbiminī**
monēbitur	**monēbuntur**

200. In these tenses a form of the passive differs from the corresponding form of the active *only in the personal endings;* EXCEPT that in the second person singular of the future, the vowel before the personal ending is **i** in the active and **e** in the passive, e. g.,

Active	**laudāb-i-s**	**monēb-i-s**
Passive	**laudāb-e-ris**	**monēb-e-ris**

201. Therefore the following statements are true for the passive as for the active:

bā is the sign of the imperfect tense, and is always preceded by a long vowel;

bi is the sign of the future tense in the first and second conjugations, and is always preceded by a long vowel.

DRILL EXERCISES

202. 1. Give a synopsis in the third person plural passive of **prohibeō et comparō.** 2. Conjugate in the future passive **appellō et teneō.**

203. 1. Appellor; appellābar; appellābor. 2. Tenēbātur; tenēbitur. 3. Prohibēberis; prohibēbāminī. 4. Oppida occupābantur; oppida occupābuntur. 5. Mūnient; faciēbātis.

204. 1. I am held; you (sing.) were held; he will be held. 2. We shall be conquered; you (plu.) were being conquered; they are being conquered. 3. You (sing.) will see; you (sing.) will be seen. 4. They are imported; they were imported; they will be imported. 5. I shall take; he will take.

205. **VOCABULARY**

aut, coördinate conjunction, *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

cum, subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although.* If it introduces a verb in the indicative, it means *when.*

suus, -a, -um, possessive adjective, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*), according to the subject of its clause or sentence.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

206. 1. Helvētiī aut Germānōs prohibent aut cum eīs contendunt. 2. Helvētiī Germānōs fīnibus suīs prohibent. 3. Helvētiī cum Germānīs contendunt cum eōs prohibent. 4. Helvētiī in fīnibus Germānōrum saepe bellum gerunt. 5. Ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum hostibus contendēbant.

207. 1. He sees his (own) forces. 2. They see their (own) friend. 3. Fields will be given to the men. 4. We shall send the grain which is held in the town. 5. You have plenty of grain.

LESSON XXV

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

208. TEXT

Ob eam causam Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus cōs prohibent, aut in Germānōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. (11–14, Ch. 1.)

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

209. THIRD CONJUGATION

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	
dūcor, *I am (being) led*	dūcimur
dūceris *or* -re	dūciminī
dūcitur	dūcuntur
Imperfect	
dūcēbar, *I was (being) led*	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris *or* -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur
Future	
dūcar, *I shall be led*	dūcēmur
dūcēris *or* -re	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

1. imperator *2. legatus* *3. centurio*
4. Gallic warrior *5. Gallic standard bearer* *6. Gallic chief*

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS

210. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audior, *I am (being) heard*	audīmur
audīris *or* -re	audīminī
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

audiēbar, *I was (being) heard*	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

audiar, *I shall be heard*	audiēmur
audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī
audiētur	audientur

211. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capior, *I am (being) taken*	capimur
caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar, *I was (being) taken*	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar, *I shall be taken*	capiēmur
capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

212. In these tenses a form of the passive differs from the corresponding form of the active *only in the personal endings;* EXCEPT that in the second person singular of the third conjugation present, the vowel before the personal ending is **i** in the active and **e** in the passive, e. g.,

Active	**dūc-i-s**	**cap-i-s**
Passive	**dūc-e-ris**	**cap-e-ris**

213. Therefore the following statements are true for the passive as for the active:

bā is the sign of the imperfect tense in all conjugations, and is always preceded by a long vowel;

a is the sign of the future in the first person singular, and **ē** elsewhere, in the third and fourth conjugations.

DRILL EXERCISES

214. 1. Give a synopsis in the second person plural passive of **mittō et impediō.** 2. Conjugate in the present passive **capiō et mūniō.**

215. 1. Capitur; dūceris; audiētur. 2. Incolēbātur; impedīmus; mittentur. 3. Oppidum mūniētur; bella gerēbantur. 4. Dūcēris; impedīmur. 5. Faciētis; veniēbāmus.

216. 1. I am led; you (sing.) were being led; he will be led. 2. We are heard; we were heard; we shall be heard. 3. They are coming; they are hindered. 4. You (sing.) are holding; you (sing.) will be held. 5. You (sing.) are being sent; you (sing.) will be sent. 6. They are led; they will be given.

217. VOCABULARY

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

imperium, -ī, n., *rule, control.*

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, f. [**nōbilis,** *noted, noble*], *nobility,* often in the sense of a collective noun, i. e., *the nobles.*

ob-tineō, ob-tinēre, *hold* (stronger than **teneō**). For pronunciation, see §6.

Give an English adjective derived from **imperium.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

218. 1. Ūna pars ā Gallīs obtinētur. 2. Imperium virī fortēs obtinent. 3. Nōbilitās Helvētiōrum coniūrātiōnem faciēbat. 4. Hostēs flūmine impediēbantur. 5. Gallia initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō.

219. 1. A long time will be given to the men. 2. We are making a conspiracy. 3. We were fighting with the legions. 4. The control of Gaul will be held by the nobility of the Helvetians. 5. The legions which you see are coming from Gaul.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

220. Memory Work.

1. Declension, meanings, and uses of **hīc, ille, is,** and **quī** (§§134–136, 142, 143, 150–152).

2. Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive (App. 66–71).

221. Latin-English Vocabulary.

1. Give the memoranda of the following nouns:

animus, coniūrātiō, imperium, īnstitūtum, nōbilitās, Rhēnus, Rhodanus.

2. Give the entire nominative singular and four meanings of **suus.**

3. Give the first two principal parts and the meaning of the following verbs:

absum, importō, obtineō, praecēdō, spectō.

4. Give the meaning of **ob** and **trāns**, and the case used with each.

5. Give the meaning of each of the following words, and tell what part of speech it is:

atque, aut, continenter, cum (conjunction), **ferē, longē, longissimē, propterea, quod, quoque, saepe, undique.**

222. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following words:

across	far	it	surpass
almost	very far	its	that
also	farthest	its (own)	their
and (two words)	from all sides	mind	their (own)
be away	he	nobility	them
be from	her (poss.)	often	these
because	her (obj.)	on all sides	they
bring in	her (own)	on this account	this
conspiracy	him	or	those
continually	his	Rhine	when
control	his (own)	Rhone	who
custom	hold (two words)	rule	whom
either	import	she	whose

LESSON XXVI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

223. TEXT

Hōrum omnium ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. (14–16, Ch. 1.)

224. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

sum, esse, *fuī*, *be*

Perfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
fuī, *I was, I have been*	*fu*imus
*fu*istī	*fu*istis
*fu*it	*fu*ērunt, *fu*ēre

Pluperfect

*fu*eram, *I had been*	*fu*erāmus
*fu*erās	*fu*erātis
*fu*erat	*fu*erant

Future Perfect

*fu*erō, *I shall have been*	*fu*erimus
*fu*eris	*fu*eritis
*fu*erit	*fu*erint

225. The endings of the perfect indicative active are:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
First person	-ī	-imus
Second person	-istī	-istis
Third person	-it	-ērunt, -ēre

226. The formation of the tenses may be described as follows:

perfect = *fu* (perfect base) + a special set of personal endings.
pluperfect = *fu* (perfect base) + **erā** (= *had*, sign of past perfect) + the regular personal endings.
future perfect = *fu* (perfect base) + **eri** (= *shall* or *will have*, sign of future perfect) + the regular personal endings.

Notice that the **i** is retained in the third person plural of the future perfect, **fuerint**.

Notice the two translations of the perfect, *I was* and *I have been*.

DRILL EXERCISES

227. 1. Give a synopsis of **sum** through the indicative in the first singular, third singular, and third plural. 2. Decline the Latin for *a great conspiracy.*

228. 1. Es; eratis; fuimus. 2. Fueritis; sunt; erāmus. 3. Fuistī; fueratis; eritis. 4. Fuerint; fuerant; fuērunt. 5. Tenētur; tenēbantur. 6. Mittēmus; mittēmur.

229. 1. I have been; you had been; he will have been. 2. You were; you will be; you will have been. 3. We have been; you (plu.) had been. 4. You will be seen; you will be sent. 5. I shall make; you (sing.) will make. 6. It was held; they will be held.

230. VOCABULARY

contineō, continēre, *bound.*
etiam, adverb, *also.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, superlative, *most distant, farthest.*
Ōceanus, -ī, m., *the Ocean.*

Give the English verbs from **obtineō** (§217) and **contineō.** What is our word from **extrēmus?**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

231. 1. Ūna pars Galliae flūminibus continētur. 2. Gallia ad Ōceanum etiam spectābat. 3. Extrēma pars Galliae ā Belgīs incolēbātur. 4. Extrēmī Gallī reliquōs virtūte praecēdēbant. 5. Ea quae ā mercātōribus importantur animōs effēminant.

232. 1. All parts of Gaul were bounded (by) rivers. 2. The Belgians were the most distant. 3. The Helvetians also are brave. 4. The rule of Gaul will be held by the Helvetians. 5. You were making a conspiracy.

LESSON XXVII

PRINCIPAL PARTS AND THEIR USES
PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM

233. TEXT

Hōrum omnium ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum. (14–17, Ch. 1.)

PRINCIPAL PARTS

234. The principal parts of a Latin verb are as follows:

pres. indic. act. first singular	pres. infin. act.	perf. indic. act. first singular	supine
laudō	laudāre	*laudāvī*	LAUDĀTum

235. The first of the principal parts shows how the conjugation begins. It is always *convenient* to know the first form (this is the form by which the verb is designated), and it is *necessary* in the third conjugation, to distinguish the ordinary verb of this conjugation (like dūcō) from the verbs of the third conjugation in -iō (like capiō).

236. The second of the principal parts gives the *present* base (see §240), and tells to what conjugation the verb belongs by the characteristic vowel that precedes the final **-re**, e. g.,

1	2	3	4	3
laud-ā-re	**mon-ē-re**	**dūc-e-re**	**aud-ī-re**	**cap-e-re**

237. The third of the principal parts gives the *perfect base* (see §241).

238. The fourth of the principal parts gives the *supine base* (see §242).

BASES

239. Three bases are used in the conjugation of a verb—the present, the perfect, and the supine.

240. In any *regular* verb the present base is found by dropping the last three letters from the present infinitive active.

241. In *any* verb the perfect base is found by dropping the last letter from the perfect indicative active.

242. In *any* verb the supine base is found by dropping the last two letters from the supine.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL VERBS

243. To conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of any verb, obtain the perfect base from the principal parts as directed above, and add the same endings as for these tenses of **sum**. See §224.

These tenses can *not* be conjugated until the principal parts are known.

244. Learn thoroughly the principal parts of the following verbs, and their meanings.

laudō, laudāre, *laudāvī*, LAUDĀTum, *praise*
dō, dare, *dedī*, DATum, *give*

moneō, monēre, *monuī*, MONITum, *warn*
videō, vidēre, *vīdī*, VĪSum, *see*

dūcō, dūcere, *dūxī*, DUCTum, *lead*
gerō, gerere, *gessī*, GESTum, *carry on*

audiō, audīre, *audīvī*, AUDĪTum, *hear*
veniō, venīre, *vēnī*, VENTum, *come*

capiō, capere, *cēpī*, CAPTum, *take*
faciō, facere, *fēcī*, FACTum, *make, do*

245.

Perfect

laudāv
monu
dūx **-ī, -istī, -it; -imus, -istis, -ērunt** or **-ēre** — *I praised, I have praised*, etc.
audīv
cēp

Pluperfect

laudāv
monu
dūx **-eram, -erās, -erat; -erāmus, -erātis, -erant** — *I had praised*, etc.
audīv
cēp

Future Perfect

laudāv
monu
dūx **-erō, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, erint** — *I shall have praised*, etc.
audīv
cēp

For the full conjugation of these tenses see App. 67–71.

246. In the same way give the conjugation of these tenses of **dō, videō, gerō, veniō, faciō.**

247. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN VERBS

It will be a great help in learning the principal parts of Latin verbs to think of English words derived from the present and supine bases. Thus from the present bases of the verbs in §244 are derived *laud, e-vident, pro-duce, belli-gerent, audience, con-venient;* from the supine bases, *laudatory, date, monitor, vision, pro-duction, gesture, auditor, auditory, auditorium, con-vention, capture, captive, fact, faction, factory,* etc.

DRILL EXERCISES

248. Give a synopsis throughout the indicative active in the first singular, third singular, and third plural, of **dō, videō, gerō, veniō, faciō.**

249. 1. Laudāvit; monueram; dūxerint. 2. Audiet; audīverit. 3. Capit; cēpit. 4. Dabunt; dedērunt. 5. Vīdistī; vīderāmus. 6. Gerentur; mittēbāminī. 7. Venit; vēnit.

250. 1. I gave (perf.); he has carried on; they made (perf.). 2. You (sing.) had warned; you (plu.) will have warned. 3. They are coming; they have come. 4. We are carrying on; we carried on (perf.). 5. I had been; I had made. 6. They were giving; they were being given.

251. VOCABULARY

at-tingō, at-tingere, at-tigī, at-tāctum, *touch upon, border on.*
per-tineō, per-tinēre, per-tinuī, per-tentum, *extend.*
vergō, vergere, ——, ——, literally, *slope; lie, be situated.*

septentriō, septentriōnis, m.; generally plural, **septentriōnēs, septentriōnum,** literally, *the seven plow-oxen,* i e., the seven stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear; hence regularly translated *the north.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

252. 1. Ūna pars Galliae flūmen Rhēnum attingit. 2. Haec pars ad septentriōnēs vergit. 3. Belgae ad septentriōnēs pertinent. 4. Gallī ūnam partem obtinent quae initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. 5. Ūna pars, quae ā Gallīs obtinētur, Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum continētur.

253. 1. These towns will be taken. 2. We saw (perf.) the Gauls across the Rhine. 3. The Germans had led them to that river. 4. The enemy will have taken the hill. 5. Who gave (perf.) them the control of Gaul?

LESSON XXVIII

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Continued

254. TEXT

Hōrum omnium ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. (14–18, Ch. 1.)

255. PRINCIPAL PARTS

Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following verbs; give the bases of each one, and tell to what conjugation it belongs.

Like **laudō**:

appellō, appellāre, *appellāvī*, APPELLĀTum, *call.*
comparō, comparāre, etc., *prepare.*
importō, etc., *import.*
occupō, etc., *seize.*
spectō, etc., *face, stretch.*
superō, etc., *conquer, overcome.*

at-tingō, at-tingere, *at-tigī*, AT-TĀCTum, *touch upon, border on.*
con-tendō, con-tendere, *con-tendī*, CON-TENTum, *fight, hasten.*
dīvidō, dīvidere, *dīvīsī*, DĪVĪSum, *divide, separate.*
habeō, habēre, *habuī*, HABITum, *have, hold.*
im-pediō, im-pedīre, *im-pedīvī*, IM-PEDĪTum, *hinder.*
in-colō, in-colere, *in-coluī*, ——, *inhabit, live in.*
mittō, mittere, *mīsī*, MISSum, *send.*
mūniō, mūnīre, *mūnīvī*, MŪNĪTum, *fortify.*
teneō, tenēre, *tenuī*, TENTum, *hold.*
vergō, vergere, ——, ——, *slope; lie.*

Give one English word from the present base, and another from the supine base, of **importō, occupō, contendō, dīvidō,** and **per-mittō.**

DRILL EXERCISES

256. Give a synopsis throughout the indicative active, in the first singular, third singular, and third plural, of **importō, teneō, attingō, mūniō.**

257. 1. Attingēbat; contenderat; dīvīsimus. 2. Impediam; impedientur; incoluerant. 3. Mīsimus; mittimur; mittēmur. 4. Mūnīvistī; mūnīveris; superāvimus. 5. Mīlitēs vēnerant. 6. Iter fēcimus.

258. 1. He had seized; they will seize. 2. You will be sent; it was being fortified. 3. We have hindered; you

had given. 4. We shall have conquered; we were hastening; they had divided. 5. We inhabit; we shall inhabit.

259. VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow, limited.*
īnferus, -a, -um, *low.*

cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *desire, fondness.*
rēgnum, -ī, *royal power, sovereignty.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

260. 1. Nostra cupiditās rēgnī* fuit magna. 2. Belgae ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent. 3. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum fuērunt angustī. 4. Gallia ad septentriōnēs spectat. 5. Sōlem orientem vīdimus.

261. 1. We sent men to the lower hills. 2. The enemy (plu.) fortified (perf.) the town. 3. You (sing.) did not seize (perf.) the royal power. 4. We shall praise his fondness for royal power (gen.). 5. That legion will be sent to our state.

LESSON XXIX

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

262. TEXT

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus initium capiunt; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. (18–20, Ch. 1.)

*After **cupiditās** a genitive may be translated by *for*.

263. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

Perfect

I was praised, or *I have been praised*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
LAUDĀTus (-a, -um) sum	LAUDĀTī (-ae, -a) sumus
LAUDĀTus es	LAUDĀTī estis
LAUDĀTus est	LAUDĀTī sunt

Pluperfect

I had been praised

LAUDĀTus (-a, -um) eram	LAUDĀTī (-ae, -a) erāmus
LAUDĀTus erās	LAUDĀTī erātis
LAUDĀTus erat	LAUDĀTī erant

Future Perfect

I shall have been praised

LAUDĀTus (-a, -um) erō	LAUDĀTī (-ae, -a) erimus
LAUDĀTus eris	LAUDĀTī eritis
LAUDĀTus erit	LAUDĀTī erunt

Perfect

MONITus, -a, -um DUCTus, -a, -um AUDĪTus, -a, -um CAPTus, -a, -um	sum, es, est	MONITī, -ae, -a DUCTī, -ae, -a AUDĪTī, -ae, -a CAPTī, -ae, -a	sumus, estis, sunt

Pluperfect

MONITus, -a, -um DUCTus, -a, -um AUDĪTus, -a, -um CAPTus, -a, -um	eram, erās, erat	MONITī, -ae, -a DUCTī, -ae, -a AUDĪTī, -ae, -a CAPTī, -ae, -a	erāmus, erātis, erant

Future Perfect

MONITus, -a, -um DUCTus, -a, -um AUDĪTus, -a, -um CAPTus, -a, -um	erō, eris, erit	MONITī, -ae, -a DUCTī, -ae, -a AUDITī, -ae, -a CAPTī, -ae, -a	erimus, eritis, erunt

264. The *perfect passive participle* of all verbs, which constitutes the first part of the compound tenses in the above table, is formed on the *supine* base, and its nominative singular masculine is the same as the fourth principal part, but with final **s** instead of **m**.

This participle is a predicate adjective and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

DRILL EXERCISES

265. Give a synopsis throughout the indicative, active and passive, in the first singular, third singular, and third plural, of **superō, videō, mittō, impediō.**

266. 1. Moneor; monitus sum. 2. Vidēbitur; vīsus erit. 3. Mīserant; missī erant. 4. Impedītus erat; impedīta erat. 5. Capiēminī; vēnistis. 6. Oppidum mūnītum erat; oppida mūnīta erant. 7. Attingit; attigit. 8. Contendit;* contendimus.*

267. 1. I was praised (perf.); we were praised (perf.). 2. You (sing.) were sent (perf.); you (sing.) will be sent. 3. You (plu.) had been hindered; you (plu.) will have been hindered. 4. He has conquered; he has been conquered. 5. You (sing.) made (perf.); you (sing.) will make. 6. It will have been given. 7. They have been separated.

* What two tenses may these forms be?

268. **VOCABULARY**

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania,* the southwestern part of Gaul, inhabited by the Aquitanians.
Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*
occidēns, genitive **occidentis,** adjective, *falling, setting.*
Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenees.*

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

269. 1. Aquītānia ad Hispāniam pertinet. 2. Montēs Pȳrēnaeī proximī Aquītāniae sunt. 3. Occidentem sōlem vīdimus. 4. Aquītānia inter occidentem sōlem et septentriōnem spectat. 5. Belgae in extrēmīs Galliae partibus fuērunt.

270. 1. These towns had been fortified. 2. All the roads were narrow. 3. The rivers which you will see are large. 4. Control was being seized by the Helvetians. 5. A conspiracy had been made.

LESSON XXX

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND VERBS

271. **TEXT**

Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occidentem sōlem et septentriōnem. (20–23, Ch. 1.)

272. **SIMPLE AND COMPOUND VERBS**

The verbs *do* and *over do, rate* and *under-rate,* illustrate what may be called simple and compound verbs in English; other examples are *out-run, up-hold, back-slide.* Such modifications of verbs by particles are very common in Latin.

With some verbs the preposition is simply prefixed to the verb in all its forms:

cēdō,	**cēdere,**	**cessī,**	**cessum,**	*go (from)*
prae-cēdō,	**prae-cēdere,**	**prae-cessī,**	**prae-cessum,**	*go before, go ahead of,* i. e., *precede, surpass*
sum,	**esse,**	**fuī,**	**futūrus,**	*be*
ab-sum,	**ab-esse,**	**ā-fuī,**	**ā-futūrus,**	*be away from*

With many other verbs, however, a vowel in the principal parts of a simple verb may be weakened when the verb is compounded:

teneō,	**tenēre,**	**tenuī,**	**tentum,**	*hold*
con-tineō,	**con-tinēre,**	**con-tinuī,**	**con-tentum,**	*hold together,* i. e., *bound*
per-tineō,	**per-tinēre,**	**per-tinuī,**	**per-tentum,**	*hold through,* i. e., *extend*
ob-tineō,	**ob-tinēre,**	**ob-tinuī,**	**ob-tentum,**	*hold (against someone)*
habeō,	**habēre,**	**habuī,**	**habitum,**	*have, hold*
pro-hibeō,	**pro-hibēre,**	**pro-hibuī,**	**pro-hibitum,**	*hold off,* i. e., *keep away*

As a rule, all compounds of the same simple verb have similar principal parts. For example, the principal parts of any other compounds of **teneō** and **habeō** are like **contineō, prohibeō,** etc.

Learn the principal parts and meanings of the above verbs.

DRILL EXERCISES

273. 1. Conjugate **prohibeō** in the perfect tense, active and passive. 2. Conjugate **capiō** in the future perfect tense, active and passive.

274. 1. Continētur; continēbantur. 2. Prohibēbiminī; prohibitus est. 3. Praecēdēbātis; praecessistis. 4. Habet; habuit; habuerat. 5. Tenēbātur; tenēbitur; tenēbuntur. 6. Tentus erit; tentum erat; tenta erit.

275. 1. He surpassed; we had surpassed. 2. You (sing.) will be held; you (sing.) have held. 3. It was bounded; they are bounded. 4. You (plu.) will be kept away; they had been kept away. 5. They have been away; they had been away. 6. I shall come; you (sing.) will come. 7. I shall be sent; you (sing.) will be sent. 8. You (sing.) have been brave; you (plu.) have been brave.

276. **VOCABULARY**

apud, preposition with acc., *among*.
dīves, genitive **dīvitis**, *rich*. Superlative **dītissimus**.
inductus, -a, -um, participle, *influenced*.
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, m., *Orgetorix*, a chief of the Helvetians.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

277. 1. Apud Helvētiōs Orgetorīx fuit dītissimus. 2. Orgetorīx, inductus ā nōbilitāte, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 3. Orgetorīx rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 4. Fīnēs Aquītānōrum mare attigit. 5. Orgetorīx fuit nōbilissimus Helvētiōrum.

278. 1. Orgetorix will make these conspiracies. 2. He is the most prominent among the Helvetians. 3. The traders will be taken by the enemy. 4. You will see that part which is nearest to the sea (dat.). 5. What had been given to the soldiers?

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

279. Translation.

Translate the text of Chapter I, page 317. Look up on the map, page 204, the proper names used in the descrip-

tion. Try to think of it as an account of a country, its geography and its inhabitants, not as an exercise in language.

This chapter is the general geographical introduction to Caesar's narrative of his extraordinary campaigns in Gaul. Such a chapter was especially necessary at the time he wrote, because the Romans then knew almost nothing of the geography of Gaul, except the parts nearest to Italy and the Mediterranean. Gaul was to them only a vast unknown country whose inhabitants had once taken and sacked Rome, and had several times defeated Roman armies with fearful slaughter. Note especially the position of the Helvetians and what Caesar has to say about them; for it is with them that the narrative is now most concerned.

280. Memory Work.

Review the conjugation of the entire indicative mood. (App. 66–71.)

281. Latin-English Vocabulary.

1. Give the memoranda of the following nouns:

Aquītānia, Hispānia, Ōceanus, Orgetorīx, rēgnum, septentriō.

2. Compare **angustus,** and give its meaning. Give the meaning of **etiam, extrēmus, īnferus, Pȳrēnaeus.** Give the meaning of **apud,** and the case used with it.

3. Give the principal parts in full, and the meaning of the following verbs:

absum	**dīvidō**	**incolō**	**prohibeō**
appellō	**dō**	**laudō**	**spectō**
attingō	**contineō**	**mittō**	**sum**
audiō	**importō**	**moneō**	**superō**
capiō	**impediō**	**mūniō**	**teneō**
cēdō	**dūcō**	**obtineō**	**veniō**
comparō	**faciō**	**occupō**	**vergō**
contendō	**gerō**	**pertineō**	**videō**
	habeō	**praecēdō**	

282. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

also	bound	limited	ocean
among	even	low	royal power
border on	extend	narrow	touch upon
	lie	north	

LESSON XXXI

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN *-īus*

283. Nine adjectives of the first-and-second declension have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī**, in all genders, but are otherwise regular. These are:

alius, *another*	**ūllus**, *any*	**uter**, *which* (of two)	**sōlus**, *only*
alter, *the other* (of two)	**nūllus**, *no*	**neuter**, *neither*	**tōtus**, *whole*
			ūnus, *one*

284.

SINGULAR

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

SINGULAR

Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

NOTES. 1. Observe that the genitive and dative singular have the same endings as **ille, is** and **quī**; that the neuter **aliud** is like **illud**; that other forms are like **longus.**

2. All these adjectives have a plural, declined like that of **longus.** The plural of **ūnus** means *only, alone.*

285. VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud, *another;* plural, *other, others.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two); *the second.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole* (*of*).
ūnus, -a, -um, *one.*

prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, literally, *stand before,* i. e., *surpass.* This verb governs the dative, which is translated by a direct object.

Give definitions for *alternate, total,* and *unit,* which are suggested by the Latin words above.

DRILL EXERCISES

286. 1. Decline **hīc.** 2. Write the three bases of **laudō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō.** 3. Conjugate the future indicative, active and passive, of **dō** and of **dūcō.** 4. Give the principal parts of **attingō**, and a synopsis in the first singular, active and passive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

287. 1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae. 2. Ab Orgetorīge imperium tōtīus Galliae occupābitur. 3. Omnibus Gallīs[1] praestāmus. 4. Helvētiī ūnā ex[2] parte[3] flūmine Rhēnō continentur; alterā ex[2] parte[3] flūmine Rhodanō

[1] See **praestō** in vocabulary. [2] *on.* [3] *side.*

continentur. 5. Haec oppida ā mīlitibus ūnīus cīvitātis capta sunt. 6. Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 7. Alterī legiōnī praestātis. 8. Ūnī virō tōtum agrum dedit. 9. Coniūrātiō nōbilitātis omnis facta erat. 10. Aliud flūmen vīdimus.

288. 1. Of the whole state. 2. Of one ship. 3. They had surpassed (**praestō**). 4. We shall come to (**ad**) another road. 5. I shall give the grain to the other soldier. 6. The towns of another part of Gaul will be fortified.

LESSON XXXII

FOURTH DECLENSION

289. **TEXT**

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. (24, 25, Ch. 2.)

290. **FOURTH DECLENSION**

passus, M., *pace* **cornū,** N., *horn; wing*

	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS	SINGULAR	CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	passus	-us	cornū	-ū
Gen.	passūs	-ūs	cornūs	-ūs
Dat.	passuī	-uī	cornū	-ū
Acc.	passum	-um	cornū	-ū
Voc.	passus	-us	cornū	-ū
Abl.	passū	-ū	cornū	-ū

PLURAL

Nom.	passūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
Gen.	passuum	-uum	cornuum	-uum
Dat.	passibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus
Acc.	passūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
Voc.	passūs	-ūs	cornua	-ua
Abl.	passibus	-ibus	cornibus	-ibus

The bases of these nouns are **pass** and **corn.**

291. ***RULE FOR GENDER. Nouns of the fourth declension ending in*** **-us** ***are masculine, except*** **domus, manus,** ***and*** **Īdūs,** ***which are feminine; those ending in*** **-ū** ***are neuter.***

292. **VOCABULARY**

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn;* of an army, *wing.*
cultus, -ūs, m., *civilization.*
lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.* Dative and ablative plural **lacubus.**
occāsus, -ūs, m., literally, *falling; setting.*
passus, -ūs, m., *pace,* which with the Romans was a double step, about five of our feet.

Lemannus, -i, m., (*Lake*) *Geneva.*

DRILL EXERCISES

293. 1. Decline **mīlle.** 2. Decline **ille.** 3. Give the three bases of **comparō, cēdō,** and **contineō.** 4. Give the principal parts of **gerō,** and a synopsis in the third person singular, active and passive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

294. 1. Passū; cornūs; lacuum. 2. Occāsum sōlis vīdī. 3. Belgae ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt. 4. Helvētiī continentur ūnā ex parte lacū Lemannō

et flūmine Rhodanō. 5. Ūnum hostium cornū superātum est. 6. Coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis laudāvimus.

295. 1. Of the other wing; on these lakes. 2. A thousand paces; thousands of paces. 3. We shall make another march. 4. The men of the whole state are coming. 5. The soldiers of one legion conquered the Gauls. 6. We saw the setting of the sun.

LESSON XXXIII

FIFTH DECLENSION

296. **TEXT**

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. (24–26, Ch. 2.)

297. **FIFTH DECLENSION**

	diēs, M., *day*		rēs, F., *thing, affair*		CASE ENDINGS	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SING.	PLU.
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum	-ēī	-ērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus	-ēī	-ēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus

The bases of these nouns are **di** and **r**.

The **e** is short in the accusative singular of all nouns, and in the genitive and dative singular of **fidēs, spēs,** and **rēs.**

Diēs and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension which are fully declined in the plural. **Spēs** and **aciēs** have in the plural only the nominative and accusative.

298. ***RULE FOR GENDER. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except*** **diēs,** ***which is usually masculine.***

299. **VOCABULARY**

aciēs, aciēī, f., *line-of-battle, battle-line.*
diēs, diēī, usually masculine, sometimes feminine in the singular, *day.*
fidēs, fideī, f., *pledge.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*

facilis, facile, *easy.*

per-suādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade.* This verb governs the dative, which is translated by a direct object.

Fidēs also means *loyalty;* can you think of an English word from **fidēs** that means the same? What noun comes from **facilis?** What verb from the present base, and what noun from the supine base, of **persuādeō?**

DRILL EXERCISES

300. 1. Decline **is.** 2. Decline the Latin for *another wing; any lake.* 3. Give the principal parts of **teneō** and **mūniō,** and a synopsis of each in the third person plural, active and passive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

301. 1. Trium diērum; illā rē. 2. Fidem huic virō dedistī. 3. Magnam spem habeō. 4. Hominēs hīs rēbus monitī erant. 5. Aciēs nostra superābitur. 6. Mīlitibus persuāsimus. 7. Hae rēs facilēs sunt.

302. 1. The days are long. 2. This pledge will be given. 3. Our hopes were great. 4. The enemy had seen our line-of-battle. 5. These things were heard by other traders.

LESSON XXXIV

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

303. **TEXT**

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut[1] dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.[2] (24–27, Ch. 2.)

NOTES

1. *that.*
2. *they should go out.*

304. **USE OF PREPOSITIONS**

It has been seen that ablatives are used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition. The use or omission of a preposition depends upon the particular force which the expression has in the sentence. In some uses a preposition is employed, in others not. It is always, therefore, the *use* of an ablative in a sentence that determines whether or not a preposition is used, and what preposition it is, if any.

305. **ABLATIVE OF AGENT**

MODEL

Belgae ā Gallīs vīsī sunt, *the Belgians were seen by the*

NOTES. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question, "By whom?"

b. This use of the ablative always designates a person.

c. This use of the ablative always has the preposition **ā** or **ab**.

d. This use of the ablative is found only with the passive voice.

e. The same thought expressed by the active voice would be written:—**Gallī Belgās vīdērunt**. Here the agent of the passive verb becomes the subject of the active verb, and the subject of the passive verb becomes the object of the active verb.

306. ***RULE. Agency with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.***

307. **VOCABULARY**

pater, patris, m., *father*.
māter, mātris, f., *mother*.
frāter, frātris, m., *brother*.
soror, sorōris, f., *sister*.
fīlius, fīlī, m., *son*.
fīlia, fīliae, f., *daughter*. Dative and ablative plural, **fīliābus**.

Give an English derivative from each of the words above.

DRILL EXERCISES

308. 1. Decline **quī**. 2. Decline the Latin for *another thing; the whole line-of-battle*. 3. Give the principal parts of **superō, videō, vergō, veniō**, and conjugate their present and future indicative active.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

309. 1. Pater puerum mīsit. 2. Puer ā patre suō missus est. 3. Māter ā fīliābus suīs laudātur. 4. Aquītānia flūminibus et montibus continētur. 5. Haec sorōrī ā frātribus dabantur. 6. Helvētiī omnibus[1] praestant. 7. Vir ā fīliīs vīsus est. 8. Initium itineris facile fuit.

[1] See §285.

310. 1. The boy saw (his) mother. 2. The soldier's mother was seen by the men. 3. The town had been taken by the soldiers. 4. The town was being fortified (by) walls. 5. The brothers had been sent by (their) sister. 6. The men will be praised by (their) sons and daughters.

LESSON XXXV

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

311. **TEXT**

Orgetorīx, "Facile est," inquit,[1] "quod virtūte omnibus praestāmus, tōtīus Galliae imperium occupāre."[2] (27–29, Ch. 2.)

NOTES

1. *said.*

2. **occupāre,** the second principal part of **occupō,** is the present infinitive, *to seize.*

312. **ABLATIVE OF MEANS**

MODEL

Flūmine continētur, *it is bounded by a river.*

NOTES. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question, "By what?" "With what?" "By means of what?"

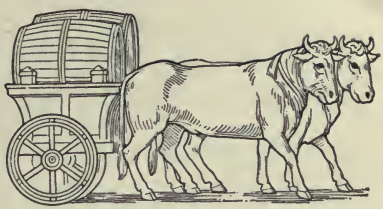
b. This use of the ablative almost always designates a thing.

c. This use of the ablative never has a preposition.

313. ***RULE. Means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.***

314. VOCABULARY

carrus, -ī, m., *cart.*
co-emō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *buy up, purchase.*
iūmentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden, pack animal;* applied to oxen and horses.
locus, -ī, m., plural **loca**, **locōrum**, n.; *place.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* plural *many.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *character.*



CARRUS
(From Trajan's Column)

Give a noun, a verb and an adjective from **locus**, and a verb from **multus**.

DRILL EXERCISES

315. 1. Compare **angustus** in the nominative singular, all genders. 2. Give the ablative singular and genitive plural of **facilis**, and of the comparative of **facilis**. 3. Give the principal parts of **importō** and **mittō**, and conjugate them in the perfect and pluperfect indicative active.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

316. 1. Frūmentum ab amīcīs nostrīs missum est. 2. Frūmentum carrīs et iūmentīs missum est. 3. Haec loca ā multīs hominibus vīsa sunt. 4. Ea ā mercātōribus magnō carrōrum numerō importābantur. 5. Magnum numerum carrōrum coëmēbāmus. 6. Helvētiī nātūrā locī continentur.

317. 1. This place was being fortified by walls. 2. These places were bounded by rivers. 3. The men were hindered by the carts. 4. The carts were drawn (**dūcō**) by pack animals (**iūmentum**). 5. They had been bought by the Helvetians. 6. Gaul was inhabited by the Celts.

LESSON XXXVI

ABLATIVE OF TIME

318. **TEXT**

Helvētiīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā continentur. (29, 30, Ch. 2.)

319. **ABLATIVE OF TIME**

MODELS

1. **Eō tempore vēnit,** *he came at that time.*
2. **Tribus annīs veniet,** *he will come within three years.*

NOTES. *a.* In sentences such as these the ablative answers the question, "When?"

b. In sentences like Model 1, the ablative is translated by *at* or *on*, and denotes "time when."

c. In sentences like Model 2, the ablative is translated by *within*, and denotes "time within which."

320. ***RULE. Time, when or within which, is denoted by the ablative without a preposition.***

321. **VOCABULARY**

annus, -ī, m., *year.*
biennium, -ī, n., literally, *the space of two years,* i. e., *two years.*
mēnsis, mēnsis, m., *month.*

Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura mountain range,* or *the Jura mountains,* which extend from the Rhine to the Rhone.

What is an *annual* election? A *biennial* election?

DRILL EXERCISES

322. 1. Decline the Latin for *this place; a month and a day.* 2. Give the principal parts of **coëmō** and conjugate it in the future indicative, active and passive. 3. Give the principal parts of **persuādeō**, and conjugate it in the future and future perfect indicative active.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

323. 1. Illō diē legiō nostra in Hispāniam missa est. 2. Hōc mēnse in Galliam mittēmur. 3. Oppidum bienniō mūnītum erit. 4. Legiōnēs alterius cornūs ab hostibus superātae erant. 5. Iūra mōns est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. 6. Tertiō annō iter dē fīnibus nostrīs faciēmus.

324. 1. At that time we came to a hill. 2. Within three months they prepared a supply of grain. 3. All the work had been done by the soldiers of one legion. 4. This year (there) are many Germans in our territory. 5. Gaul was divided by rivers.

LESSON XXXVII

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

325. TEXT

Helvētiīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex[1] parte[2] flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum[3] Helvētium[4] ā Germānīs dīvidit. (29–32, Ch. 2.)

NOTES

1. *on.*
2. *side.*
3. *territory.*
4. adjective: *Helvetian.*

326. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

Models

1. **Multōs annōs in Galliā erit,** *he will be in Gaul many years.*
2. **Tria mīlia passuum missus est,** *he was sent three miles.*

Notes. *a.* The words underlined are accusatives or objectives, but are not objects.

b. They answer the question, "How long?" "How far?"

c. While in English we may say "for many years," "for three miles," no preposition is used in Latin.

327. ***RULE. The accusative without a preposition is used to express duration of time and extent of space.***

328. VOCABULARY

pateō, patēre, patuī, ——, literally, *be open; extend.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space,* of time or distance.

quadrāgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *forty.*
octōgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *eighty.*
centum, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *one hundred.*
ducentī, -ae, -a, cardinal (numeral) adjective, *two hundred.*

mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces,* i. e., *a mile.*
mīlia passuum, *thousands of paces,* i. e., *miles.*
} See §96.

Give two English words from **centum,** and two from the base of **pēs.**

DRILL EXERCISES

329. 1. Give the rules for gender in all the declensions. 2. Give the principal parts of impediō, and a synopsis in the third singular, active and passive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

330. 1. Fīnēs nostrī centum mīlia passuum patēbant. 2. Diēs quadrāgintā frūmentum comparābāmus. 3. Ager erat pedēs ducentōs lātus. 4. Tertiō diē mīlitēs in haec loca vēnērunt. 5. Silva octōgintā mīlia passuum patet. 6. Hoc spatium erat centum pedēs lātum. 7. Frūmentum magnō iūmentōrum numerō mittētur.

331. 1. We marched (made a march) the whole distance in one day. 2. (For) three days we kept away the enemy. 3. That year you fought with all the Germans. 4. Our line-of-battle was seen by the enemy. 5. The town had been fortified with very-high walls.

LESSON XXXVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*

332. TEXT

Helvētiīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā[1] ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs. (29–33, Ch. 2.)

NOTE

1. *the second.*

333. SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	sīmus	*fu*erim	*fu*erīmus
sīs	sītis	*fu*erīs	*fu*erītis
sit	sint	*fu*erit	*fu*erint
Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
essem	essēmus	*fu*issem	*fu*issēmus
essēs	essētis	*fu*issēs	*fu*issētis
esset	essent	*fu*isset	*fu*issent

334. Note the following facts about the subjunctive mood of all verbs:

1. There is no future or future perfect tense.

2. All the tenses are conjugated regularly; that is, in the conjugation of any tense, nothing changes but the personal ending. Therefore, if the first person singular is known, the entire tense can be conjugated.

3. The vowel before the personal ending is always long in every tense, *where it can be;* that is, everywhere except before the personal endings **m, t, nt; r, ntur.**

4. The perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed on the perfect base like the same tenses of the indicative.

5. The translation of the subjunctive varies with its use, so that no general set of meanings can be given for it.

335. VOCABULARY

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f. [**altus**], *height; depth.*
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f. [**fortis**], *bravery.*
lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f. [**lātus**], *width, breadth.*
longitūdō, longitūdinis, f. [**longus**], *length.*
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. [**multus**, *much*], literally, "muchness"; *multitude; great number.*

It will be noticed that these nouns are all abstract; that is, they are formed from adjectives and denote qualities. Give the English words derived from the first four.

DRILL EXERCISES

336. 1. Decline the Latin for *a great height; many feet.* 2. Review the conjugation of the indicative mood of **sum**, and give a synopsis through the indicative and subjunctive, in the first singular.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

337. 1. Mōns Iūra erat magnae altitūdinis. 2. Fortitūdō Helvētiōrum est magna. 3. Haec loca ā multitūdine hominum incolēbantur. 4. Ad Rhēnum vēnimus, quī est flūmen magnae lātitūdinis et longitūdinis. 5. Trēs diēs cum Germānīs contendimus.

338. 1. The length of the march was great. 2. You often praised (perf.) the Helvetians' bravery. 3. (For) three years we inhabited (perf.) those places. 4. The sword was given by the soldier to a friend. 5. The field was bounded by a forest.

LESSON XXXIX

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

339. TEXT

Helvētiīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte

Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā[1] lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī nostram prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. (29–35, Ch. 2.)

NOTE

1. With **tertiā** supply **ex parte.**

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

340. FIRST CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudem	laudēmus	*laudāv*erim	*laudāv*erīmus
laudēs	laudētis	*laudāv*erīs	*laudāv*erītis
laudet	laudent	*laudāv*erit	*laudāv*erint
Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudārem	laudārēmus	*laudāv*issem	*laudāv*issēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis	*laudāv*issēs	*laudāv*issētis
laudāret	laudārent	*laudāv*isset	*laudāv*issent

341. SECOND CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
moneam	moneāmus	*monu*erim	*monu*erīmus
moneās	moneātis	*monu*erīs	*monu*erītis
moneat	moneant	*monu*erit	*monu*erint
Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
monērem	monērēmus	*monu*issem	*monu*issēmus
monērēs	monērētis	*monu*issēs	*monu*issētis
monēret	monērent	*monu*isset	*monu*issent

342. Review what was said about the subjunctive mood in §334, and note the following points also:

1. The sign of the imperfect subjunctive in regular verbs is **rē**, and the following rule may be used to remember the forms of this tense for *any* verb:

Imperfect subjunctive = present active infinitive + personal endings.

2. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive have the same endings as these tenses of **sum**.

343. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, f. [**amīcus**], *friendship;* which in foreign relations meant practically *alliance.*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con-, intensive], literally, *make firm;* i. e., *establish; declare.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wander.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis**], *neighboring; near.* Masculine as noun, *neighbor.*

facile, adverb, *easily.*
lātē, adverb, *widely.*
minus, adverb, *less.*

What English verb comes from the present base of **cōnfirmō**, and what noun from the supine base? "He erred greatly in doing this."—What does "err" mean? What is the noun formed from **errō**?

DRILL EXERCISES

344. 1. Decline the expressions **tōtus diēs**; **pater et puer.** 2. Give the synopsis in the subjunctive active, first singular, of **dō** and of **videō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

345. 1. Amīcitiam cōnfirmābimus. 2. Ob eās rēs Helvētiī minus lātē errābant. 3. Minus facile cum fīnitimīs bel-

lum gerēbant. 4. Nostrī fīnēs erant fīnitimī Germānīs. 5. Silva multa mīlia passuum pertinet.

346. 1. Friendship will be established by the Germans. 2. These places were near to the Germans (dat.). 3. The enemy were hindered by these walls. 4. Within one year we established friendship with all the states. 5. Men of great bravery will be kept away less easily.

LESSON XL

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

347. **TEXT**

Ob eās rēs Helvētiī et[1] minus lātē errābant et[1] minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant. (35–37, Ch. 2.)

NOTE

1. **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

348. THIRD CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcam	dūcāmus	*dūx*erim	*dūx*erīmus
dūcās	dūcātis	*dūx*erīs	*dūx*erītis
dūcat	dūcant	*dūx*erit	*dūx*erint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
dūcerem	dūcerēmus	*dūx*issem	*dūx*issēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	*dūx*issēs	*dūx*issētis
dūceret	dūcerent	*dūx*isset	*dūx*issent

349. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiāmus	*audīv*erim	*audīv*erīmus
audiās	audiātis	*audīv*erīs	*audīv*erītis
audiat	audiant	*audīv*erit	*audīv*erint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
audīrem	audīrēmus	*audīv*issem	*audīv*issēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis	*audīv*issēs	*audīv*issētis
audīret	audīrent	*audīv*isset	*audīv*issent

350. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiam	capiāmus	*cēp*erim	*cēp*erīmus
capiās	capiātis	*cēp*erīs	*cēp*erītis
capiat	capiant	*cēp*erit	*cēp*erint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
caperem	caperēmus	*cēp*issem	*cēp*issēmus
caperēs	caperētis	*cēp*issēs	*cēp*issētis
caperet	caperent	*cēp*isset	*cēp*issent

Review what was said about the subjunctive mood in §§334 and 342, and see how those statements apply to the conjugations above.

351. VOCABULARY

af-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**ad**, *to*, **faciō**, *do*], literally, *do to; affect.*
cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous, fond.*
dolor, dolōris, m., *distress.*
maximus, -a, -um [irregular superlative of **magnus**], *greatest, very great.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
quam, adverb; when preceding a superlative, it is translated by *possible* placed after the superlative in English.

What English word does the supine base of **afficiō** form? What does it mean to do the *maximum* amount of work? What does *pacify* mean?

DRILL EXERCISES

352. 1. Decline the expressions **omnis locus** (see §314); **fīlius et fīlia** (see §307). 2. Give the synopses in the subjunctive active, first singular, of **gerō, veniō, faciō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

353. 1. Helvētiī erant cupidī bellī. 2. Quod locī nātūrā continēbantur, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 3. Quam maximum numerum carrōrum coēmērunt. 4. Numerus iūmentōrum quoque coēmptus est. 5. Pācem et amīcitiam cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōnfirmāvērunt.

354. 1. In the third year we established peace. 2. For three years we bought carts. 3. These were drawn (**dūcō**) a hundred miles. 4. The height of these mountains was very great. 5. Friendship was less easily established by the Helvetians.

LESSON XLI

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

355. TEXT

Ob eās rēs Helvētiī et minus lātē errābant et minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant. Ob eam causam hī hominēs, quī erant bellī cupidī, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. (35–38, Ch. 2.)

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

356. FIRST CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
lauder	laudēmur	LAUDĀTus sim	LAUDĀTĪ sīmus
laudēris *or* -re	laudēminī	LAUDĀTus sīs	LAUDĀTĪ sītis
laudētur	laudentur	LAUDĀTus sit	LAUDĀTĪ sint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudārer	laudārēmur	LAUDĀTus essem	LAUDĀTĪ essēmus
laudārēris *or* -re	laudārēminī	LAUDĀTus essēs	LAUDĀTĪ essētis
laudārētur	laudārentur	LAUDĀTus esset	LAUDĀTĪ essent

357. SECOND CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
monear	moneāmur	MONITus sim	MONITĪ sīmus
moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī	MONITus sīs	MONITĪ sītis
moneātur	moneantur	MONITus sit	MONITĪ sint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
monērer	monērēmur	MONITus essem	MONITĪ essēmus
monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī	MONITus essēs	MONITĪ essētis
monērētur	monērentur	MONITus esset	MONITĪ essent

358. THIRD CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcar	dūcāmur	DUCTus sim	DUCTī sīmus
dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī	DUCTus sīs	DUCTī sītis
dūcātur	dūcantur	DUCTus sit	DUCTī sint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
dūcerer	dūcerēmur	DUCTus essem	DUCTī essēmus
dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī	DUCTus essēs	DUCTī essētis
dūcerētur	dūcerentur	DUCTus esset	DUCTī essent

359. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present		*Perfect*	
audiar	audiāmur	AUDĪTus sim	AUDĪTī sīmus
audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī	AUDĪTus sīs	AUDĪTī sītis
audiātur	audiantur	AUDĪTus sit	AUDĪTī sint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
audīrer	audīrēmur	AUDĪTus essem	AUDĪTī essēmus
audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī	AUDĪTus essēs	AUDĪTī essētis
audīrētur	audīrentur	AUDĪTus esset	AUDĪTī essent

360. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

Present		*Perfect*	
capiar	capiāmur	CAPTus sim	CAPTī sīmus
capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī	CAPTus sīs	CAPTī sītis
capiātur	capiantur	CAPTus sit	CAPTī sint

Imperfect		*Pluperfect*	
caperer	caperēmur	CAPTus essem	CAPTī essēmus
caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī	CAPTus essēs	CAPTī essētis
caperētur	caperentur	CAPTus esset	CAPTī essent

361. Observe that in the present and imperfect tenses, the active and passive subjunctive differ only in the personal endings, just as do the same tenses of the indicative (§§200, 212).

Note that the perfect and pluperfect are formed by combining the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive of **sum** with the perfect passive participle, on the same principle as the same tenses of the indicative passive.

362. The formation of the subjunctive tenses can best be learned by inspection of a synopsis, as follows:

		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	Act.	laudō	laudem
	Pass.	laudor	laudēr
Imp.	Act.	laudābam	laudārem
	Pass.	laudābar	laudārer
Fut.	Act.	laudābō	
	Pass.	laudābor	
Perf.	Act.	*laudāv*ī	*laudāv*erim
	Pass.	LAUDĀTus sum	LAUDĀTus sim
Plup.	Act.	*laudāv*eram	*laudāv*issem
	Pass.	LAUDĀTus eram	LAUDĀTus essem
F. P.	Act.	*laudāv*erō	
	Pass.	LAUDĀTus erō	

363. **VOCABULARY**

autem, adverb, *moreover.*
exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think.*
glōria, -ae, f., *reputation.*
prō, preposition with ablative, *for; in view of.*
ut, conjunctive adverb with indicative, *as.*

DRILL EXERCISES

364. 1. Decline the Latin for *a great lake* (§292). 2. Give the synopsis in the subjunctive mood, active and passive, first singular, of **praestō, teneō, attingō, mūniō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

365. 1. Helvētiī nōn lātē errābant, proptereā quod eōrum fīnēs erant angustī. 2. Magnō dolōre autem afficiēbantur quod prō multitūdine Helvētiōrum fīnēs angustōs habēbant. 3. Eōrum glōria bellī[1] atque fortitūdinis[1] erat magna. 4. Prō multitūdine[2] autem hominum[2] atque glōriā bellī[1] et fortitūdinis[1], fīnēs nostrī sunt angustī. 5. Angustōs fīnēs habēmus, ut exīstimāmus.

366. 1. Peace will be established by our consuls. 2. Friendship had been established by these things. 3. At that time their bravery was great. 4. For many days we were very near to these lakes (dat.). 5. There is another river at (**ad**) this end of the town.

LESSON XLII

INDIRECT QUESTIONS SEQUENCE OF TENSES

367. TEXT

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs fīnēs habēbant, ut exīstimābant. (38–40, Ch. 2.)

368. DIRECT QUESTIONS

MODELS

(*a*) **Quis venit.** *Who is coming?*
(*b*) **Quis vēnit.** *Who came (has come)?*

[1] These words, though genitive, may be translated with the preposition *for*. [2]**multitūdō hominum**, literally, *multitude of human beings*, here *large population*.

369. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Models

1. Quaerit	quis veniat, / quis vēnerit,	*he is asking*	*who is coming?* / *who came (has come)?*
2. Quaesīvit	quis venīret, / quis vēnisset,	*he asked*	*who was coming?* / *who had come?*

Notes. *a.* Subordinate clauses in Latin like the above, which are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verb in the subjunctive mood, are called *Indirect Questions.*

b. The verb of an indirect question, while subjunctive in Latin, is indicative in English.

c. The tense of the verb in the subordinate clause depends partly upon the tense of the main verb and partly upon the kind of action denoted.

d. The rule below (§371) is the general rule for the tense of the subjunctive mood in all uses. The subjunctive does not express time like the indicative, but its tenses represent action as *incomplete* or *completed at the time denoted by the main verb.*

370. ***RULE. The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive.***

371. ***RULE. If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, a subordinate subjunctive verb is present or perfect; if the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect, a subordinate subjunctive verb is imperfect or pluperfect. The present and imperfect subjunctive denote incomplete action; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote completed action.***

Note 1. The present, future, and future perfect indicative, and the present and perfect subjunctive, are called principal (or primary) tenses; while the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are called historical (or secondary) tenses.

Note 2. The rule is therefore sometimes stated:

371, *a. Principal tenses are followed by principal tenses, and historical by historical.*

NOTE 3. This rule applies only to complex sentences whose subordinate verbs are subjunctive. There are certain exceptions which will be noted as examples occur.

372. VOCABULARY

cūr, adverb, *why.*
ubi, adverb, *where.*

ē-nūntiō, -nūntiāre, -nūntiāvī, -nūntiātum, literally, *tell out;* regularly, *disclose, report.*
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask* (a question).

The words *inquire* and *inquisitive* come from the present and supine bases of the compound of **in** and **quaerō**. What do they mean?

DRILL EXERCISES

373. 1. Give the principal parts of **cōnfirmō**, and a synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, first singular. 2. Give the principal parts of **coëmō**, and a synopsis in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, third plural.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

374. 1. Audīmus cūr hoc faciat; audīvimus cūr hoc faceret. 2. Videō cūr hoc fēcerit; vīdī cūr hoc fēcisset. 3. Quaerunt quis mittātur; quaerēbant quis mitterētur. 4. Ēnūntiābitur ubi hostēs sint; ēnūntiātum erat ubi hostēs essent. 5. Nōn audīvī quem mīsissēs; audiēs quem mīserim.

375. 1. They are asking where you are; they were asking where you were. 2. They see why you have come;

they saw why you had come. 3. The consul reported what he had done; he will report what he is doing. 4. We had heard what was being sent; we heard what had been sent. 5. We asked who had come; you are asking who has come.

LESSON XLIII

INFINITIVES

376. **TEXT**

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs fīnēs, ut exīstimābant, habēbant, quī in[1] longitūdinem mīlia passuum ducenta et quadrāgintā, in[1] lātitūdinem centum et octōgintā, patēbant. (38–42, Ch. 2.)

NOTE

1. *in.*

377. **INFINITIVES**

	Active	Passive
	sum	
Pres.	esse, *to be*	
Perf.	*fu*isse, *to have been*	
Fut.	FUTŪRUS ESSE, *to be going-to-be*	

FIRST CONJUGATION

Pres.	laudāre, *to praise*	laudārī, *to be praised*
Perf.	*laudāv*isse, *to have praised*	LAUDĀTUS ESSE, *to have been praised*
Fut.	LAUDĀTŪRUS ESSE, *to be going-to-praise*	LAUDĀTUM ĪRĪ, *to be going-to-be-praised*

SECOND CONJUGATION

Pres.	monēre, *to warn*	monērī, *to be warned*
Perf.	*monu*isse, *to have warned*	MONITus esse, *to have been warned*
Fut.	MONITūrus esse, *to be going-to-warn*	MONITum īrī, *to be going-to-be-warned*

THIRD CONJUGATION

Pres.	dūcere, *to lead*	dūcī, *to be led*
Perf.	*dūx*isse, *to have led*	DUCTus esse, *to have been led*
Fut.	DUCTūrus esse, *to be going-to-lead*	DUCTum īrī, *to be going-to-be-led*

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Pres.	audīre, *to hear*	audīrī, *to be heard*
Perf.	*audīv*isse, *to have heard*	AUDĪTus esse, *to have been heard*
Fut.	AUDĪTūrus esse, *to be going-to-hear*	AUDĪTum īrī, *to be going-to-be-heard*

THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō

Pres.	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
Perf.	*cēp*isse, *to have taken*	CAPTus esse, *to have been taken*
Fut.	CAPTūrus esse, *to be going-to-take*	CAPTum īrī, *to be going-to-be-taken*

378. Note the following facts about the infinitives given above:

1. The present infinitives are formed on the present base.

2. The perfect active infinitive is formed on the perfect base.

3. The compound forms (the perfect passive and both the future infinitives) are formed on the supine base.

4. In the perfect passive infinitive the first word is the perfect passive participle (which is used in the perfect indicative and perfect subjunctive passive). This form may, therefore, be in any gender and number.

5. In the future active infinitive, the first form is the future active participle. This form may also be in any gender and number.

6. In the future passive infinitive, the first word is the supine (the fourth principal part), and this form does not change.

379. VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect;* with complementary infinitive, *compel.*
cōn-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *decide; determine.*
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, *ought.*
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order.*
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*

What English verb and noun are from the supine base of **cōnstituō**? What is a *cogent* reason?

DRILL EXERCISES

380. Give the principal parts, bases, and all the infinitives, with their translation, of **dō, teneō, mittō, impediō, faciō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

381. 1. Tenuisse; tentus esse. 2. Ventūrus esse; vēnisse. 3. Cōnfirmāre; cōnfirmārī. 4. Mīsisse; missūrus esse. 5. Mittī; missum īrī. 6. Cōnstituērunt ea comparāre. 7. Eum mātūrāre iussimus. 8. Carrōs coëmere dēbēmus. 9. Helvētiī errāre cōgēbantur. 10. Oppidum mūnīre mātūrāvērunt. 11. Cōnstituerāmus rogāre ubi essēs. 12. Omnēs audient cūr carrī coëmptī sint.

382. 1. To be going-to-have. 2. To have been seen. 3. To have carried on; to have been carried on. 4. To be seen;

to be sent. 5. To be compelled; I have compelled. 6. He ordered the town to be fortified. 7. He asked what we had. 8. They will hear where we have been. 9. They were compelled (perf.) to fight.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

383. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapter II, and translate it.

384. Memory work.

1. Adjectives with genitive in **-īus** (§284).
2. Fourth and fifth declensions (§§290, 297).
3. Subjunctive mood and infinitives (App. 66–71).

385. Latin-English vocabulary.

1. Give the memoranda of the following nouns:

aciēs	**fidēs**	**longitūdō**	**pater**
altitūdō	**fīlia**	**māter**	**pāx**
amīcitia	**fīlius**	**mēnsis**	**pēs**
annus	**frāter**	**multitūdō**	**rēs**
carrus	**lacus**	**nātūra**	**soror**
cornū	**lātitūdō**	**occāsus**	**spatium**
diēs	**locus**	**passus**	**spēs**

2. Give the meaning of the following adjectives, and show how each is declined:

alius, alter, centum, cupidus, ducentī, fīnitimus, maximus, multus, quadrāgintā, octōgintā, tōtus, ūnus. Compare **cupidus.**

3. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

coëmō, cōgō, cōnfirmō, cōnstituō, dēbeō, ēnūntiō, exīstimō, iubeō, mātūrō, pateō, persuādeō, praestō, quaerō.

4. Give the meanings of the following words:

autem, cūr, facile, lātē, minus, ubi, ut with the indicative. Give the meaning of **prō** and the case which it governs.

386. Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

announce
another
appoint
as
ask
breadth
brother
buy
cart
character
collect
compel
daughter
day
decide
declare
depth
desirous
determine
disclose
distance
easily
eighty
establish
extend
father
foot
forty
friendship
great number
greatest
hasten
(not **contendō**)
height
hope
horn
hundred
lake
length
less
line of battle
many
mile
miles
month
moreover
mother
much
multitude
neighbor (ing)
one
order
the other
ought
pace
peace
persuade
place
pledge
report
setting
sister
son
space
sunset
surpass
thing
think
two hundred
in view of
west
where
whole
why
widely
width
wing
year

387 Give complete Latin sentences, with translation, illustrating the expression of *agency, means, time* (three uses), *extent* (two uses); and a *direct* and an *indirect question.*

LESSON XLIV

388. PARTICIPLES

	Active	Passive
	sum	
Pres.	————, *being*	
Perf.	————, *having been*	
Fut.	FUTŪRUS, *going-to-be*	
	FIRST CONJUGATION	
Pres.	laudāns, *praising*	————, *being praised*
Perf.	————, *having praised*	LAUDĀTUS, (*having been*) *praised*
Fut.	LAUDĀTŪRUS, *going-to-praise*	laudandus, *to-be-praised*
	SECOND CONJUGATION	
Pres.	monēns, *warning*	————, *being warned*
Perf.	————, *having warned*	MONITUS, (*having been*) *warned*
Fut.	MONITŪRUS, *going-to warn*	monendus, *to-be-warned*
	THIRD CONJUGATION	
Pres.	dūcēns, *leading*	————, *being led*
Perf.	————, *having led*	DUCTUS, (*having been*) *led*
Fut.	DUCTŪRUS, *going-to-lead*	dūcendus, *to-be-led*
	FOURTH CONJUGATION	
Pres.	audiēns, *hearing*	————, *being heard*
Perf.	————, *having heard*	AUDĪTUS, (*having been*) *heard*
Fut.	AUDĪTŪRUS, *going-to-hear*	audiendus, *to-be-heard*
	THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō	
Pres.	capiēns, *taking*	————, *being taken*
Perf.	————, *having taken*	CAPTUS, (*having been*) *taken*
Fut.	CAPTŪRUS, *going-to-take*	capiendus, *to-be-taken*

389. Note the following facts about the participles given in §388:

1. The present active and future passive participles are formed on the present base.
2. The future active and perfect passive participles are formed on the supine base.
3. The future active participle is the first part of the future active infinitive.
4. The perfect passive participle is the first part of the compound tenses of the passive, e. g., **laudātus sum, laudātus sim, laudātus esse,** etc.
5. All the participles ending in **-us** are declined like **longus.**
6. The present active participles are declined like **laudāns,** §390.

390. DECLENSION OF PRESENT PARTICIPLES

laudāns, *praising*

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	laudāns	laudāns	laudāns
Gen.	laudantis	laudantis	laudantis
Dat.	laudantī	laudantī	laudantī
Acc.	laudantem	laudantem	laudāns
Voc.	laudāns	laudāns	laudāns
Abl.	laudante	laudante	laudante
Nom.	laudantēs	laudantēs	laudantia
Gen.	laudantium	laudantium	laudantium
Dat.	laudantibus	laudantibus	laudantibus
Acc.	laudantēs (-īs)	laudantēs (-īs)	laudantia
Voc.	laudantēs	laudantēs	laudantia
Abl.	laudantibus	laudantibus	laudantibus

Notice that this is declined like the adjective **oriēns** (§103), except for the ablative singular.

391. TRANSLATION OF PARTICIPLES

Remember that participles are verbal adjectives. All forms of the same adjective (e. g., **longus, longa, longōs, longīs,** etc.), are translated alike, and in the same way all forms of the same participle are translated the same. Thus **laudāns, laudantēs,** or any other form of this participle would be translated *praising.* But in translating a sentence it is as necessary with a participle as it is with an adjective to observe with what the participle agrees.

A participle is usually placed in English next to the word which it modifies.

392. VOCABULARY

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead on, induce.*
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *influence.*
per-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, literally, *move thoroughly; arouse.*
profectiō, profectiōnis, f., *departure.*
sup-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum [**petō,** *seek*], *be on hand.*

Give English words from **moveō, mōtum, petītum.**

DRILL EXERCISES

393. Give the principal parts, bases, and all the participles, of **dō, teneō, mittō, mūniō, faciō,** with their translation.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

394. Give the gender, number, and case of the participles in the following exercises, and translate them in the proper voice and tense:

1. Cōgēns; coāctūrus; coāctus; cōgendus. 2. Iubentēs; iubendī; iussī; iussūrī. 3. Adductus; adductī. 4. Helvētiī, hīs rēbus adductī, ē suīs fīnibus vēnērunt. 5. Helvētiī, auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, frūmentum coëmere cōn-

stituērunt. 6. Cōpia frūmentī in itinere suppetēbat. 7. Helvētiī omnia ad profectiōnem comparāvērunt. 8. Magnus numerus iūmentōrum, ab Helvētiīs coëmptōrum, in itinere captus est. 9. Cōpiās fīliō suō dedit dūcendās in Galliam. 10. Tria mīlia hominum, ā lēgātō captōrum, magnō dolōre affectī sunt. 11. Vīdimus ubi hominēs essent.

395. 1. Thinking (mas. sing. dat.). 2. Going-to-fight (mas. plu. acc.). 3. Having been bought (neut. plu. gen.). 4. One part of the Helvetians, separated from the rest, was hastening to make a march into Gaul. 5. The men, coming from the fields, were taken by the Germans. 6. The Helvetians were not going-to-divide their troops. 7. Part of the field given to these men is across that river. 8. We shall hear why they have decided to do this.

LESSON XLV

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

396. **TEXT**

Helvētiī, adductī et permōtī, omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre cōnstituērunt. Helvētiī, hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, omnia comparāre cōnstituērunt. Cōnstituērunt omnia comparāre atque iūmenta et carrōs coëmere. Cōnstituērunt omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī cōnstituērunt omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere. (43–46, Ch. 3.)

397. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

MODEL

Oppidō occupātō, ad flūmen contendimus, *the town having been seized, we hastened to the river.*

NOTES. *a.* In this sentence the noun **oppidō** and the participle **occupātō**, agreeing with it, are in the ablative case and are grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In the English translation the construction is called the *nominative absolute.*

b. While in a single sentence this construction is good English, it is not good style to use it frequently. It is very common in Latin, however, and it is therefore often necessary, for the sake of good English, to translate it freely, e. g., by a clause. Thus the sense of the above might be expressed in this way: "After the town had been seized, we hastened;" or "After seizing the town we hastened."

c. The ablative absolute is used only when the participle agrees with a noun which is not connected in syntax with the rest of the sentence.

398. *RULE. A noun and an agreeing participle (or their equivalents) are used in the ablative independently.*

NOTE. The equivalents may be,—a pronoun for the noun, and an adjective or a second noun for the participle. Where no participle is expressed, the lacking present participle of **sum** may be understood.

399. VOCABULARY

ante, adverb, or preposition with acc., *before.*
cōn-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**con**, intensive, **faciō**, *do*], literally, *do up, do completely,* i. e., *finish, complete.*
dē-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [**dē**, *from*, **legō**, *choose*], *select.*
satis, adverb, *sufficiently;* considered as an indeclinable adjective, *sufficient, enough.*
sēmentis, sēmentis, f., *sowing, planting.*

Give an English verb, noun and adjective from **satis-faciō.**

DRILL EXERCISES

400. 1. Give the principal parts of **cōgō**, its bases, and all its infinitives, with their translation. 2. Give the principal parts of **iubeō**, its bases, and all its participles, with their translation.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

401. 1. Multīs carrīs coëmptīs, Helvētiī iter facere cōnstituērunt. 2. Quam maximīs sēmentibus factīs, cōpia frūmentī suppetet. 3. Orgetorīge dēlēctō, ad profectiōnem omnia comparāvimus. 4. Casticus, hostibus ā patre suō superātīs, coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 5. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, satis magnus numerus iūmentōrum et carrōrum coëmētur. 6. Cōpiā frūmentī suppetente, iter facere dēbēmus. 7. Gallī quaesīvērunt cūr Orgetorīx dēlēctus esset.

402. 1. The town having been fortified, we came to our territory. 2. These men having been chosen, the work was finished. 3. Peace having been established, the consul came into Gaul. 4. Having finished the war (the war having been finished), the troops came into their (own) towns. 5. The enemy having been seen, the consul asked where our legions were.

LESSON XLVI

THE INTENSIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

403. TEXT

Helvētiī cōnstituērunt omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre, iūmenta et carrōs coëmere, sēmentēs facere, pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Cōnstituērunt sēmentēs quam maximās

facere. Cōnstituērunt pācem et amīcitiam cum proximīs cīvitātibus cōnfirmāre.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī cōnstituērunt omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. (43–47, Ch. 3.)

404. THE INTENSIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

The compounds of *self* in English have two different uses.

1. A form of *self* may be in apposition with another noun or pronoun and make it more emphatic. E. g., *he himself came; they saw the man himself; they saw the man themselves,* etc. This is called the *intensive* use.

2. A form of *self* may refer to the subject. E. g., *he hurt himself; they saw themselves in the glass; they brought food for themselves,* etc. This is called the *reflexive* use.

405. Latin has two different pronouns for these two uses—(1) **ipse**, the intensive pronoun; (2) **suī**, the reflexive pronoun of the third person. Since a reflexive pronoun refers to the subject, it can not itself be nominative; for the same reason its gender and number are always apparent and need not be indicated by different forms.

406. **ipse**, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

407. **suī**, *of himself*

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Gen.	**suī**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*
Dat.	**sibi**, *to* or *for himself*, etc.
Acc.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *himself*, etc.
Abl.	**sē** (**sēsē**), *from, with, by himself*, etc.

With **sē**, as with **quibus** (§175), **cum** is enclitic (**sēcum**).

408. **VOCABULARY**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self;* see §405.
suī, sibi, sē, *of himself*, etc., see §405.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus*, a very influential Aeduan.
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f. [**lēgātus**, *ambassador*], *embassy.*
populus, -ī, m., *people;* plural, *peoples.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
sus-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**sub**, *under*, **capiō**, *take*], *undertake.*

Give and define an adjective from **populus**. What is the American *legation* in London? What does *sui-cide* mean?

DRILL EXERCISES

409. 1. Review the declension and meanings of **suus, -a, -um**, §205. 2. Give the principal parts of **dēligō**, its bases, and a synopsis through the indicative and subjunctive, in the first singular. 3. Give the principal parts of **cōnficiō**, and all its infinitives and participles.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

410. 1. Homō sē vīdit. 2. Homō ipse vīsus est. 3. Ipsī bellum gerunt. 4. Helvētiī sē fortissimōs appellābant. 5. Helvētiī ipsī fortissimī appellābantur. 6. Aeduī eōs for-

tissimōs appellābant. 7. Helvētiī ā sē fortissimī appellābantur. 8. Ab Helvētiīs ipsīs fortēs appellābāmur. 9. Lēgātiōne susceptā, populus Rōmānus bellum gerere cōnstituit. 10. Dīviciācus amīcus populī Rōmānī ā senātū appellātus erat. 11. Nōn ēnūntiātur cūr haec lēgātiō mittātur.

411. 1. The man himself came. 2. The man praised himself. 3. The consul sent the troops himself. 4. The troops were sent by the consul himself. 5. They will take (**dūcō**) the carts with them (i. e., with themselves). 6. This bridge having been made, he decided to send the legion to the town. 7. Coming to this town we saw a hundred carts. 8. It was asked why Dumnorix undertook this mission?

LESSON XLVII

PURPOSE CLAUSES

412. **TEXT**

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[1] biennium satis esse dūxērunt;[2] in[3] tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant.[4] Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur.[4] Is sibi[5] lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit.[4] (47–51, Ch. 3.)

NOTES

1. **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās:** literally, *for these things to-be-completed;* i. e., *for completing these things.*

2. **dūcō** has here its less usual meaning, *consider.*

3. *for.*

4. The present tense is often used instead of the perfect for vividness; in such cases it is called the "historical present," and may be translated by the past tense.

5. **sibi,** with **sus-** of **sus-cipit,** means *upon himself.*

413. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

Models

1. Id faciō	ut veniat,	*I am doing it*	*in-order-that he may come*
	nē veniat,		*in-order-that he may not come*
2. Id fēcī	ut venīret,	*I did it*	*in-order-that he might come*
	nē venīret,		*in-order-that he might not come*

Notes. *a.* In these complex sentences the subordinate verb expresses the *intention* or *purpose* for which the action of the main verb was done. Latin uses the subordinate verb in the subjunctive introduced by **ut**, affirmative, **nē**, negative.

b. When the tense of the verb upon which the subordinate clause depends is *present* or *future*, English uses *may* (present potential) as an auxiliary, and Latin the *present* subjunctive (§371).

c. When the tense of the verb upon which the subordinate clause depends is *past*, English uses *might* (past potential) as an auxiliary, and Latin the *imperfect* subjunctive (§371).

414. ***RULE. The subjunctive is used to express purpose, introduced by*** **ut** ***(affirmative),*** **nē** ***(negative).***

415. VOCABULARY

acceptus, -a, -um [perfect passive participle of **ac-cipiō**, *receive*], *acceptable.*

Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus*, a powerful chief of the Sequanians.

Catamantaloedēs, Catamantaloedis, m., *Catamantaloedes*, father of Casticus.

Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a troublesome Aeduan chief.

mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage.*

maximē, adverb [**maximus**, *greatest, very great*], *most, especially.*

nē, negative subordinate conjunction, *in-order-that . . . not, that . . . not.*

plēbs [for pronunciation see §6], **plēbis**, f., *the common people*, corresponding to the *plebeians* at Rome.

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*

-que, coördinate conjunction, *and;* a closer connective than **et**. An enclitic; see §12.

ut, subordinate conjunction, *in-order-that; that.*

DRILL EXERCISES

416. 1. Decline the Latin for *father himself; the thing itself; the work itself.* 2. Give the infinitives and participles of **moveō** and **petō** (see **per-moveō** and **sup-petō**, §392).

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

417. 1. Oppidum mūnīmus ut hostēs prohibeantur. 2. Oppidum mūnīvimus ut hostēs prohibērentur. 3. Oppidum mūniēmus nē occupētur. 4. Oppidum mūniēbāmus nē occupārētur. 5. Helvētiī sēmentēs fēcērunt ut cōpia frūmentī in itinere suppeteret. 6. Casticus, Catamantaloedis fīlius, coniūrātiōnem facit ut prīncipātum habeat. 7. Orgetorīx fīliam suam Dumnorīgī in mātrimōnium dedit ut rēgnum tenēret. 8. Fīliī fīliaeque vēnērunt nē pāx cōnfirmārētur. 9. Dumnorīx ipse erat maximē acceptus plēbī. 10. Helvētiī sēsē ad profectiōnem comparāvērunt.

418. 1. He is sending this in-order-that we may see it. 2. He sent this in-order-that we might see it. 3. They are fortifying the town in-order-that it may not be seized. 4. They fortified it that it might not be seized. 5. They will choose Orgetorix that peace may be made (**cōnfirmō**). 6. They had chosen him that peace might be made. 7. They did these things that they might not be hindered on the march. 8. We shall do other things in order that we may not be hindered.

LESSON XLVIII

DEPONENT VERBS

419. TEXT

In eō itinere Orgetorīx Casticō,[1] Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, persuāsit. Casticī pater rēgnum in[2] Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat, et ā senātū amīcus populī Rōmānī appellātus erat. Orgetorīx Casticō persuāsit ut[3] rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāret.[3] Eī persuāsit ut rēgnum (quod[4] pater ante habuerat) occupāret. Casticō persuāsit, cuius pater amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum occupāret.

In eō itinere persuādet[5] Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat. (51–55, Ch. 3.)

NOTES

1. See what was said about **persuādeō** in §299.
2. *among.*
3. **ut . . . occupāret:** *that he should seize.*
4. Relative pronoun.
5. See §412, 4.

420. DEPONENT VERBS

Deponent verbs are those which have mostly passive forms but active meanings. They are conjugated like the passive voice of other verbs in the indicative and subjunctive; their infinitives and participles are partly active and partly passive in form. They have both a future active and a future passive participle.

421. Principal Parts: cōnor, cōnārī, CŌNĀTus sum, *try, attempt.*

Infinitives

Pres. Act.	cōnārī, *to try*
Perf. Act.	CŌNĀTus esse, *to have tried*
Fut. Act.	CŌNĀTŪRus esse, *to be going-to-try*

Participles

Pres. Act.	cōnāns, *trying*
Perf. Act.	CŌNĀTus, *having tried*
Fut. Act.	CŌNĀTŪRus, *going-to-try*
Fut. Pass.	cōnandus, *to-be-tried*

422. Principal Parts: vereor, verērī, VERITus sum, *fear, be afraid*
sequor, sequī, SECŪtus sum, *follow*
potior, potīrī, POTĪTus sum, *get possession of*
patior, patī, PASSus sum, *suffer, allow*

Infinitives

	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
Pres. Act.	verērī	sequī
Perf. Act.	VERITus esse	SECŪTus esse
Fut. Act.	VERITŪRus esse	SECŪTŪRus esse

	FOURTH CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō
Pres. Act.	potīrī	patī
Perf. Act.	POTĪTus esse	PASSus esse
Fut. Act.	POTĪTŪRus esse	PASSŪRus esse

Participles

	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
Pres. Act.	verēns	sequēns
Perf. Act.	VERITus	SECŪTus
Fut. Act.	VERITŪRus	SECŪTŪRus
Fut. Pass.	verendus	sequendus

	FOURTH CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION IN **-iō**
Pres. Act.	potiēns	patiēns
Perf. Act.	POTĪTUS	PASSUS
Fut. Act.	POTĪTŪRUS	PASSŪRUS
Fut. Pass.	potiendus	patiendus

423. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES—Continued

MODELS

1. **Hominēs missī sunt quī oppidum mūnīrent,** *men were sent (who were) to fortify the town.*
2. **Cīvitātī persuāsit ut proficīscerentur,** *he persuaded the state that they should start out,* i. e., *to start out.*
3. **Cīvitātī persuādet nē proficīscantur,** *he is persuading the state not to start out.*

NOTES. *a.* Model 1 is another example of a purpose clause. The relative pronoun is used in place of **ut** to introduce a purpose clause when there is a convenient antecedent for it, especially after such verbs as **mittō, veniō,** etc.

b. The subordinate clauses of Models 2 and 3 may be regarded as complementary purpose clauses, their construction being the same as those of §413. They are sometimes called *volitive* clauses.

c. In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive.

424. VOCABULARY

Aeduus, -a, -um, *Aeduan.* Masculine used as a noun, singular, *an Aeduan, the Aeduan;* plural, *the Aeduans,* the leading tribe of Gaul.

item, adverb, *likewise.*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try, attempt.*
patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, allow.*
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *start out.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

DRILL EXERCISES

425. 1. Give the principal parts of **suscipiō**, and all its infinitives and participles, with their translation. 2. Give the principal parts of **proficīscor**, and all its infinitives and participles, with their translation.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

426. 1. Hominēs profectī sunt quī carrōs iūmentaque coëmerent. 2. Helvētiīs persuādēre cōnābimur ut sequantur. 3. Eōs in fīnēs nostrōs venīre nōn patiēmur. 4. Orgetorīx item Dumnorīgī Aeduō persuāsit ut rēgnum occupāret. 5. Dīviciācus ipse frātrem Dumnorīgem maximē verēbātur. 6. Hīs rēbus inductī erāmus nē pācem cōnfirmārēmus. 7. Lēgātiōnem suscipit ut hās rēs cōnficiat. 8. Helvētiī ab Orgetorīge proficīscī iussī sunt. 9. Orgetorīx dēlēctus erat ut amīcitiam cum cīvitātibus cōnfirmāret.

427. 1. We do not fear this road. 2. We were starting out to seize (i. e., in order that we might seize) this bridge. 3. Men came (who were) to establish peace. 4. Induced by the influence of Orgetorix, Dumnorix tried to seize the royal-power. 5. We asked why the Helvetians were starting out.

LESSON XLIX

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH VERBS OF FEARING

428. TEXT

Dumnorīx erat Aeduus, frāter Dīviciācī. Dīviciācus eō tempore prīncipātum in Aeduā cīvitāte obtinēbat ac[1] maximē acceptus plēbī erat. Orgetorīx item Dumnorīgī per-

suāsit ut rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāret, et eī fīliam suam in[2] mātrimōnium dedit.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet ut hoc in cīvitāte suā faceret, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. (51–59, Ch. 3.)

NOTES

1. a form of **atque**, used before some consonants.
2. *in*.

429. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH VERBS OF FEARING

Models

1. **Vereor nē bellum gerat,** *I fear that he is carrying on war* (or *that he will carry on war*).
2. **Veritus sum ut bellum gereret,** *I feared that he was not carrying on war* (or *that he would not carry on war*).

Notes. *a.* The substantive clauses **nē bellum gerat** and **ut bellum gereret** are the direct objects of the *verbs of fearing*.

b. In this construction **nē** and **ut** have meanings which are the reverse of those used in purpose clauses.

c. The rule for sequence of tenses is applied here.

430 ***RULE. Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with nē (affirmative), ut (negative).***

431. VOCABULARY

cōnātum, -ī, n. [**cōnor**], *attempt.*
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum, *win, gain.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., (trained) *army.*
meus, -a, -um, possessive adjective, *my.*
per-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**per,** *through,* **faciō,** *do*], literally, *do through,* i. e., *complete, accomplish.*
potēns, genitive **potentis,** adjective, *powerful.* Declined like **oriēns.**

Give and define words from the base of **potēns.**

DRILL EXERCISES

432. 1. Decline the Latin for *the whole senate; a powerful man* (**vir**). 2. Conjugate the perfect indicative active of **cōgō.** 3. Conjugate the future indicative, active and passive, of **dēligō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

433. 1. Verēbātur nē venīrent. 2. Verēmur ut veniant. 3. Vereor ut cōnāta nostra perficiāmus. 4. Cum exercitū potentissimō veniam ut rēgnum conciliem. 5. Exercitum meum mittam quī cōnāta nostra perficiat. 6. Helvētiī verēbantur nē Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem faceret. 7. Proficīscī cōnātī sumus ut prīncipātum occupārēmus.

434. 1. We are afraid that this will be seen. 2. We were afraid that this would not be seen. 3. Orgetorix feared that the Helvetians had heard-of this conspiracy. 4. Orgetorix undertook the mission in-order-that the Helvetians might not accomplish their attempts. 5. We saw why he was not sent. 6. Who was afraid that we would not come?

LESSON L

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

435. TEXT

Orgetorīx, "Facile est," inquit[1], "cōnāta nostra perficere, proptereā quod meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum; atque Helvētiī potentissimī sunt omnium Gallōrum; meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs[2] rēgna[3] conciliābō." (59–63, Ch. 3.)

NOTES

1. *said.*
2. *for you.*
3. Plural because referring to **rēgnum** in each state. Translate by the singular.

436. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

MODELS

1. **Fīnēs nostrī angustissimī sunt, ut in Galliam iter facere cōnstituerīmus,** *our territory is very limited, so-that we have decided to march into Gaul.*
2. **Tam fortēs sunt ut hostēs nōn vereantur,** *they are so brave that they do not fear the enemy.*

NOTES. *a.* In these sentences the fact stated in the subordinate clause is the result of the statement contained in the main clause.

b. The introductory word is **ut** (affirmative); **ut nōn** (negative).

c. A result clause is often preceded by **tam, ita,** *so,* **tantus,** *so great,* and similar words; after them **ut** is translated *that;* without them, if the clause is result, **ut** is often translated *so that.*

d. The subjunctive in a result clause is translated by the indicative.

e. When a question arises as to whether a subordinate subjunctive verb denotes *purpose* or *result,* remember

1. that an **ut**-clause may denote either purpose or result. It is purpose if any *will* or *intention* is implied; otherwise it is *result*.
2. that **nē**-clauses must be purpose; **ut nōn**-clauses must be result.

437. ***RULE. Result is expressed by the subjunctive with* ut *(affirmative),* ut nōn *(negative).***

438. **VOCABULARY**

firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
fortiter, adverb [**fortis**], *bravely.*
ita, adverb, *so,* in the sense of *in such a manner.*
iūs iūrandum, gen. **iūris iūrandī,** n., compound noun, each part declined, dat. **iūrī iūrandō,** abl. **iūre iūrandō,** *oath,* given as a pledge for the sacredness of some promise or declaration.
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., *speech.*
per, preposition with accusative, *through.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope, hope for.*
tam, adverb, *so,* in the sense of *to such a degree.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*

DRILL EXERCISES

439. 1. Decline and compare **potēns** (see §111). 2. Decline the Latin for *my army.* 3. Give the tense, mood, voice, person, and number of the following forms: **coëmeris; coëmēris; coēmeris; coēmerīs.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

440. 1. Virtūs Germānōrum tanta erat ut omnēs Gallōs superārent. 2. Hostēs tam fortiter contendērunt ut nōn superārentur. 3. Hostēs fortiter contendunt nē superentur. 4. Hostēs verēbantur nē superārentur. 5. Ōrātiōne Orgetorīgis adductī, Casticus et Dumnorīx iūs iūrandum

dedērunt. 6. Hōc iūre iūrandō coniūrātiōnem firmiōrem fēcērunt. 7. Hoc fēcērunt proptereā quod imperium tōtīus Galliae spērābant. 8. Montēs undique erant, ut Helvētiī continērentur. 9. Dumnorīx tam acceptus Orgetorīgī erat ut fīliam in mātrimōnium eī daret. 10. Tam angustī erant Helvētiōrum fīnēs ut magnō dolōre afficerentur.

441. 1. The mountains are so high that the Helvetians are shut-in (**contineō**). 2. The river was so wide that we did not hear him. 3. They led the men many miles so that they might not be seen in the province. 4. This was done (perf.) so that they were not seen in the province. 5. They were afraid that they would not be seen in the province. 6. Their hope was so great that they started out into Gaul with all their forces.

LESSON LI

GERUNDS IMPERSONAL VERBS

442. **TEXT**

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae imperium occupāre cōnantur. (63–66, Ch. 3.)

443. **GERUNDS**

The gerund is a verbal noun, corresponding to the English gerund or verbal noun ending in *-ing,* except that the Latin

gerund has no nominative. It is of the second declension, neuter gender. It is formed on the present base.

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
Gen.	**laudandī**, *of praising*	**monendī**, *of warning*	**dūcendī**, *of leading*
Dat.	**laudandō**, *for praising*	**monendō**, *for warning*	**dūcendō**, *for leading*
Acc.	**laudandum**, *praising*	**monendum**, *warning*	**dūcendum**, *leading*
Abl.	**laudandō**, *by, from, in, with praising*	**monendō**, *by, from, in, with warning*	**dūcendō**, *by, from, in, with leading*

	FOURTH CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION IN **-iō**
Gen.	**audiendī**, *of hearing*	**capiendī**, *of taking*
Dat.	**audiendō**, *for hearing*	**capiendō**, *for taking*
Acc.	**audiendum**, *hearing*	**capiendum**, *taking*
Abl.	**audiendō**, *by, from, in, with hearing*	**capiendō**, *by, from, in, with taking*

NOTE. It will be seen that these forms are like the neuter of the future passive participle (see §388), which is also called the *gerundive*. Recall its translation, and distinguish it from the gerund in sentences 4 and 5, §447.

444. IMPERSONAL VERBS

MODEL

Hoc facere eī licet (*to do this is permitted to him*), *it is permitted him to do this.*

NOTE. Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it* as subject. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a noun clause, or infinitive, or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They are used only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the present and perfect infinitives. Almost all of them are of the second conjugation, like **licet**.

445. licet, licēre, *licuit*, *it is permitted*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVES
Pres.	licet	liceat	licēre
Imp.	licēbat	licēret	
Fut.	licēbit		
Perf.	*licu*it	*licu*erit	*licu*isse
Plup.	*licu*erat	*licu*isset	
Fut. Perf.	*licu*erit		

446. VOCABULARY

licet, licēre, licuit, *it is permitted.*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it is fitting, it is right;* freely, *ought.*

DRILL EXERCISES

447. 1. Give the gerunds of **dō, teneō, mittō, mūniō, faciō.** 2. Give the ablative singular and genitive plural of **potēns** and of its comparative. 3. Conjugate the perfect and future perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive of **perficiō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

448. 1. Exercitus erat cupidus occupandī hoc oppidum. 2. Carrī ad proficīscendum coëmentur. 3. Ad hoc flūmen mātūrā idō iter fēcimus. 4. Hās cōpiās lēgātō dedimus dūcendās in Galliam. 5. Hae rēs faciendae sunt.

449. 1. Orgetorīgī licēbat lēgātiōnem suscipere. 2. Apud Helvētiōs nōn licēbat rēgnum obtinēre. 3. Oportēbit hostēs sequī. 4. Quaerēbant cūr hoc sibi licēret. 5. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī sunt nē iūs iūrandum darent. 6. Tantō ...olōre afficiēbantur ut in Galliam venīre cōnstituerent. 7. Quis verēbātur ut hoc facere oportēret? 8. Hōc iūre iūrandō

datō, illī hominēs trēs rēgnum spērābant. 9. Hoc cornū exercitūs superābātur. 10. Trēs annōs quam maximās sēmentēs fēcimus.

450. 1. It was permitted (to) the Helvetians to make this journey. 2. It is fitting to choose Orgetorix. 3. We shall send men (who are) to complete (§423, 1) our attempts. 4. The enemy's army was so great that we did not conquer. 5. They asked where you (sing.) were.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

451. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapter III, and translate it.

452. Memory Work.

1. **Ipse** (§406), **suī** (§407).

2. Infinitives (§377), participles (§388), gerunds (§442), deponents (§§421, 422), impersonals (§444).

453. Latin-English Vocabulary.

1. Give the memoranda of the following nouns:

auctōritās, cōnātum, exercitus, iūs iūrandum, lēgātiō, ōrātiō, populus, prīncipātus, profectiō, senātus.

2. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:

addūcō, conciliō, cōnficiō, cōnor, dēligō, patior, perficiō, permoveō, proficīscor, sequor, spērō, suscipiō, vereor.

3. Give the meaning of the following words:

ante, firmus, fortiter, ita, item, maximē, per, potēns, -que, satis, tam, tantus. Compare **firmus** and **potēns.** What case is used with **per?**

454. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

accomplish	complete	induce	speech
allow	departure	influence (noun)	start out
and (three words)	embassy	leadership	strong
army	enough	mission	suffer
arouse	especially	oath	sufficient
attempt (noun)	fear	people	through
attempt (verb)	finish	powerful	try
before	follow	senate	undertake
bravely	gain	so (two words)	win
choose	hope (verb)	so great	

455. Syntax.

Give complete Latin sentences, with translation, illustrating the *ablative absolute,* and clauses of *purpose* and *result,* and *with verbs of fearing.*

LESSON LII

DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

PLACE TO WHICH

456. TEXT

Ea rēs est[1] Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Orgetorīgem ex[3] vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Poena eum damnātum sequētur. Poena erit ut ignī cremētur.

Ea rēs est[1] Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs[2] Orgetorīgem ex[3] vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum[4] poenam[5] sequī[6] oportēbat, ut[7] ignī cremārētur. (67–69, Ch. 4.)

NOTES

1. **est ēnūntiāta:** to be taken altogether.

2. **mōribus suīs:** an ablative like this is best translated by the words *according to* or *in accordance with.*

3. We should say *in.*

4. Modifies **Orgetorīgem** understood, the object of **sequī.** For its force here, compare the use of the participle in the English sentence, "Beaten, we shall retreat."

5. Subject of **sequī.**

6. **poenam sequī (Orgetorīgem) damnātum,** taken together, is the subject of **oportēbat,** and tells the thing that *was fitting.*

7. **ut ignī cremārētur** explains what the punishment was; i. e., the clause is in apposition with **poenam.** The literal translation therefore is, *punishment-to-follow* (*Orgetorix*) *condemned was fitting, that he be burned with fire;* freely, *if he was condemned, it was the proper thing that the punishment of being burned to death should follow.*

457. VOCABULARY

Caesar, Caesaris, m., a Roman "family name" (**cog-nōmen**); (*Gaius Julius*) *Caesar,* the Roman general and statesman, author of the Commentaries.
cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *burn.*
damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn.*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say;* **causam dīcere,** *plead a case.*
domus, -ūs, f., *home;* for declension, see §458.
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva.*
ignis, ignis, m., abl. **ignī,** *fire.*
indicium, -ī, n., *information, evidence;* freely, *informers.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *chain.*

What English words are derived from **cremō, ignis?** What is the meaning of the phrase *to subpoena?*

458. DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

The noun **domus** has all the forms of the fourth and several of the second declension. In the following declension the more common form is given first, and should be so learned. Remember also that the gender of this noun is irregular, and that it omits the preposition in all place constructions.

domus, F., *house, home*

Nom.	**domus**	**domūs**
Gen.	**domūs**	**domuum, domōrum**
Dat.	**domuī, domō**	**domibus**
Acc.	**domum**	**domōs, domūs**
Voc.	**domus**	**domūs**
Abl.	**domō, domū**	**domibus**
Loc.	**domī**, *at home*	

The locative is explained in §474.

459. PLACE TO WHICH

MODELS

Venit, *he is coming*
- **ad oppidum**, *to,* or *toward, the town.*
- **in oppidum**, *to,* or *into, the town.*
- **Rōmam**, *to Rome.*
- **domum**, *home.*
- **rūs**, *to,* or *into, the country.*

NOTES. *a.* In these sentences the phrases answer the question, "to what place?"

b. The verbs with which they are used imply motion or extension.

460. ***RULE. Place to which is denoted by the accusative with* ad *or* in; *but names of towns,* domus, *and* rus, *omit the preposition.***

DRILL EXERCISES

461. 1. Give all infinitives and participles of **cōgō** and **sequor** with their meanings. 2. Give synopsis of **oportet.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

462. 1. In prōvinciam; ad mūrum; ad collēs; in omnia loca. 2. Ad fīnēs nostrōs profectī sunt. 3. Ad montēs eum sequī oportet. 4. Ipse ex vinculīs causam dīcet ut domum mittātur. 5. Genavam multōs hominēs sequī exercitum cōgunt. 6. Illō tempore in Galliam iter facere Helvētiī cōnstituerant.

463. 1. Into the forest; to the river; into the sea; to Spain; into Aquitania. 2. Those (men) will be compelled to start out into these mountains. 3. We had followed him to another river. 4. The oath having been given, we shall come to Rome. 5. We are leading troops home that the town may not be seized. 6. Within three years, these places will be seized by our army. 7. It is fitting to disclose our custom to Caesar. 8. By this custom, we are compelled to burn Orgetorix by fire.

LESSON LIII

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

PLACE FROM WHICH

464. TEXT

Diēs[1] cōnstitūta est dictiōnis[2] causae. Eā diē Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam undique coēgit; omnēs clientēs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs sē ēripuit nē causam dīceret.

Diē[1] cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis[2] Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad[3] hominum[4] mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum mag-

num numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. (70–74, Ch. 4.)

NOTES

1. For the gender see §298.
2. Though genitive, this word may be translated by ***for.***
3. *To-the-number-of.*
4. For the case and translation compare **passuum** in the phrase **mīlia passuum.**

465. VOCABULARY

cliēns, clientis, m. or f., *dependent, retainer.*
con-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead together; collect.*
decem, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *ten.*
dictiō, dictiōnis, f. [**dīcō,** *say*], literally, *a saying;* **causae dictiō,** *the pleading of the case, pleading the case.*
eō, īre, iī or **īvī, itum,** *go.* For conjugation, see §466.
eōdem, adverb [**īdem,** *the same*], *to the same place.*
ē-ripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [**rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum,** *snatch*], literally, *snatch out; free.*
familia, -ae, f., literally, *a body of servants,* i. e., *retinue.*
iūdicium, -ī, n., *trial.*
obaerātus, -ī, m., *debtor.*

What English words are derived from **condūcō, decem, iūdicium?**

466. CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

Eō, īre, iī or **īvī, itum,** *go*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	**eō, īs, it** **īmus, ītis, eunt**	**eam**
Imp.	**ībam**	**īrem**
Fut.	**ībō**	
Perf.	**iī (īvī)**	**ierim (īverim)**
Plup.	**ieram (īveram)**	**īssem (īvissem)**
Fut. Perf.	**ierō (īverō)**	

	INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES
Pres.	**īre**	*Pres.*	**iēns** (*Gen.* **euntis**)
Perf.	**īsse** (**īvisse**)	*Fut.*	**itūrus**
Fut.	**itūrus esse**		

NOTES. (1) Though **eō** is, in some forms, like a fourth conjugation verb, the imperfect and future indicative are formed as in the first and second conjugations. (2) Before a vowel the **i** of the stem becomes **e** in the present indicative and subjunctive.

467. PLACE FROM WHICH

MODELS

Venit, *he is coming*
- **ab oppidō,** (*away*) *from the town.*
- **dē oppidō,** (*down*) *from the town.*
- **ex oppidō,** (*out of*) *from the town.*
- **Rōmā,** *from Rome.*
- **domō,** *from home.*
- **rūre,** *from the country.*

NOTES. *a.* In these sentences, the modifiers answer the question, "From what place?"

b. The verbs with which they are used imply motion.

468. ***RULE. Place from which is denoted by the ablative with* ab, de, *or* ex; *but names of towns,* domus, *and* rus, *omit the preposition.***

DRILL EXERCISES

469. 1. Give memoranda of **senātus, imperium.** 2. Give synopsis in third person singular of **cōnficiō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

470. 1. Ex itinere; ab hōc lacū; dē montibus. 2. Ex Galliā in fīnēs Helvētiōrum Germānī īre cōnābuntur. 3.

Domum omnēs clientēs nostrī mittentur, ut fīnibus nostrīs Germānōs prohibeāmus. 4. Hīc sē ēripiet nē ex vinculīs causam dīcere cōgātur. 5. Genavam omnem familiam condūcere cōnātur. 6. Profectiō ab Helvētiīs lēge cōnfirmābitur, nē fīliī fīliaeque fīnēs angustōs habeant.

471. 1. Out of the sea; away from the fields; down from the hill. 2. We were going from that river to another. 3. I shall go from Rome. 4. We have decided to march ten miles from home. 5. His dependents started down from this mountain. 6. They will be collected by his sons and daughters.

LESSON LIV

PLACE IN WHICH

472. **TEXT**

Cīvitās ob eam rem incitābātur et armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnābātur; multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgēbant. Intereā Orgetorīx mortuus est. Et est suspīciō ut ipse[3] sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Cum[1] cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut[2] Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse[3] sibi mortem cōnscīverit. (74–78, Ch. 4.)

NOTES

1. **cum** with the subjunctive may mean *when, while, since, although;* which makes the best sense here?

2. **ut** with the indicative is a conjunctive adverb which here means *as*.
3. Used to intensify **sibi**; it may be omitted in translation.

473. VOCABULARY

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, *think*.
arma, armōrum, n., plural only, *arms*.
cōn-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *decree;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere**, literally, *decree death to one's self*, i. e., *commit suicide*.
ex-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, literally, *follow out;* as we say, *follow up*, i. e., *enforce*.
in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *urge on; arouse*.
intereā, adverb, *meanwhile*.
iūs, iūris, n., *right*.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., literally, *magistracy;* here, *magistrate*.
morior, morī (or **morīrī**), **mortuus sum**, future participle **moritūrus**, *die*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*.
neque, negative coördinate conjunction, *and . . . not;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.
propter, preposition with acc., *on account of*.
quīn, subordinate conjunction, *that*.
suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f., *suspicion*.
vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, *wander*.

474. LOCATIVE CASE

The locative case, which is used only to denote place in which, is confined to names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first declension (where it is formed by adding **ae** to the base), and in the singular of the second and third declensions (where it is formed by adding **ī** to the base); and to the following forms of common nouns, **domī** (*at home*), **rūrī** (*in the country*), **hūmī** (*on the ground*), **mīlitiae** and **bellī** (*in war*).

EXAMPLES: First declension; **Genavae**, *at Geneva*.
Second declension; **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*.
Third declension; **Carthāginī**, *at Carthage*.

475. **PLACE IN WHICH**

MODELS

Est, *he is* { **in oppidō,** *in the town.*
Rōmae, *in Rome, at Rome.*
domī, *at home.*
rūrī, *in the country.*

NOTES. *a.* In these sentences the modifiers answer the question, "In what place?" or "Where?"

b. The verbs with which they are used do not imply motion.

476. ***RULE. Place in which is denoted by the ablative with*** **in,** ***but names of towns,*** **domus,** ***and*** **rūs,** ***omit the preposition and use the locative if there is one.***

DRILL EXERCISES

477. 1. Give the memoranda of **arma, iūs, magistrātus.** 2. Give all infinitives and participles of **proficīscor** with their meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

478. 1. In agrīs; in silvā; in hīs montibus; Rōmae; in illō itinere. 2. In Galliā sunt multae cīvitātēs. 3. Illō annō, Casticus in fīnibus nostrīs vagābātur. 4. Omnēs clientēs suōs ad tria mīlia domī habēbat. 5. Ex vinculīs ab amīcīs ēreptus, Orgetorīx Genavae mortuus est. 6. Ipsī magistrātūs dē montibus ad lacūs dūcuntur.

479. 1. He went to the province; he went into the province; he is in the province; he will go out of the province; he will go away from the province. 2. In the cart was a supply of arms. 3. Men on the highest mountains were being aroused. 4. At that time the magistrates were lead-

ing their army, which was in the province. 5. On account of (express with **propter**) this suspicion, we have not tried to establish peace in Geneva. 6. The Gauls fought at home and in other states that they might snatch their friends from death.

LESSON LV

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

480. TEXT

Helvētiī ē fīnibus suīs exīre cōnstituerant. Itaque post Orgetorīgis mortem id facere cōnātī sunt. Ubi iam[2] ad eam rem parātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad[4] duodecim, vīcōs ad[4] quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.

Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut[1] ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam[2] sē[3] ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad[4] duodecim, vīcōs ad[4] quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt. (79–83, Ch. 5.)

NOTES

1. **ut exeant,** literally, *that they should go out,* may be translated by the English infinitive, *to go out.* See §423, 2, 3.
2. **ubi iam,** *as soon as.*
3. **sē esse arbitrātī sunt,** *they considered themselves to be.*
4. *up to, as many as.*

481. VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī, n., *building.*
duo-decim, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**duo,** *two,* **decem,** *ten*], *twelve.*

ex-eō, ex-īre, ex-iī, ex-itum, *go out, go forth.*
iam, adverb, *already; now.*
īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.* For declension, see §482.
in-cendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, *set fire to, set on fire.*
nihilō, n., ablative of defective noun, *by nothing.* **nihilō minus,** literally, *none the less,* i. e., *nevertheless.*
parātus, -a, -um [perfect passive participle of **parō,** *prepare*], literally, *prepared; ready.*
post, preposition with acc., *after.*
prīvātus, -a, -um, *private.*
quadringentī, -ae, -a, cardinal (numeral) adjective, *four hundred.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

482. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *ĪDEM*

īdem, *the same*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

In the plural, īdem and īsdem are sometimes used instead of eīdem and eīsdem.

Review the declension of is (§142). Īdem is formed of the demonstrative is and the suffix -dem. Note the changes undergone by is before the suffix.

DRILL EXERCISES

483. 1. Give the conjugation in the present indicative, and the synopsis in the first plural, of the verb **exeō.** 2. Give all the infinitives and participles of **cōnor** with their meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

484. 1. Eādem diē; in eōdem marī; eiusdem vīcī; eīdem virō; eaedem domūs. 2. Ubi eīdem Helvātiī omnēs vīcōs,

oppida, prīvāta aedificia incendērunt, spēs suās sustulērunt. 3. Magistrātūs eōs nihil domō efferre iubēbant. 4. Gallī eōs hostēs suīs nāvibus prohibēre cōnātī sunt. 5. Omnibus domibus nostrīs incēnsīs, Rōmānōs trāns idem flūmen sequēmur.

485. 1. By the same road; at the same time; on the same ship; of the same home; by means of four hundred soldiers. 2. After this, he ordered the twelve legions to follow that they might seize those villages. 3. The same buildings had been set-on-fire. 4. In Rome and in other towns, the same men had homes. 5. As soon as (**ubi iam**) all things were prepared, Caesar ordered the soldiers to come to him.

LESSON LVI

POSSESSIVE AND PARTITIVE GENITIVES

486. **TEXT**

Frūmentum omne, praeter quod[1] sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt ut domum reditiōnis[2] spēs tollerētur. Ob eam causam parātiōrēs sunt ut omnia perīcula subīrent;[5] trium mēnsium[6] molita cibāria quemque domō efferre iubent.

Frūmentum omne, praeter quod[1] sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis[2] spē sublātā,[3] parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda[4] essent;[5] trium mēnsium[6] molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. (83–87, Ch. 5.)

NOTES

1. Supply **id** as antecedent and as the object of **praeter**; then **id quod** = *that which* = *what.*

2. A verbal noun, as its meaning shows; therefore it is modified by the noun **domum**, in the construction of *place to which* (§459).

3. Omit the translation of the ablative absolute **spē sublātā** and its modifier **domum reditiōnis** until the rest of the sentence has been worked out.

4. **ad perīcula subeunda: subeunda** is the future passive participle of the irregular verb **subeō**; literally, *for dangers to-be-undergone*, i. e., *to undergo dangers.*

5. An imperfect subjunctive may be used when the main verb is historical present. For the translation of **ut subīrent**, see §423, 2, 3.

6. **trium mēnsium**: literally, *three months'*; i. e., *enough to last three months.*

487. VOCABULARY

cibārius, -a, -um, *relating to food.* Neuter plural used as substantive, like English "food-stuffs," i. e., *provisions.*

com-būrō, -būrere, -bussī, -bustum [**con**, intensive], *burn up;* the *up* being intensive in English.

ef-ferō, -ferre, etc., irregular, literally, *bear out; take.*

molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind.* **molita cibāria**, literally, *ground food-stuffs*, i. e., *meal.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry.*

praeter, preposition with accusative, *except.*

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que (**quod-que**), genitive **cuius-que**, etc., indefinite pronoun, *each one.*

reditiō, reditiōnis, f., (a) *returning.*

sub-eō, sub-īre, sub-iī, sub-itum, irregular, *undergo.*

tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, literally, *raise;* very often, *take away.*

What is the difference in meaning between **incendō** and **combūrō**?

488. POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

MODEL

Fīnēs Helvētiōrum erant lātī, *the territory of the Helvetians was wide.*

NOTES. *a.* The general use of the genitive with nouns (§35) is divided into several subdivisions, one of which is illustrated in this sentence.

b. The word **Helvētiōrum** tells *whose* territory is meant. Hence this genitive is called the *possessive genitive;* it answers the question "Whose?"

489. ***RULE. The possessive genitive is used to denote the person or thing that possesses something.***

490. PARTITIVE GENITIVE

MODEL

Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, *the bravest of all the Gauls are the Belgians.*

NOTES. *a.* The expression **Gallōrum omnium** denotes the whole of which **fortissimī** is a part.

b. Remember that the partitive genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is mentioned—*not* the whole of which *the whole* is mentioned; e. g., **pars hominum,** *part of the men,* but **omnēs hominēs,** *all (of) the men.*

c. Adjectives (especially neuter) and pronouns are often used with this construction; e. g., **quid dolōris,** *what (how much) grief;* **multum frūmentī,** *much grain.*

491. ***RULE. The partitive genitive (or genitive of the whole) is used to express the whole of which a part is mentioned.***

DRILL EXERCISES

492. Decline **trēs, frūmentum omne, spēs, quisque.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

493. 1. Quisque eōrum; in prōvinciā nostrā; in prōvinciam nostram; multa mīlia passuum. 2. Arma exercitūs ex oppidīs ab hominibus tollentur. 3. Multōs mēnsēs frūmentum efferent. 4. Decem mīlia hominum ab Gallīs mittentur quī ex fīnibus omnia arma portent (§423, 1). 5. Vereor nē haec combūrantur.

494. 1. Part of the grain; all (of) the grain; the Gaul's home; the Gauls' home; the days of this month. 2. You are the best-known of all the Gauls. 3. Three thousand men are now ready. 4. All of the towns will be set-on-fire by the same army. 5. Each one was ordered to carry his neighbor's arms and to undergo all dangers. 6. All hope had been taken away by this fire.

LESSON LVII

DECLENSION OF *vīs*

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

495. TEXT

Fīnitimī Helvētiōrum eōdem cōnsiliō[4] ūtuntur. Hoc cōnsilium est utī[1] ūnā cum Helvētiīs proficīscantur. Oppidīs exustīs, proficīscentur. Helvētiī fīnitimīs suīs persuādent ut proficīscantur. Eōdem cōnsiliō[4] ūsī,[3] oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum Helvētiīs proficīscentur.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī[1] eōdem[2] ūsī[3] cōnsiliō,[4] oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur. (87–90, Ch. 5.)

NOTES

1. Another form of **ut**. It is distinguished from **ūtī**, the present infinitive of **ūtor**, by its short **u**.

2. In translating the sentence, omit the words **eōdem . . . exustīs**, until the rest of the sentence is done.

3. Determine *exactly* what form this is (it is plural), and its syntax, before attempting to translate.

4. Translate as though a direct object of **ūtuntur** (**ūsī**).

496. VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, **-ī**, n., *plan.*

ex-ūrō, **-ūrere**, **-ussī**, **-ustum** [compare **com-būrō**], literally, *burn out;* we say, *burn up.*

Latobrīgī, **-ōrum**, m., *the Latobrigi*, a tribe living north of the Helvetians.

memoria, **-ae**, f., *memory, recollection.*

Rauracī, **-ōrum**, m., *the Rauraci*, a tribe living north of the Helvetians.

Tulingī, **-ōrum**, m., *the Tulingi*, m., a tribe living northeast of the Helvetians.

ūnā, adverb [**ūnus**, *one*], *together.*

ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, *use;* with **cōnsiliō**, *adopt.* Governs ablative.

vīs, **vīs**, f., *force, strength;* for declension, see §497.

497. DECLENSION OF *VĪS*

vīs, F., *force*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Gen.	**vīs**	**vīrium**
Dat.	**vī**	**vīribus**
Acc.	**vim**	**vīrēs (vīrīs)**
Voc.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Abl.	**vī**	**vīribus**

498. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

MODEL

Orgetorīgis spēs rēgnī fuit magna, *Orgetorix's hope (of) for royal power was great.*

NOTE. The objective genitive may be used with nouns that have a corresponding verbal idea. The notion expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can usually be expanded into a sentence containing an active verb. If the genitive becomes the *object* of such verb, it is *objective*. In the model above, the idea is implied that Orgetorix *hoped for royal power* and therefore **rēgnī** is *objective*.

499. ***RULE. An objective genitive is used to denote the person or thing that receives the act or feeling implied in a noun or adjective.***

DRILL EXERCISES

500. Decline the expressions **haec magna vīs, ācer vir, omne tempus.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

501. 1. Causae dictiō; Helvētiōrum spēs glōriae. 2. Gallī propter initium bellī domō profectī erant. 3. Orgetorīx imperium suae cīvitātis vī obtinēbit. 4. Gallī propter memoriam virtūtis suae bellum parābant. 5. Helvētiī, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, profectiōnem suam suscēpērunt.

502. 1. Many soldiers; many of the soldiers; all the soldiers; all the homes of the soldiers. 2. They were not influenced by the memory of these things. 3. Caesar will make a beginning of his journey at the same time. 4. We have not disclosed the cause of our plan. 5. The part of the army that has used (**faciō**) force will be conquered.

LESSON LVIII

DECLENSION OF *DUO* CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

503. TEXT

Bōī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant.[1] Hōs Bōiōs[2] receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi Helvētiī adscīscunt.

Bōiōsque,[2] quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant,[1] receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt. (90–92, Ch. 5.)

NOTES

1. Contracted from **oppugnāverant.** In the tenses formed from the perfect base the **v** is sometimes dropped, and the vowel following it then unites with the preceding vowel.

2. Arrange thus: **adscīscunt sibi, sociōs, Bōiōs receptōs ad sē:** literally, *they accept to themselves, (as) allies, the Boii, (having been) received to themselves;* freely, *the Boii . . . they admit to their number and receive as allies.*

504. VOCABULARY

ad-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *receive* to anyone; *accept.*
Bōī, Bōiōrum, m., *the Boii,* a tribe living near the Helvetians.
duo, duae, duo, cardinal (numeral) adjective, *two;* for decl. see §505.
Nōrēia, -ae, f., *Noreia,* a town of the Norici.
Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici,* a people living north of the Alps.
op-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ob,** *against*], literally, *fight against;* regularly, *assault, attack.*
possum, posse, potuī, irregular, *be able, can; be powerful.* For conjugation, see §506.

re-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō**, *take*], literally, *take back; receive.*

socius, -a, -um, *associated.* Masculine used as substantive, *ally.*

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, irregular, literally, *go across*, i. e., *cross.*

505. DECLENSION OF *DUO*

duo, *two*

	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

506. CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim
Imp.	poteram	possem
Fut.	poterō	
Perf.	potuī	potuerim
Plup.	potueram	potuissem
Fut. Perf.	potuerō	

	INFINITIVES	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	*Pres.* potēns
Perf.	potuisse	

The verb **possum** is a compound of **potis**, *able* (base, **pot**) and **sum**, *I am*, and is therefore conjugated like **sum**; but note the following:

1. **t** before **s** is changed to **s**.
2. **f** in the perfect base is dropped.
3. The imperfect subjunctive may be found by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive; see §342, 1.

507. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT

An infinitive partakes of the nature of both noun and verb. Its noun nature may be seen from the fact that it may be used in the nominative as the subject of a verb. Its verb nature may be seen from the facts that it has tenses, usually has a subject, and may have an object and an adverbial modifier.

508. MODELS

1. **Poenam sequī oportēbat,** *punishment to follow was fitting;* i. e., *it was fitting that punishment follow.*
2. **Duōbus itineribus exīre poterant,** *they (were able to) could go forth by two roads.*

NOTES. *a.* In Model 1 the infinitive phrase **poenam sequī** is the subject of the impersonal verb **oportēbat.**

b. In Model 2 the infinitive is used to *complete* the thought of the verb **poterant,** and so is called a *complementary infinitive.*

c. The complementary infinitive is used in both English and Latin.

DRILL EXERCISES

509. 1. Decline **ūnum iter, duo itinera, tria itinera.** 2. Decline any third declension adjective of three terminations. 3. Give all infinitives and participles of **recipiō,** with their meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

510. 1. Poteram, potueram; poterō, potuerō; poterunt, potuērunt, potuerint. 2. Ad flūmen Rhodanum duōbus annīs dūcēminī. 3. Angustō itinere exīre cōnstitūtum est. 4. Sēquanī itinere Helvētiōs prohibēre potuērunt quod multōs fīnitimōs sociōs sibi adscīverant. 5. Caesarem oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāre posse spērāmus. 6. Flūmen trānsīre cōnstituunt ut oppidum occupētur.

511. 1. You were able, you had been able; you will be able, you will have been able. 2. Caesar had ordered the people to prepare a supply of grain. 3. You can start out by these two roads. 4. The Helvetians were attempting to assault the town, on account of their desire for royal-power. 5. Two thousand(s) of our allies were not able to cross the river.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

512. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters IV and V, and translate those chapters.

513. Memory work.

1. Conjugation of **eō** (§464), **possum** (§507).
2. Declension of **domus** (§458), **īdem** (§482), **vīs** (§495), **duo** (§505).

514. Latin-English vocabulary.

Give the memoranda of the nouns; the entire nominative of the adjectives and their comparison; the principal parts of the verbs; the case used with the prepositions; and the meanings of all the words.

aedificium	**īdem**	**oppugnō**	**recipiō**
arma	**ignis**	**parātus**	**socius**
cliēns	**incendō**	**perīculum**	**subeō**
condūcō	**incitō**	**portō**	**suspīciō**
cōnsilium	**intereā**	**possum**	**tollō**
decem	**iūs**	**post**	**trānseō**

domus	**magistrātus**	**praeter**	**unā**
duo	**memoria**	**prīvātus**	**ūtor**
duodecim	**mors**	**propter**	**vagor**
eō	**mōs**	**quadringentī**	**vīcus**
eōdem	**neque**	**quisque**	**vīs**
iam			

515. English-Latin vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

after	custom	meanwhile	set fire to
ally (noun)	danger	memory	suspicion
already	death	neither	take away
am able	dependent	nor	ten
and not	each	now	together
arms	except	on account of	twelve
arouse	fire	plan	two
assault	force	private	undergo
building	four hundred	ready	urge on
carry	go	receive	use
carry away	go across	right	village
collect	home	to the same place	wander
cross	magistrate		

516. Syntax.

Give the rules of syntax for the three expressions of *place,* for the *possessive genitive, objective genitive,* and *partitive genitive.*

517. Composition.

Make up a short English sentence illustrating each of the constructions mentioned in §516, and then translate those sentences.

LESSON LIX

INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

518. TEXT

Erant omnīnō itinera duo. Hīs itineribus[2] domō[1] exīre poterant. Ūnum iter erat per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum. Hōc itinere singulī carrī vix dūcī poterant. Mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut[6] facile perpaucī eōs prohibēre possent.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus[2] domō[1] exīre possent: ūnum[3] per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur;[4] mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut[6] facile perpaucī prohibēre[5] possent. (93–97, Ch. 6.)

NOTES

1. See §468.
2. **quibus itineribus:** see §313. **quibus** is here a relative adjective.
3. **ūnum (iter):** supply **erat**.
4. *could be drawn.*
5. Supply **eōs**, referring to the Helvetians.
6. See §436, *c.*

519. VOCABULARY

difficilis, -e, comparative **difficilior,** superlative **difficillimus** [**dis-**, *apart*, **facilis**, *easy*], *difficult, hard.*

im-pendeō, im-pendēre, ———, ——— [**in**, *into*], literally, *overhang*, i. e., in the case of a mountain, *tower above.*

omnīnō, adverb [**omnis**, *all*], *in all.*
perpaucī, **-ae**, **-a**, *very few.*
quā, relative adverb, *where.*
singulī, **-ae**, **-a**, distributive numeral adjective, *one by one, one at a time.*
vix, adverb, *with difficulty.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH

520. We have *direct discourse* when the exact words of the original statement are used. We have *indirect discourse* when the substance of the statement is given, not in the original form, but with a change of construction.

A. When the original statement is in the *present* tense:

Caesar laudat,	*Caesar praises (is praising)*
Dīcit Caesarem laudāre,	*he says that Caesar praises (is praising)*
Dīxit Caesarem laudāre,	*he said that Caesar praised (was praising)*

B. When the original statement is in the *past* tense:

Caesar laudāvit,	*Caesar (has) praised*
Dīcit Caesarem laudāvisse,	*he says that Caesar (has) praised*
Dīxit Caesarem laudāvisse,	*he said that Caesar had praised*

C. When the original statement is in the *future* tense:

Caesar laudābit,	*Caesar will praise*
Dīcit Caesarem laudātūrum esse,	*he says that Caesar will praise*
Dīxit Caesarem laudātūrum esse,	*he said that Caesar would praise*

1. Note that, with the Latin verb:
   a. an infinitive with subject accusative is used.
   b. the tenses after **dīcit** and **dīxit** are the same.
   c. there is no word for "that."

2. Note that, with the English verb:
   a. an indicative with subject nominative is used.
   b. the tenses after *he says* and *he said* are NOT the same.
   c. the word "that" is used.

521. ***RULE. The accusative is used as the subject of infinitives.***

522. ***RULE.*** ***After verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like, the main verb of a statement is in the infinitive mood with its subject in the accusative.***

DRILL EXERCISES

523. Give, with meanings, all infinitives of **trānseō, ūtor, cōgō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

524. 1. Dīcit sē contendere. 2. Dīxit sē contendere. 3. Dīcit sē contendisse. 4. Dīxit sē contendisse. 5. Dīcit sē contentūrum esse. 6. Dīxit sē contentūrum esse. 7. Dīcit eōs appellārī. 8. Dīxit eōs appellārī. 9. Dīxērunt eum appellātum esse. 10. Dīxit eōs appellātōs esse. 11. Dīxērunt eum appellāvisse. 12. Dīcit eōs coēgisse. 13. Dīxit eōs coāctōs esse.

525. 1. He says that he is able. 2. He says that he was able. 3. He knew that Caesar would go. 4. He did this because (**quod**) he was able. 5. (It) was decided to collect two legions in all. 6. (It) was easy to set-fire-to their towns. 7. The men were taken because they tried to march through the province. 8. The Helvetians with difficulty drew their carts one-by-one.

LESSON LX

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

526. TEXT

Alterum iter erat per prōvinciam nostram. Inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper ā Rōmānīs pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit. Id flūmen nōnnūllīs locīs[3] vadō

trānsītur. Quā dē[4] causā hoc iter erat multō facilius atque expedītius.

Alterum[2] per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllīs locīs[3] vadō trānsītur. (97–101, Ch. 6.)

NOTES

1. Look at the map on p. 204 and notice the two possible ways for the Helvetians to leave their country. The one described by Caesar as overhung by a mountain is at Pas de l'Ecluse. The easier way was to cross the Rhone at Geneva or any one of several points between Geneva and Pas de l'Ecluse, and march through the country of the Allobroges.

2. Supply **iter.**

3. By exception, used without a preposition.

4. *for.*

527. VOCABULARY

expediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītum [**pēs, pedis,** *foot*], literally, *get one's foot out,* i. e., *extricate one's self.* Perfect passive participle as adjective, *quick; free.*

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *command;* with dative and accusative, *levy* (*upon*), *demand* (*from*).

multō, adverb [**multus**], (*by*) *much,* (*by*) *far.*

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, ————, *harm.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um [**nōn,** *not,* **nūllus,** *not any*], *some, several.* For declension see §283.

nūper, adverb, no comparative, superlative **nūperrimē,** *recently.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pāx, pācis**], literally, *pacify;* regularly, *subdue.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, ————, *be eager, desire.*

vadum, -ī, n., *ford.*

What English words are derived from **expediō, pācō, imperō?**

528. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

MODEL. **Helvētiīs persuāsit,** *he persuaded the Helvetians.*

Note that the dative, **Helvētiīs,** is translated by the direct object, *Helvetians.*

529. ***RULE. A dative which is translated by a direct object is used with most Latin verbs signifying*** **benefit** ***or*** **injure, please** ***or*** **displease, serve** ***or*** **resist, trust** ***or*** **distrust, command** ***or*** **obey; believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten,** ***and the like.***

Examples of such verbs are: **imperō, noceō, persuādeō, resistō,** and **studeō.**

DRILL EXERCISES

530. Form English sentences exemplifying *agent, means, time when, extent;* and tell how each is expressed in Latin.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

531. 1. Hostibus resistere; nocēre magistrātibus; dīxit sē Gallīs nōnnūllīs persuādēre; dīcit sē eīdem reī studēre. 2. Bōī frūmentō quod domō tollēbant maximē studēbant. 3. Orgetorīx Casticō persuāserat ut flūmen vadō trānsīret. 4. Dumnorīgī ut idem cōnētur persuādēbit. 5. Helvētiī Rauracōs pācāverant atque Germānīs nocēre cōnābantur. 6. Fīnitimīs eōrum imperāvit ut ad flūmen venīrent.

532. 1. I shall not harm his friends. 2. He says he does not desire peace. 3. They desired our friendship on account of our bravery. 4. He tried to resist his son's plan. 5. We had persuaded our friends to do (that they should do) this. 6. Some rivers flow in-such-a-way that they can not be crossed by fords.

LESSON LXI

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

533. TEXT

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque fīnibus Helvētiōrum est Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogēs nōndum bonō animō[2] in[3] populum Rōmānum esse vidēbantur quod nūper pācātī erant. Quā dē causā Helvētiī exīstimābant sēsē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs[1] esse ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.[4] Sī hoc facere nōn possent, sēsē vī eōs coāctūrōs[1] esse exīstimābant.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,[1] quod nōndum bonō animō[2] in[3] populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs[1] ut per suōs[5] fīnēs eōs[6] īre paterentur.[4] (101–106, Ch. 6.)

NOTES

1. **vel persuāsūrōs (esse)** and **vel coāctūrōs (esse)**: future infinitives with **sēsē** as subject. Translate: *They thought they would either persuade . . . or would compel.*
2. **bonō animō**: *of friendly spirit.*
3. **in**: *toward.*
4. **ut . . . paterentur**: *to allow.* See §423, 2.
5. Refers to the Allobroges.
6. Refers to the Helvetians.

534. VOCABULARY

bonus, -a, -um, comparative **melior,** superlative **optimus**; *good.*

exterus, -a, -um, comparative **exterior,** superlative **extrēmus** (or **extimus**); *outside,* comparative *outer, exterior,* superlative *most distant, farthest.*

nōn-dum, adverb, *not yet.*
prae-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō**], *place in command of, put in charge of.*
vel, coördinate conjunction, *or;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

COMPOUNDS OF *SUM*

535. Notice the following compounds of **sum** and the influence the prepositions have on the meaning:

absum, *be away, be absent*
adsum, *be near, be present, assist*
intersum, *be among, take part in*
praesum, *be over, be in command of*

536. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS

MODELS

1. **Helvētiī omnibus praestābant**, *the Helvetians surpassed all.*
2. **Labiēnum legiōnī praeficit**, *he puts Labienus in charge of the legion.*

NOTES. *a.* Some Latin verbs, because of their meaning, cannot take an object, direct or indirect. These may be so changed in meaning by prefixing certain prepositions that they take an indirect object in the dative. Example: **praestābant** in Model 1 above.

b. Other Latin verbs which can take only a direct object are so changed by prefixing certain prepositions that they may take an indirect object in addition to the direct object. Example: **praeficit** in Model 2 above.

c. Not all verbs, however, that are compounded with these prepositions take a dative, because the meaning does not always permit the use of the dative. Examples: **incendō, interficiō, oppugnō,** and many others.

d. The English translation may require an objective case or a phrase with a preposition suggested by the Latin compound.

e. This dative of the indirect object may be used with any compound of **sum** except **absum** and **possum.**

537. ***RULE. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with*** **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** ***and sometimes*** **circum.**

DRILL EXERCISES

538. 1. Give synopsis of **eō** in third person, plural; of **videō** in second person, singular. 2. Give all infinitives and participles of **vereor** with meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

539. 1. Caesarī adest; bellō intererat; legiōnī praefuerat; legiōnī praefectus est. 2. Caesar in Galliam ībit ut Gallīs persuādeat. 3. Quem praefēcit Caesar exercituī? 4. Orgetorīx cōpiīs ab Helvētiīs nōn erat praefectus. 5. Exīstimat hanc legiōnem cōpiīs Helvētiōrum praestāre.

540. 1. To place a lieutenant in command of the bridge; to assist the neighbors. 2. To be in command of the soldiers; to be placed in command of these men. 3. He will carry on war with that legion which has been sent to Rome. 4. Did the Helvetians allow the neighbors to assist them? 5. This army was so large that it surpassed all the others. 6. Who persuaded the lieutenants?

LESSON LXII

DATIVE OF PURPOSE **DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES**

541. TEXT

Omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparant. Diem dīcunt[2] quā[3] diē[4] ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs[4] erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs. Hōc tempore L. Pīsō et A. Gabīnius erant cōnsulēs.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs,[1] diem dīcunt[2] quā[3] diē[4] ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs[4] erat a.[5] d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne,[6] A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus. (106–109, Ch. 6.)

NOTES

1. **omnibus rēbus . . . comparātīs:** see §398.

2. *they appoint.*

3. **quā . . . conveniant:** see §423, 1.

4. **quā diē; is diēs:** note the change in gender and see §298.

5. **a. d. V. Kal. Apr.,** *the twenty-eighth of March.* From the Kalends, time was reckoned backwards, and both extremes included. Thus, in reckoning the fifth day before the Kalends of April, we must include both the first of April and the twenty-eighth of March. Here the logical construction would read **erat diēs quīntus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs.** The expression in the text is the regular idiomatic way of expressing dates, but it can not be parsed.

6. **L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus:** literally, *Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius (being) consuls;* freely, *in the consulship of,* etc. See §398. The year was 58 B.C.

542. VOCABULARY

a. d. V. Kal. Apr. (**ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs**), *the fifth day before the Kalends of April.*

Aprīlis, -e [abbr. **Apr.**], adjective, *of April.*

Aulus, -ī, m. [abbr. **A.**], *Aulus,* a Roman "first name" (**prae-nōmen**).

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help.*

con-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, literally, *come together,* i. e., *assemble.*

Gabīnius, -ī, m., [*Aulus*] *Gabinius.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n., [**impediō,** *hinder*], *hindrance.*

inimīcus, -a, -um [**in-,** *not,* **amīcus,** *friendly*], *unfriendly.*

Kalendae, -ārum, f. [abbr. **Kal.**], *the Kalends,* the first day of a Roman month.

Lūcius, -ī, m. [abbr. **L.**], *Lucius,* a Roman "first name" (**prae-nōmen**).

praesidium, -ī, n., *garrison, protection.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

subsidium, -ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement.*

What are the meanings of *auxiliary, subsidiary, inimical, convention?*

543. DATIVE OF PURPOSE (SERVICE)

MODELS

1. **Exercitus erat auxiliō,** *the army was* (for) *a help.*
2. **Aeduī mīlitēs auxiliō Caesarī mīsērunt,** *the Aeduans sent soldiers as a help to Caesar.*

NOTES. *a.* This dative expresses the purpose or end for which something exists or which it serves.

b. This dative, when used with **sum**, is best translated by a predicate noun; when used with other verbs, translate with the word ***as.***

c. This dative may be accompanied by another dative denoting the person (or thing) affected, which forms the (so-called) *double dative* construction.

544. ***RULE. The dative is used to denote the purpose which a thing serves.***

545. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

MODEL

Proximī sunt Germānīs, *they are nearest* (*to*) *the Germans.*

546. ***RULE. Adjectives meaning*** **near,** ***also*** **fit, friendly, similar,** ***and the like, with their opposites, may have a modifying dative.***

DRILL EXERCISES

547. Decline the expressions **is diēs, eadem rēs.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

548. 1. Hoc est auxiliō; illud est impedīmentō exercituī. 2. Ea loca erant proxima prōvinciae; erit plēbī acceptus.

3. Eā dē causā Caesar tribus legiōnibus imperāvit ut essent Aeduīs auxiliō. 4. Quod omnēs cīvitātēs erant inimīcae Helvētiīs, multa bella hīs locīs gerēbant. 5. Exercitus erat subsidiō eīs quī in alteram rīpam conveniēbant. 6. Helvētiī potentissimī erant sed Rōmānīs inimīcī.

549. 1. He is unfriendly to the Helvetians. 2. Caesar will do this as a protection to the Aeduans. 3. The Aeduans had a village very near the bank of the river. 4. Those men will be a reinforcement to our fathers and brothers. 5. The narrow territory was a (source of) distress to the Helvetians. 6. Have you been placed in command of this legion?

LESSON LXIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

550. **TEXT**

Helvētiī per prōvinciam nostram iter facere[3] cōnātūrī erant. Ubi Caesarī id nūntiātum est, Rōmā proficīscī[3] mātūrat. Quam[6] maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem[7] contendit et ad[8] Genavam pervenit. Sed erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō[11] ūna[12] Rōmāna. Quā dē causā prōvinciae[9] Rōmānae quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat; pontem quī erat ad[13] Genavam iubet rescindī.

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset,[1] eōs[2] per prōvinciam nostram iter facere[3] cōnārī, mātūrat[4] ab urbe[5] proficīscī,[3] et quam[6] maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem[7] contendit et ad[8] Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae[9] tōtī quam

maximum potest mīlitūm numerum imperat[10] (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō[11] ūna[12]), pontem quī erat ad[13] Genavam iubet rescindī. (110–116, Ch. 7.)

NOTES

1. **nūntiātum esset:** translate by an indicative.

2. Subject of **cōnārī**; the phrase **eōs . . . cōnārī** is in apposition with **id**; *that they were trying,* etc.

3. See §508, *b.*

4. Historical present and hence may govern historical sequence.

5. **ab urbe:** *from* (*near*) *the city,* because the fact that he held a military command prevented him from entering Rome.

6. **quam . . . itineribus:** (*by the greatest marches he is able*), *by the greatest possible marches.* Compare §396, where no form of **possum** was used; the translation is the same whether **possum** is used or not.

7. **Gallia ulterior** was Gaul on the farther side of the Alps from Rome. What is now called the northern part of Italy was called **Gallia citerior,** *hither Gaul.* Caesar's province included both Gauls, but only so much of Transalpine Gaul as had been conquered. The Allobroges belonged to his province, but the Helvetians did not. In his narrative Caesar explains to the Romans how necessary it was for the safety of the province for him to go outside of his province and do things which the Romans never thought of when they sent him there.

8. (*to*) *in the vicinity of.*

9. See §529.

10. Connect **imperat** with **iubet** by **et** (supplied).

11. **legiō:** it is not known precisely what the full strength of a Roman legion was at this time. The actual strength varied, just as is the case with our regiments. It probably averaged about 3600 men.

12. **ūna:** *only one.*

13. *near.*

551. VOCABULARY

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *report.*

per-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, literally, *come through,* i. e., *arrive.*

re-scindō, re-scindere, re-scidī, re-scissum, literally, *cut back; cut down; break down.*

ulterior, ulterius, comparative adjective, no positive, superlative **ultimus**; *farther:* **Gallia ulterior,** *farther Gaul,* i. e., the portion of modern France that had been overrun by the Romans.
urbs, urbis, f., *city.* For pronunciation see §6.

What is the meaning of *inter-urban?* What is an *ulterior* motive?

552. DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego,** *I*		Second person, **tū,** *you* (*thou*)	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum** **nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum** **vestrī**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it;* or, when *him, them,* etc., refer to the subject, by the reflexive pronoun, **suī** (§407). When they are used as subjects, it is for emphasis only.

b. **nostrum** and **vestrum** are the forms used as partitive genitives; **nostrī** and **vestrī,** as objective genitives.

c. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, **nōbīscum,** *with us.*

553. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES (PRONOUNS)

These are similar in form to the genitives of the corresponding personal pronouns, which are never used to denote possession.

1st pers.	**meus, -a, -um,** *my*	**noster, -tra, -trum,** *our*
2d pers.	**tuus, -a, -um,** *your* (of one)	**vester, -tra, -trum,** *your* (of more than one)

3d pers.	**suus, -a, -um**, *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)	**suus, -a, -um**, *their* (when referring to the subject)
	eius (gen. sing. of **is**), *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)	**eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (gen. plur. of **is**), *their* (when not referring to the subject)

554. **Meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus** are pronominal adjectives and hence agree with the nouns they *modify* and *not* with the nouns to which they refer. For example, in the expression **suās sorōrēs, suās** is accusative plural feminine to agree with **sorōrēs**, but the meaning may be *his, her, its,* or *their sisters,* depending on the person to whom **suās** refers; in the sentence **vir suās sorōrēs videt**, *the man sees his sisters,* **suās** agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun **sorōrēs**, but the meaning is *his* because it refers to **vir** (*man*).

DRILL EXERCISES

555. 1. Give infinitives and participles of **cōnor** and **proficīscor** with meanings. 2. Give synopsis of **possum** in first person singular.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

556. 1. Tē moneō. 2. Id mihi nūntiāvistī. 3. Nōs audīverās. 4. Tibi persuāsī. 5. Vōbīs persuādēbō. 6. Nōbīs persuādēbat. 7. Mēcum proficīscētur. 8. Nōbīscum bella gessit. 9. Domus tua; domus vestra. 10. Mihi inimīcus erit; nōbīs frūmentum imperābitis; vōbīs praeficiar. 11. Tibi sum amīcus; partem nostrum vīdisti. 12. Ad tē īre poterō; vestrī memoriam tenēbō. 13. Mīlitēs eius ad ulteriōrem prōvinciam pervenīre mātūrābunt. 14. Helvētiī fīnīs suōs defendent.

557. 1. They sent me. 2. I shall order you. 3. They send me with you (plu.) as an aid. 4. You will see us at Rome. 5. I saw you (plu.) in the farther part of their province. 6. With their (own) friends they started out to your (sing.) home. 7. Our soldiers were hurrying to announce this matter (**rēs**) to the other legion.

1. *funditor*
2. *levis armaturae milites*
3. *legionarii*
4. *vexillum*
5. *signiferi*
6. *aquilifer*
7. *tubicen*
8. *bucinator*

ROMAN SOLDIERS

LESSON LXIV

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*

558. **TEXT**

Ubi dē Caesaris adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, mittunt. Huius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant. Hī lēgātī dīcunt Helvētiīs esse in animō[2] sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter nūllum habērent. Rogant etiam ut[4] eius[5] voluntāte id sibi[6] facere liceat.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent[1] sibi esse in animō[2] sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre[3] ut[4] eius[5] voluntāte id sibi[6] facere liceat. (116–122, Ch. 7.)

NOTES

1. See §423, 1.

2. **Helvētiīs (sibi) esse in animō:** (*that it was to the Helvetians in mind*), *that it was the Helvetians' intention.* The subject of **esse** is the phrase **sine . . . facere.**

3. **(et) rogāre:** supply **sē** as subject. It depends on **dīcerent** as does **esse** above; *and* (*they also said*) *that they requested.*

4. **ut . . . liceat:** literally, *that to do this may* (*might*) *be permitted to them,* i. e., *that they may* (*might*) *be permitted to do this.* The subject of **liceat** is the phrase **eius . . . facere;** the clause **ut . . . liceat** is a substantive clause, the object of **rogāre.**

5. i. e., Caesar's.

6. **sibi:** indirect object of **liceat.**

559. VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m. [**ad-veniō,** *come to*], *coming, approach.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain;* **eum certiōrem faciō,** literally, *I make him more certain;* regularly, *I inform him;* passive, literally, *I am made more certain;* regularly, *I am informed.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., literally, *a man delegated with power;* hence, in diplomacy, *an ambassador, commissioner;* in military language, *a lieutenant-general, a lieutenant.*

maleficium, -ī, n. [**male,** *badly,* **faciō,** *do*], *wrong-doing.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*

Nammēius, -ī, m., *Nammeius,* a Helvetian ambassador.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, not wish.*

nūllus, -a, -um [**ne,** *not,* **ūllus,** *any*], literally, *not any,* i. e., *no* (adjective). For declension see §283.

prīnceps, prīncipis, adjective [**prīmus,** *first*], *first;* as a noun, *chief.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *ask.*

sine, preposition with ablative, *without.*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any.* For declension see §283.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., *Verucloetius,* a Helvetian noble.

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.*

voluntās, voluntātis, f. [**volō,** *wish*], literally, *willingness,* i. e., *permission.*

560. CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ*

Volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish*
Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, not wish*
Mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	māluerām
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

INFINITIVES

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

DRILL EXERCISES

561. Give synopsis of **licet**; decline **nūlla vīs, ūllus vir, alia domus.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

562. 1. Māluit; vīs; nōn vīs; volēbāmus. 2. Volent; māvult; mālumus; mālēs. 3. Proficīscī vultis. 4. Tibi proximus esse nōluit. 5. Caesar auxiliō fīnitimīs esse vult. 6. Mihi persuādēre vīs. 7. Quis mēcum Genavam īre māvult? 8. Caesar dē Helvētiōrum adventū ab hominibus certior factus est quī illīus cīvitātis prīncipēs fuerant. 9. In fīnēs eōrum sine ūllō maleficiō trānsīre poterimus. 10. Flūmen erat tam altum ut lēgātī sine voluntāte hostium trānsīre nōn possent.

563. 1. You (plu.) will be unwilling; you (plu.) prefer; he had preferred; we have been unwilling. 2. They wish to cross. 3. You (sing.) wish to help. 4. He wishes to ask my permission. 5. They wished to do no mischief. 6. Caesar prefers to appoint brave lieutenants. 7. He was not certain about the arrival of the army.

LESSON LXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

564. TEXT

Sed L. Cassius cōnsul ab Helvētiīs occīsus (erat) exercitusque eius pulsus (erat) et sub[3] iugum missus erat. Ob eam rem Caesar iter per prōvinciam concēdī dēbēre nōn putābat. Hominēs inimīcō animō ab iniūriā et maleficiō nōn temperābunt. Facultās per prōvinciam itineris faciendī[6] eīs nōn data est.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat[1] L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum[2] exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub[3] iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat;[4] neque hominēs[5] inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī,[6] temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. (122–127, Ch. 7.)

NOTES

1. **memoriā tenēbat:** *he remembered;* being equivalent in meaning to a verb of thinking, is followed by the accusative and infinitive.

2. **occīsum . . . pulsum . . . missum . . . temperātūrōs:** supply **esse** with each.

3. **sub iugum missum:** two spears were set upright in the ground and a third fastened across their tops. A defeated army was made to march under this in token of submission.

4. **concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat:** *he did not think it ought to be granted.* The subject of the infinitive is **iter per prōvinciam facere** (understood).

5. Subject of **temperātūrōs (esse).**

6. **itineris faciendī:** (*of the journey to-be-made*), *of making the journey.*

565. VOCABULARY

Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman name; (*Lucius*) *Cassius* (*Longinus*), consul in 107 B.C.
con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [con, intensive], *grant.*
facultās, facultātis, f. [facilis, *easy*], *opportunity.*
iniūria, -ae, f. [in, negative, iūs, *right*], *harm, damage.*
iugum, -ī, n., *yoke.*
oc-cīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob, *against*, caedō, *cut*], *cut off, kill.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, literally, *drive; beat.*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *reckon;* regularly, *think.*
sub, preposition; with accusative (with verb implying motion), *under;* with ablative (with verb implying rest), *at the base of.*
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refrain.*

Give the derivation and meaning of *subjugate, concede, temperance.*

566. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER*

Adjectives in **-er** form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding **-rimus** to the *masculine singular nominative* of the *positive* (not to the base). E. g.,

aeger, aegra, aegrum (base, **aegr**); **aegrior, -ius; aegerrimus, -a, -um;**
līber, lībera, līberum (base, **līber**); **līberior, -ius; līberrimus, -a, -um;**
ācer, ācris, ācre (base, **ācr**); **ācrior, -ius; ācerrimus, -a, -um;**
celer, celeris, celere (base, **celer**); **celerior, -ius; celerrimus, -a, -um.**

567. COMPARISON OF SIX ADJECTIVES IN *-LIS*

Six adjectives in **-lis** form their comparatives regularly, but their superlatives by adding **-limus** to the base. The six are:

facilis, *easy*	**similis**, *like*	**humilis**, *low*
difficilis, *difficult*	**dissimilis**, *unlike*	**gracilis**, *slender*

EXAMPLE: **facilis, -e** (base, **facil**); **facilior, -ius; facillimus, -a, -um.**

Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly.

DRILL EXERCISES

568. 1. Compare **parātus, longus, nōbilis.** 2. Decline the Latin for *the deeper sea, the longer bridge.* 3. Give the synopsis of **patior** in the second person plural.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

569. 1. Ācriore proeliō; ab aegerrimīs virīs. 2. Altiōrum montium; angustissimī fīnēs. 3. Ūnum iter (esse) difficillimum, alterum esse facillimum putāvit. 4. Hoc proelium erat ācerrimum et ob eam causam Caesar hostēs superāre nōn poterat. 5. Fortiōrēs hominēs auxiliō nōbīs venient.

570. 1. By a very sharp battle; (away) from the narrower river. 2. Of the easier roads; by the most difficult roads. 3. On this account they have refrained from wrong for many years. 4. We shall not be able to make these more difficult marches. 5. An opportunity was granted you by which you sent the enemy under the yoke. 6. The Helvetians themselves will be either killed or beaten by our forces.

LESSON LXVI

COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

571. TEXT

Sed Caesar spatium intercēdere voluit dum[2] mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent. Quā dē causā lēgātīs respondit diem[3] sē ad dēlīberandum[4] sūmptūrum esse. Iussit eōs ad Īdus Aprīlēs revertī sī quid[5] vellent.

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset,[1] dum[2] mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem[3] sē ad dēlīberandum[4] sūmptūrum: sī quid[5] vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.[6] (127–131, Ch. 7.)

NOTES

1. See §414.

2. **dum mīlitēs convenīrent**: *until the soldiers should muster.*

3. *time.*

4. Accusative of verbal noun (gerund), *deliberating.*

5. **sī quid**: *if anything.* Forms of **quis** are used for forms of **aliquis**, *any*, when preceded by **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, or **num**.

6. **sī . . . reverterentur**: *if they wished anything they should come back on the Ides of April.*

572. VOCABULARY

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deliberate, consider.*
dum, subordinate conjunction, *while; until.*
Īdus, Īduum, f., *the Ides* of a month, the 15th of March, May, July, and October; the 13th of other months.
inter-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go between*, i. e., *intervene.*
quis, quid, interrogative pronoun, *who? what?* **quis, quae, quid**, indefinite pronoun, *any one, any thing.* See §§154 and 571, 5.
re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*
re-vertor, -vertī, -vertī, -versum, deponent in present system, literally, *turn back*, intransitive; *return.*
sī, subordinate conjunction, *if.*
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take.*
tamen, adverb, *nevertheless.*

573. COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

bonus, -a, -um;	**melior, -ius;**	**optimus, -a, -um**: *good, better, best*
malus, -a, -um;	**peior, -ius;**	**pessimus, -a, -um**: *bad, worse, worst*
magnus, -a, -um;	**maior, -ius;**	**maximus, -a, -um**: *great, greater, greatest*

parvus, -a, -um;	minor, minus;	minimus, -a, -um: *small, less, least*
multus, -a, -um;	plūs (n.);	plūrimus, -a, -um: *much* (plu. *many*), *more, most*

574. Of the following the positive forms in parentheses are rare:

(exterus, -a, -um;)	exterior, -ius;	extrēmus, -a, -um (or extimus): *outer, outmost*
(īnferus, -a, -um;)	īnferior, -ius;	īnfimus, -a, -um (or īmus): *lower, lowest*
posterus, -a, -um;	posterior, -ius;	postrēmus, -a, -um (or postumus): *latter, last*
(superus, -a, -um;)	superior, -ius;	suprēmus, -a, -um (or summus): *higher, highest*

575. Of the following the positive forms are lacking:

citerior, -ius;	citimus, -a, -um:	*hither, hithermost*
interior, -ius;	intimus, -a, -um:	*inner, inmost*
prior, -ius;	prīmus, -a, -um:	*former, first*
propior, -ius;	proximus, -a, -um:	*nearer, next*
ulterior, -ius;	ultimus, -a, -um:	*farther, farthest*

576. DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	———	———	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	———	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Abl.	———	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

Note that **plūs** has no **i** in the nominative and accusative neuter plural.

Complūrēs is declined like the plural of **plūs**, except that it may have either **complūra** or **complūria** in the neuter.

577. The comparative may be translated either by the English comparative or by *too, rather, quite,* or (when negatived) *very* with the positive; and the superlative by the English superlative or by *very* with the positive.

DRILL EXERCISES

578. 1. Decline **complūrēs.** 2. Compare **parvus** in genitive singular feminine; **multus** in ablative singular neuter; **bonus** in accusative plural neuter.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

579. 1. Citeriōris Galliae; exercitū meliōre. 2. Minōre numerō; plūs virtūtis; proximīs Īdibus. 3. Ūnā legiōne et multīs mīlitibus longissimum mūrum perficiet. 4. Iussērunt eōs frūmentum ex citeriōre Galliā sūmere. 5. Erant omnīnō trēs legiōnēs quae ad īnferiōrem rīpam flūminis convēnerant. 6. In Galliam quam maximīs itineribus revertentur. 7. Tamen est iter difficillimum inter altum montem et flūmen altum. 8. Respondit multōs diēs intercessisse.

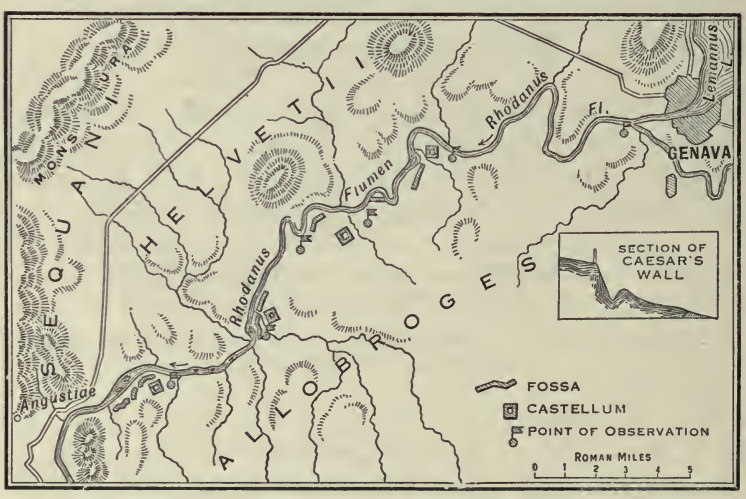
580. 1. Nearest to the Germans; the larger river. 2. Very many soldiers; in the least space. 3. A larger space intervenes between these two hills. 4. The enemy came from the lowest place. 5. We shall build a bridge next month. 6. From the most distant towns, they started out to farther Gaul. 7. Caesar was not able to return from Geneva by an easier road. 8. Nevertheless more soldiers will be sent by Caesar as a reinforcement. 9. Caesar wished to return to Rome that he might reply to the senate.

LESSON LXVII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

581. TEXT

Intereā eā legiōne,[1] quam sēcum[2] habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, mūrum et fossam perdūcit. Mūrus et fossa ā lacū Lemannō (quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit) ad montem Iūram (quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit) mīlia[5] passuum[6] decem novem pertinent. Mūrus et fossa sunt in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim.



Intereā eā legiōne[1] quam sēcum[2] habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū[3] Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem[4] Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia[5] passuum[6] decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. (132–136, Ch. 8.)

NOTES

1. **eā legiōne, mīlitibus:** modify **perdūcit.** See §313. Persons may be considered the *means* of an act when they are instruments in the hands of a superior.

2. See §407.

3. **ā lacū:** modifies **perdūcit.** See §468.

4. **ad montem:** modifies **perdūcit.** See §460.

5. **mīlia passuum decem novem:** *for nineteen miles.* See §327.

6. See §491.

582. VOCABULARY

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
īn-fluō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxum, *flow* (into).
decem novem, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *nineteen.*
novem, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *nine.*
per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, literally, *lead through; construct; extend.*
sē-decim [**sex, decem**], indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *sixteen.*

How did the month of *November* come to have its name?

583. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Most adverbs are formed from adjectives as follows:

1. *Positive.* *a.* Most adjectives of the first-and-second declension form corresponding adverbs by adding **-ē** to their bases, e. g.,

adjective, **longus, -a, -um**; *adverb,* **longē.**

b. Most adjectives of the third declension having two or three endings in the nominative singular form corresponding adverbs by adding **-iter** to their bases, e. g.,

adjective, **fortis, -e**; *adverb,* **fortiter.**

c. Most adjectives of the third declension having one ending in the nominative singular form corresponding adverbs by adding **-ter** to their bases; a final **t** of the base is dropped, e. g.,

adjective, potēns, potentis; *adverb,* potenter.

2. *Comparative.* The comparative of an adverb is always the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding adjective, e. g.,

adjective, longior, longius; *adverb,* longius.

3. *Superlative.* The superlative of an adverb is always the base of the superlative of the adjective + **ē**, e. g.,

adjective, longissimus, -a, -um; *adverb,* longissimē.

Thus the entire comparison of all the adjectives and adverbs mentioned above would be as follows:

Adjective	longus, -a, -um	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	longē	longius	longissimē
Adjective	fortis, -e	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
Adjective	potēns, potentis	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	potenter	potentius	potentissimē

DRILL EXERCISES

584. Compare the following adjectives, then form and compare their adverbs: **nōbilis, certus, angustus, cupidus, lātus, aeger, līber, ācer, celer.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

585. 1. Lātissimē multōs annōs vagātus est. 2. Quis tibi nocēbit? 3. Reliquīs Helvētiīs facillimē praestātis. 4. Mī-

litēs sunt cupidissimī glōriae. 5. Proximō diē hominēs plūrimī ex agrīs cupidissimē profectī sunt. 6. Flūmina, quae in hoc mare īnfluunt, sunt angustissima. 7. Altitūdō mūrī et fossae erat pedum sēdecim. 8. Mōns impendēbat ut mūrum perdūcere vix possent. 9. Intereā illōs montēs trānsīre nōn cōnābuntur quod sunt altiōrēs.

586. 1. To help your friends; my desire for glory. 2. In a sharper battle; of the larger army; of nineteen feet. 3. The Helvetians wandered too widely and fought too often. 4. Meanwhile they followed the troops of the Gauls very bravely. 5. The other Gauls wandered more widely in their (own) territory. 6. He does not wish to go by this road because the height of the mountain is very great. 7. A wall and ditch will be constructed for sixteen miles.

LESSON LXVIII

COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADVERBS

587. **TEXT**

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit. Haec facit quō[1] facilius Helvētiōs prohibēre possit, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnentur. Ubi Īdus Aprīlēs quās cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnērunt, lēgātī ad eum revertērunt. Caesar, "nōn possum," inquit, "mōre[2] et exemplō populī Rōmānī iter[3] per prōvinciam ūllī dare; sī vim facere[4] cōnābiminī, prohibēbō."

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō[1] facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre[2] et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter[3] ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere[4] cōnentur, prohibitūrum[5] ostendit. (137–142, Ch. 8.)

NOTES

1. **quō . . . possit:** *so that he may be able to check (them) more easily.* If a purpose clause contains a comparative form, **quō** is used in place of **ut.**

2. **mōre et exemplō:** see §456, Note 2.

3. *right of way.*

4. *use.*

5. **prohibitūrum (esse):** supply **sē** (Caesar) as subject.

588. VOCABULARY

castellum, -ī, n., *fort.*

com-mūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum [con, intensive], literally, *fortify strongly;* **castella commūnīre,** literally, *to fortify forts strongly;* i. e., *to construct strong forts.*

dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, literally, *place apart,* i. e., *place at intervals.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example, precedent.*

inquam, -is, -it, a defective verb used only with direct quotations, *say.*

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling;* freely, *unwillingly;* **sē invītō,** ablative absolute, literally, *he (being) unwilling,* i. e., *without his consent.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deny, say . . . not,* the English negative belonging with the dependent verb.

os-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *show.*

quō, subordinate conjunction, *that;* used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

What is the meaning of *ostentatious, negative?*

589. COMPARISON OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR ADVERBS

bene,	**melius,**	**optimē;** *well, better, best.*
diū,	**diūtius,**	**diūtissimē;** *long* (of time), *longer, longest.*
facile,	**facilius,**	**facillimē;** *easily, more easily, most easily.*
(magnopere),	**magis,**	**maximē;** *greatly, more, most.*
male,	**peius,**	**pessimē;** *ill, worse, worst.*
multum,	**plūs,**	**plūrimum;** *much, more, most.*
nūper,	———	**nūperrimē;** *recently, most recently.*
parum,	**minus,**	**minimē;** *too little, less, least.*
prope,	**propius,**	**proximē;** *near, nearer, next.*

DRILL EXERCISES

590. Give synopsis of **pōnō et mūniō** in third person singular. 2. Decline **facilis.** 3. Conjugate **eō** in present indicative and give synopsis in second person singular.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

591. 1. Diūtius vagārī; plūs posse;* plūrimum posse.* 2. Diū bellum invītus geret. 3. Dē hīs rēbus Caesarem certiōrem faciunt. 4. Dē hōc opere Helvētiī certiōrēs factī erant. 5. Helvētiī ipsī plūrimum poterant quod maximum exercitum habēbant. 6. Sed agrōrum Gallōrum erant cupidī quod agrī hōrum erant lātissimī. 7. Maximē verēbantur ut castella sua commūnīre possent.

592. 1. To come nearer; to be much influenced. 2. To see very easily; to inhabit this place longer. 3. That town will be fortified with more walls and forts. 4. The Helvetians were not very easily beaten. 5. They were the least desirous of more soldiers. 6. He asked in what town garrisons had been placed. 7. Caesar willing(ly) showed that his friends were very powerful.

---

* See **possum** in general vocabulary.

LESSON LXIX

DIRECT QUESTIONS

593. **TEXT**

Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī erant. Quā dē causā nāvēs iūnxērunt ratēsque complūrēs fēcērunt; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, cōnātī sunt sī[2] perrumpere possent. Sed operis mūnītiōne[3] et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs[1] ratibusque complūribus factīs,[1] aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī[2] perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne[3] et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. (142–147, Ch. 8.)

NOTES

1. **nāvibus iūnctīs** and **ratibus factīs**: ablatives which, together with **vadīs**, denote the *means* of **cōnātī**, while the adverbs **interdiū** and **noctū** denote the *time*.

2. **sī . . . possent**: (*to see*) *if they could force their passage:* **sī** is here used, in the sense of *whether* or *to see if*, to introduce an indirect question.

3. **mūnītiōne, concursū, tēlīs**: ablatives of cause modifying **repulsī**.

594. **VOCABULARY**

com-plūrēs, com-plūra (or **com-plūria**), genitive **complūrium** [**con,** intensive], *several, quite a number of.*

cōnātus, -ūs, m. [**cōnor,** *attempt*], *attempt.*

con-cursus, -ūs, m., literally, *a running together; charge.*

dē-iciō, dē-icere, dē-iēcī, dē-iectum, literally, *throw down;* with **spē,** *cast down; disappoint.*

dē-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, ——, *stop* (intransitive) from something, i. e., *cease.*

inter-diū, adverb [**diēs,** day], *during the day, by day.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join.*

mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f., [**mūniō,** *fortify*], *fortification; strength.*

-ne, enclitic, interrogative particle, not hinting the answer.

noctū, adverb [**nox,** *night*], *by night,* i. e., *during the night.*

nōn-ne, interrogative particle, hinting an affirmative answer, *not.*

nōn-numquam, adverb, *not never,* i. e., *sometimes.*

num, interrogative particle, hinting a negative answer. It cannot be translated by any one word.

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through.*

ratis, ratis, f., *raft.*

re-pellō, re-pellere, rep-pulī, re-pulsum [**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,** *drive*], *drive back.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *missile.*

From what are the following words derived: *dejected, junction, nocturnal, repulse?*

595. DIRECT QUESTIONS

1. Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: **quis vēnit?** *who came?* **quī homō vēnit?** *what man came?* **ubi est?** *where is he?*

2. Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually introduced by an interrogative particle. In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of the words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. When the question asks for information without hinting whether the answer will be *yes* or *no,* the enclitic **-ne** is suffixed to the word about which the question centers, and that word is placed first. Example: **videtne hominem?** *does he* SEE *the man?* **hominemne videt?** *does he see the* MAN?

b. When the form of the question hints that the answer *yes* is expected, **nōnne** is used as the first word; i. e., to hint the answer *yes*, both Latin and English insert a negative. Example: **nōnne hominem videt?** *doesn't he see the man?*

c. When the form of the question hints that the answer *no* is expected, **num** is used as the first word. Example: **num hominem videt?** *he does not see the man, does he?* Notice that in translating a **num**-question into English, a negative statement is followed by the question.

d. Latin has no words corresponding exactly to *yes* or *no*. Replies are made by repeating the verb as a statement, or **ita, sānē,** etc., may be used for *yes* and **minimē, nōn,** etc., for *no*.

DRILL EXERCISES

596. 1. Decline **quis, ipse, suī, nāvis.** 2. Give all the infinitives of **repellō,** with meanings. 3. Give memoranda of **cōnātus, ratis, tēlum.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

597. 1. Licetne nōbīs sequī? 2. Nōnne puerōs laudāre oportet? 3. Num hoc flūmen noctū trānsīre erit facile? 4. Quid Caesarī ēnūntiātum erat? 5. Num fīnēs Helvētiōrum longē ā Gallōrum fīnibus aberant? 6. Mīlitēs Caesaris praesidia ostendērunt quae erant disposita. 7. Num nāvēs iūnctās et ratēs repellere dēsistēs? 8. Nōnne concursus complūrium mīlitum opere mūnītiōnis hostēs prohibēbit?

598. 1. What raft is this? 2. What fortification is that? 3. Whose missiles are these? 4. Will you cease to harm me? 5. Diviciacus was not friendly to the Helvetians, was he? 6. Were you driven back at night by the enemy's charge? 7. Will you be greatly disappointed?

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

599. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters VI, VII, and VIII, and then translate those chapters.

600. Memory Work.

a. Of the verbs **volō, nōlō, mālō** (§560), give the conjugation in the present indicative, and the synopsis complete in the third person plural.

b. Decline **ego, tū** (§552), **plūs** (§576).

Compare the irregular adjectives of §§573–575 and give meanings.

c. Compare the irregular adverbs of §589 and give meanings.

601. Latin-English Vocabulary.

Give the memoranda of the nouns; the entire nominative and comparison of the adjectives; the principal parts of the verbs; and the meanings of all the words.

adventus	**imperō**	**omnīnō**	**sī**
auxilium	**iniūria**	**ostendō**	**sine**
bonus	**intercēdō**	**pācō**	**singulī**
castellum	**invītus**	**pellō**	**studeō**
certus	**iugum**	**perdūcō**	**sub**
complūrēs	**iungō**	**perveniō**	**subsidium**
concēdō	**lēgātus**	**praeficiō**	**sūmō**
concursus	**maleficium**	**praesidium**	**tamen**
conveniō	**multō**	**prīnceps**	**tēlum**
dēiciō	**mūnītiō**	**putō**	**temperō**
dēsistō	**noceō**	**quā**	**ūllus**
dum	**nōlō**	**quis**	**ulterior**

expedītus	**nōndum**	**ratis**	**sēdecim**
exterus	**nōnnūllus**	**repellō**	**vadum**
facultās	**novem**	**respondeō**	**vel**
fluō	**nūllus**	**revertor**	**vel—vel**
fossa	**nūntiō**	**rīpa**	**vix**
impedīmentum	**occīdō**	**rogō**	**volō**
			voluntās

602. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

aid	either—or	missile	show
ambassador	farther	much (adv.)	sixteen
answer	first	nevertheless	some
any	flow	nine	subdue
approach (noun)	ford	no (adj.)	take
arrival	fort	not yet	think
arrive	fortification	one by one	throw down
assemble	garrison	opportunity	under
bank	good	or	unhampered
cease	grant	outside	unwilling
certain	harm (noun)	place in command	(be) unwilling
charge	harm (verb)	prefer	weapon
come together	hasten	protection	where
command	hindrance	raft	while
construct	if	refrain	(be) willing
depth	in all	reply	willingness
desire (verb)	injure	report	wish
ditch	intervene	reserve	without
drive	join	return (verb)	wrong
drive back	kill	several	yoke

603. Forms.

Name the possessive pronouns and give their meanings. How are adjectives in **-er** compared? the six in **-lis**? How are adverbs formed from first-and-second declension adjectives? How from third declension adjectives? Illustrate.

604. Syntax.

Give rule for the *subject of infinitives;* for the *dative with intransitive verbs;* for the *dative with compound verbs;* for the *dative of purpose;* for the *dative with adjectives.* Tell how each of the three classes of *yes*-or-*no* questions is introduced. How are other questions introduced?

605. Composition.

Make up a short English sentence as an example of each of the constructions mentioned in §604, and then translate those sentences into Latin.

LESSON LXX

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

606. **TEXT**

Relinquēbātur ūna[1] per Sēquanōs via. Helvētiī hāc viā, Sēquanīs invītīs,[2] propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Sēquanīs suā sponte[4] persuādēre nōn poterant. Quā dē causā lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt ut[5] ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīge dēprecātōre, sē impetrāre posse spērant.

Relinquēbātur ūna[1] per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs[2] propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum[3] suā sponte[4] persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut[5] eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. (148–152, Ch. 9.)

NOTES

1. **ūna via:** *only the way.*
2. **Sēquanīs invītīs:** compare this with **sē invītō,** §588.
3. **cum nōn possent:** *since they could not.*
4. See §313.
5. **ut . . . impetrārent:** *that they might obtain their request.*

607. VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum, f. [**angustus,** *narrow*], *narrowness, narrows; narrow pass.*

dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, m., *intercessor, advocate;* **eō dēprecātōre,** ablative absolute, literally, *he* (*being*) *intercessor,* i. e., *with him as intercessor.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obtain one's request.*

re-linquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave* (*behind*).

sponte, ablative of a defective noun, meaning *free will;* **suā sponte,** *by their own influence.*

via, -ae, f., *way.*

What are the meanings of the expressions *via Chicago; spontaneous combustion?*

608. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Models

1. **Helvētiī eōs suīs fīnibus prohibent,** *the Helvetians keep them from their territory.*
2. **Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dīvidit,** *the Garonne separates the Gauls from the Aquitanians.*

Notes. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question "From whom?" or "From what?" and is employed with verbs (and adjectives) meaning *keep out, deprive, free, be without, need,* and the like.

b. When a Latin verb compounded with **ab, dē,** or **ex** is used, the preposition is generally used also with the ablative.

c. The ablative of *place from which* is simply a subdivision of the ablative of *separation.* Note the similarity in construction and the difference in meaning between the two constructions. See §468.

609. ***RULE. Separation is expressed by the ablative, with or without* ab, dē, *or ex.***

610. **ABLATIVE OF CAUSE**

MODELS

1. **Spē rēgnī hoc fēcit,** *he did this because of a hope of royal power.*
2. **Virtūte suā erat nōbilis,** *he was noted for (on account of) his bravery.*

NOTES. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question, "Why?" "For what reason?" "On account of what?"

b. It may be translated by—

on-account-of; as in the sentence, "He succeeded on account of his wealth;"

because-of; as in the sentence, "He succeeded because of his wealth;"

from; as in the sentence, "He died from starvation;"

with; as in the sentence, "He was crazed with trouble;"

for; as in the sentence, "He was noted for his courage."

c. Cause may also be expressed by the accusative with **ob** or **propter.**

611. ***RULE. Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.***

DRILL EXERCISES

612. 1. Compare **bonus, malus, magnus, parvus, multus.** 2. Decline the comparatives of **parvus** and **multus.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

613. 1. Plūrēs hominēs; plūs virtūtis. 2. Maiōre tēlō; ab optimīs hominibus; plūrimīs annīs. 3. Virtūte suā Belgae

nōbilissimī omnium Gallōrum fuerant. 4. Ad hoc oppidum Helvētiī ex suā prōvinciā faciliōre viā venient. 5. Angustiae viae sunt tantae ut Helvētiī suā sponte trānsīre nōn possint. 6. Eī hominēs, quī domī relinquuntur, hostēs prohibēre nōn poterunt. 7. Aquītānia ab Hispāniā altissimīs montibus erat dīvīsa ut adventus mercātōrum esset difficilis.

614. 1. We were left at Rome on the same day. 2. Do you wish to obtain-your-request? 3. Because-of our customs, we are larger and braver. 4. Of our own free will, we shall start out from this village. 5. For his bravery, control has been given to him by the Helvetians. 6. This way is less easy on-account-of its narrowness.

LESSON LXXI

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

ABLATIVE OF MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

615. **TEXT**

Dumnorīx[1] grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus[2] studēbat. Quam plūrimās[3] cīvitātēs suō beneficiō obstringere volēbat.

Dumnorīx[1] grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus[2] studēbat et quam plūrimās[3] cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās[4] volēbat. (152–157, Ch. 9.)

NOTES

1. See Chap. III. This is the Dumnorix who had conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed, he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

2. See §529.

3. **quam plūrimās:** *the most possible.*

4. **quam . . . obstrictās:** *to have the most possible states bound by his kindness.*

616. VOCABULARY

beneficium, -ī, n. [**bene,** *well,* **faciō,** *do*], *kindness; kind deed.*
grātia, -ae, f., *favor, popularity.*
largītiō, largītiōnis, f., *free giving.*
novus, -a, -um, no comparative, superlative **novissimus,** *new;* **novae res,** literally, *new things;* regularly, *change, revolution.*
ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind.*
quam, coördinate conjunction, *than.*

What are meanings of *beneficial, benevolent?*

617. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

MODEL

Helvetiī erant fortiōres { **quam Rōmānī,** / **Rōmānīs,** } *the Helvetians were braver than the Romans.*

NOTES. *a.* When two persons or things are compared, both nouns are in the same case if **quam** is used.

b. **Quam** may be omitted only when the first of the two nouns is either nominative or accusative.

c. If **quam** is omitted, the second noun is in the ablative.

d. After the comparative **plūs, minus, amplius** and **longius, quam** is usually omitted without the ablative being used.

618. ***RULE. A comparative without* quam *is followed by the ablative.***

619. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE (OR DEGREE) OF DIFFERENCE

MODEL

Hoc flūmen est lātius tribus pedibus, *this river is (wider by three feet) three feet wider.*

NOTES. *a.* This ablative answers the question, "How much?" and is used with comparatives and words implying comparison.

b. The English translation of this ablative requires no preposition.

620. ***RULE. The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives to express the measure (or degree) of difference.***

DRILL EXERCISES

621. 1. Decline **vir, vīs.** 2. Conjugate **volō** in present indicative and give synopsis in first person plural.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

622. 1. Mūnītiōnī novae praeficī; auxiliō esse tibi. 2. Nāvēs erant maiōrēs ratibus. 3. Dumnorīx plēbī acceptior erat Dīviciācō. 4. Exercitus Helvētiōrum erit maior quam Caesaris. 5. Haec via erat multīs pedibus lātior ut hostēs fīnibus nostrīs facillimē prohibēre nōn possēmus. 6. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum sunt angustiōrēs multīs mīlibus passuum quam reliquōrum Gallōrum. 7. Sēquanī beneficiīs Dumnorīgis studēbant quod eius grātia erat maior.

(Express the following sentences in two ways where possible.)

623. 1. The Germans were larger than the Romans. 2. We had a narrower territory than the others. 3. They fought more bravely than the other soldiers. 4. Was not Dumnorix's popularity greater than his brother's?

5. Because-of his popularity and kindness, Dumnorix was more powerful than his brother. 6. Had he desired peace more than a revolution?

LESSON LXXII

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

624. TEXT

Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur.[1] Obsidēs[2] utī inter[3] sēsē dent[1] perficit. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī obsidēs dant ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur,[1] obsidēsque[2] utī inter[3] sē dent[1] perficit: Sēquanī,[4] nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant;[5] Helvētiī,[4] ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.[5] (157–160, Ch. 9.)

NOTES

1. **ut . . . patiantur** and **utī . . . dent**: objects of **impetrat** and **perficit** respectively; see §423, 2.

2. Object of **dent**.

3. **inter sē dent**: (*give among themselves*), *exchange*.

4. **Sēquanī** and **Helvētiī**: subjects of **obsidēs dent** (understood).

5. **nē . . . prohibeant** and **ut . . . trānseant**: clauses of purpose depending on **obsidēs dent** (understood).

625. VOCABULARY

itaque, conjunction and adverb, *and so, therefore*.

obses, obsidis, m. or f., *hostage*, a person given by one party to another as security for an agreement. For pronunciation see §6.

626. ABLATIVE OF MANNER

Models

1. **Cum virtūte bellum gerunt,** *they wage war with bravery* (or *bravely*).
2. **Magnā (cum) virtūte bellum gerunt,** *they wage war with great bravery* (or *very bravely*).

Notes. *a.* Contrast this use of the English preposition *with* and those employed with other ablatives.

b. This use of the ablative answers the question "How?"

c. This ablative must have **cum** or an adjective, and may have both. When both the adjective and **cum** are used, the **cum** is generally placed between the adjective and the noun.

d. This ablative sometimes answers the question "Under what circumstances?" When so used, it may be called the *ablative of attendant circumstance.*

e. Manner may be expressed in Latin by an adverb as in English.

627. ***RULE. Manner is expressed by the ablative with either* cum *or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.***

DRILL EXERCISES

628. 1. Give memoranda of **obses, beneficium, nox, pēs.** 2. Give all infinitives and participles of **iungō,** with meanings. 3. Decline **nova rēs.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

629. 1. Plūra beneficia; maximum numerum obsidum. 2. Voluistīne plūrimum posse? 3. Oppidum maximā vī oppugnāre voluit in quō erat magna cōpia frūmentī. 4. Magnō dolōre revertērunt quod oppidum capere nōn potuerant. 5. Itaque Genavam vēnērunt et magnā fortitūdine hostēs reppulērunt. 6. Haec cīvitās erat multō parātior ad proficīscendum quam reliquae.

630. 1. The nearer river; the fort nearer the river. 2. The farthest hill; with greater bravery. 3. Rome is a larger city than Geneva. 4. Caesar had more hostages than the others. 5. And so with great grief he allows them to return. 6. The enemy tried very courageously to keep them out of the town. 7. These men who were not friendly often fought bravely.

LESSON LXXIII

CONJUGATION OF *FĪŌ*

ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENT VERBS

631. **TEXT**

Helvētiīs est[2] in animō[3] per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere. Id Caesarī nūntiātur. Santonēs nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt. Haec cīvitās est in prōvinciā.

Caesarī nūntiātur[1] Helvētiīs esse[2] in animō[3] per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās[4] est in prōvinciā. (161–164, Ch. 10.)

NOTES

1. **nuntiātur:** the subject is **Helvētiīs . . . facere.**
2. **esse (est):** the subject is **per . . . facere.**
3. **esse in animō:** compare §558, Note 2.
4. **quae cīvitās:** (*which state*), *a state which.*

632. VOCABULARY

fīō, fierī, factus sum [passive of **faciō**], *be made, be done; happen.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *obtain control, gain.*
Santonēs, Santonum (**Santonī, Santonōrum**), m., *the Santones*, a tribe living on the northern bank of the Garonne, in southwestern Gaul.
Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, m., *the Tolosates*, a tribe in southwestern Gaul, near modern Toulouse.

633. CONJUGATION OF *FĪŌ*

Fīō is the irregular passive of **faciō**, *make, do*. Note the **ī** before all vowels except **e** in the combination **-er**.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made, be done; happen, become.*

	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit fīmus, fītis, fīunt	fīam
Imp.	fīēbam	fierem
Fut.	fīam	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
Fut. Perf.	factus erō	

	INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES
Pres.	fierī	*Perf.*	factus
Perf.	factus esse		(GERUNDIVE)
Fut.	factum īrī	*Fut.*	faciendus

634. ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENT VERBS

MODELS

1. **Frūmentō ūtor,** *I am using the grain.*
2. **Imperiō potiēmur,** *we shall obtain control.*

NOTE. The ablatives in the above sentences are translated by direct objects.

635. ***RULE.*** **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, *and* vēscor, *and their compounds, govern an ablative which is translated by a direct object.***

DRILL EXERCISES

636. Give all infinitives and participles of **ūtor, potior, faciō,** with meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

637. 1. Hoc opus fīet; haec itinera fīunt. 2. Maior pōns fit; illō frūmentō ūtī iubēbiminī. 3. Omnī frūmentō, quod in oppidīs est, ūtēmur in itinere. 4. Multōs mēnsēs Orgetorīx rēgnō potīrī summā vī cōnātus est. 5. Multae rēs ā Caesare fīent nē prōvincia hōs hominēs fīnitimōs habeat. 6. Nōnne nūntiātum est Helvētiōs angustiōrēs fīnēs quam aliās cīvitātēs habēre?

638. 1. What has happened? 2. Where do you wish this to be done? 3. Will this building be made much larger than that? 4. They very often obtained-control-of towns by means of battles. 5. They are using the same armies that were in Gaul. 6. Where is the bridge that is being made by Caesar? 7. When (at what time) will these matters (**rēs**) be reported to Caesar?

LESSON LXXIV

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

639. TEXT

Id[1] sī fīet, prōvincia Rōmāna hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs[5] patentibus fīnitimōs[6] habēbit. Haec loca sunt maximē frūmentāria. Id magnō cum perīculō[3]

prōvinciae futūrum esse intellegēbat.[2] Ob eās causās T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat.

Id[1] sī fieret, intellegēbat[2] magnō cum perīculō[3] prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs[4] bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs[5] patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs[6] habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit. (164–169, Ch. 10.)

NOTES

1. Refers to **iter . . . facere** in §631.

2. **intellegēbat . . . futūrum (esse)**: *he realized that it would be (attended) with great danger (of) to the province.* The subject of **futūrum (esse)** is the clause **ut . . . habēret.**

3. **magnō cum perīculō**: see §626, Note *d.*

4. **hominēs**: object of **habēret**, of which **prōvincia** (understood) is subject.

5. Dative, modifying the adjective **fīnitimōs.**

6. *adjacent.* It modifies **hominēs.**

640. VOCABULARY

bellicōsus, -a, -um [**bellum**, *war*], literally, *full of war; warlike.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum**, *grain*], literally, *pertaining to grain; productive (of grain).*

intel-legō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum [**inter**, *among*, **legō**, *choose*], *understand, realize.*

Labiēnus, -ī, m., (*Titus*) *Labienus*, Caesar's favorite officer.

pateō, patēre, patuī, ———, *be open, be exposed.* Present participle used as an adj., *open, exposed.*

Titus, -ī, m. [abbr. **T.**], *Titus*, a Roman "first-name" (**prae-nōmen**).

641. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

MODEL

Cum Caesare profectī sunt, *they started out with Caesar.*

NOTES. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question "In company with whom?" and always denotes persons (singly or in bodies).

b. In military expressions **cum** is sometimes omitted.

c. Distinguish this meaning of the preposition *with* from those used in such sentences as: *He was crazed with (because of) grief. They carry grain with (by means of) carts.*

642. *RULE.* ***Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with* cum.**

DRILL EXERCISES

643. 1. Decline the Latin for *the nearer road; the large place.* 2. Compare **magnus** and **maximē.** 3. Give synopsis of **intellegō** in second person singular.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

644. 1. Mīlitibus imperāre; lēgātum exercituī praeficere. 2. Mea cupiditās bellī; erit Rōmae. 3. Possuntne haec loca fierī maximē frūmentāria? 4. Nōnne intellegitis Helvētiōs cum prīncipibus suīs Nōrēiam iter facere? 5. Lēgātiōnēs duārum cīvitātum cum multīs hominibus Genavam iter faciunt. 6. Multī dolōre afficiuntur quod cum hostibus contendere nōn possunt.

645. 1. He goes with his friend. 2. He was killed with a missile. 3. He starts out with great courage. 4. They asked whom he had placed in command of the army. 5. He did not know whom they had sent home with Labienus. 6. This province was so productive that the soldiers were not able to use all the grain.

LESSON LXXV

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

646. TEXT

Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus[1] contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit. Trēs legiōnēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit. Proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat. Hōc itinere cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere[4] exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.

Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus[1] contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs,[2] quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā[3] proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere[4] exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. (169–175, Ch. 10.)

NOTES

1. **magnīs itineribus:** see §627.
2. Supply **legiōnēs.**
3. **quā proximum iter . . . erat:** *where* (*there*) *was the shortest road.*
4. See §609.

647. VOCABULARY

Alpēs, Alpium, f., *the Alps,* a term applied by the Romans to all the mountains in the vicinity of modern Switzerland.

Aquilēia, -ae, f., *Aquileia,* a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

Caturīgēs, Caturīgum, m., *the Caturiges,* an Alpine tribe.

Ceutronēs, Ceutronum, m., *the Ceutrones,* an Alpine tribe.

circum, preposition with acc., *around, about.*
cōn-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, literally, *write together; enroll.*
ē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out.*
Grāiocelī, -ōrum, m., *the Graioceli*, a Gallic tribe living in the Graian Alps.
hībernus, -a, -um, adjective, *winter.* Neuter plural used as a substantive (with **castra** understood), literally, *winter-camp*, i. e., *winter-quarters.*
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *winter, pass the winter.*
ibi, adverb, *there, in that place.*
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
quīnque, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *five.*
superus, -a, -um (for comparison see §574), *high.*

Mention English words derived from **circum, hībernus, quīnque, superus.**

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

648. MODELS

1. **Hominēs** { **inimīcō animō** / **inimīcī animī** } **mittentur**, *men of unfriendly disposition will be sent.*

2. **Flūminis altitūdo erat trium pedum**, *the river's depth was (of) three feet.*

NOTES. *a.* This ablative (or genitive) describes a noun and hence is an adjective phrase. Most other uses of the ablative are adverbial.

b. This ablative (or genitive) is always modified by an adjective or an equivalent genitive.

c. When a definite number is given, the genitive is always used and is then called the *genitive of measure.*

d. The descriptive genitive is often used predicatively, as in Model 2.

649. ***RULE. The ablative or genitive, modified by an adjective, describes a person or thing by naming some quality.***

DRILL EXERCISES

650. 1. Decline **ipse, suī, duo, trēs.** 2. Conjugate **eō** in the present indicative and give synopsis in third person plural.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

651. 1. Circum Genavam sunt multī montēs magnā altitūdine. 2. Exercitus erat Caesaris. 3. Exercitus eius erat magnae virtūtis. 4. Caesar ipse erat magnā auctōritāte. 5. Iter duōrum mīlium passuum facere coāctī sunt. 6. Allobrogēs, populus bonō animō, ibi incolunt. 7. Hī quīnque mīlitēs ex hībernīs ēdūcentur quod nōn sunt summā fortitūdine.

652. 1. A river of great width; a province of many mountains. 2. He will use the winter-quarters which are being made there. 3. With these lieutenants, I shall lead out an army of great bravery. 4. Within one year we prepared five months' grain. 5. They crossed two rivers with very high banks. 6. Garrisons were placed-at-intervals about the town.

LESSON LXXVI

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

653. TEXT

Hae gentēs complūribus proeliīs sunt pulsae. Ocelum est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum oppidum. Vocontiī sunt ulteriōris prōvinciae. Ab Ocelō[3] Caesar in fīnēs[4] Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervenit. Inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab

Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs[4] exercitum dūcit. Segusiāvī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Complūribus hīs[1] proeliīs[2] pulsīs, ab Ocelō,[3] quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs,[4] ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs[4] exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. (175–180, Ch. 10.)

NOTES

1. **hīs . . . pulsīs:** ablative absolute.
2. **complūribus . . . proeliīs:** ablative of means modifying **pulsīs.**
3. **ab Ocelō:** **ab,** with names of towns, means *from the neighborhood of.*
4. **in fīnēs:** *into the country;* **in Segusiāvōs:** *among the Segusiavi.*

Look at the map (p. 204) and notice the junction of the Rhone and Saône. Caesar probably encamped just there, and Labienus must have brought the rest of the army to the same point. Caesar had been absent some time in Italy, and in the next chapter it will be learned that the Helvetians had meanwhile gone through the pass and were somewhere to the north.

654. VOCABULARY

citerior, citerius, comparative adjective (for comparison see §575), *nearer;* with **prōvincia,** it refers to the province of Cisalpine Gaul, the part of Italy north of the Po.

extrā, preposition with acc., *outside.*

gēns, gentis, f., *race, tribe.*

inde, adverb, *thence, from that place.*

Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum,* a town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., *the Segusiavi,* a tribe of Gauls to the south of the Aeduans.

septimus, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective, *seventh.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii,* a tribe living in the Roman province of farther Gaul.

655. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

MODELS

1. **Gallī virtūte praestābant,** *the Gauls excelled in bravery.*
2. **Oppida, numerō duodecim, habent,** *they have towns, twelve in number.*

NOTES. *a.* This use of the ablative answers the question, "In what respect?" or "In respect to what?"

b. It may modify a verb (like other ablatives), an adjective, or sometimes a noun.

c. The English *in* is translated into Latin only when it denotes *place,* not when it denotes *time* or *specification.*

656. ***RULE. The ablative, without a preposition, is used to denote that in respect to which a statement is true.***

DRILL EXERCISES

657. 1. Compare **citerior, ulterior, prīmus.** 2. Decline **citerior.** 3. Give all the infinitives and participles of **pellō,** with meanings.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

658. 1. Mōns erat magnus altitūdine. 2. Mōns erat magnā altitūdine. 3. Num mīlitēs legiōnis septimae reliquōs virtūte praecēdunt? 4. Facile erit citeriōrem Galliam occupāre quod omnibus fortitūdine praestāmus. 5. Prīvāta eōrum aedificia erant multa numerō. 6. Inde in oppidum prīmum trāns flūmen ībimus.

659. 1. Caesar's soldiers were very keen in battle. 2. We surpass our neighbors of the nearer towns in number of soldiers. 3. These men are powerful in arms. 4. In

this respect (**rēs**), our first attempt will be very easy. 5. That river is great in length, not in width. 6. Thence we shall come with you to Ocelum on the seventh day of the next month.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

660. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters IX and X, and then translate those chapters.

661. Latin-English Vocabulary.

Give the memoranda of the nouns; the entire nominative and comparison of the adjectives; the principal parts of the verbs; and the meanings of all the words.

angustiae	**hīberna**	**itaque**	**quīnque**
beneficium	**hiems**	**nūntiō**	**relinquō**
circum	**ibi**	**novus**	**septimus**
citerior	**impetrō**	**obses**	**sponte**
ēdūcō	**inde**	**pateō**	**superus**
frūmentārius	**intellegō**	**prīmus**	**via**
grātia			

662. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

about	hostage	nearer	report (verb)
and so	in that place	new	seventh
favor	kindness	obtain one's request	thence
first	know	(be) open	there
five	lead out	popularity	therefore
free will	leave	productive	way
from that place	narrows	realize	winter (verb)
high			winter-quarters

663. Syntax.

Give the rules for the following constructions:

separation	*with certain deponents*
cause	*accompaniment*
comparison	*description*
measure of difference	*specification*
manner	

664. Form a short English sentence as an example of each of the constructions named under §663, and then translate those sentences into Latin.

LESSON LXXVII

IMPERATIVE MOOD COMMANDS

665. TEXT

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās[1] cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque[1] agrōs populābantur.[2] Aeduī sē suaque[3] ab Helvētiīs dēfendere nōn poterant. Itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt quī auxilium rogārent.

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās[1] cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque[1] agrōs populābantur.[2] Aeduī, cum sē suaque[3] ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum[4] auxilium. (181–185, Ch. 11.)

NOTES

1. Refers to whom?

2. **trādūxerant . . . pervēnerant . . . populābantur:** note the change of tenses.

3. *and their property.*

4. **rogātum auxilium:** *to ask aid;* **rogātum** is a supine.

666. VOCABULARY

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, literally, *ward off from;* usually, *defend.*
populor, populārī, populātus sum, *ravage.*
trā-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead . . . across.*

667. IMPERATIVE MOOD

The imperative mood has only two tenses, the present and the future. In the present only the second person is found, and in the future only the second and third. The future is rarely used.

668. FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

Present

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2nd Pers.	laudā, *praise*	laudāte, *praise*

Future

2nd Pers.	laudātō, *you shall praise*	laudātōte, *you shall praise*
3rd Pers.	laudātō, *he shall praise*	laudantō, *they shall praise*

PASSIVE

Present

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2nd Pers.	laudāre, *be praised*	laudāminī, *be praised*

Future

2nd Pers.	laudātor, *you shall be praised*	———
3rd Pers.	laudātor, *he shall be praised*	laudantor, *they shall be praised*

669. PRESENT IMPERATIVES SECOND PERSON

Active			Passive		
SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL	
laudā	laudāte	*praise*	laudāre	laudāminī	*be praised*
monē	monēte	*advise*	monēre	monēminī	*be advised*
dūc*	dūcite	*lead*	dūcere	dūciminī	*be led*
audī	audīte	*hear*	audīre	audīminī	*be heard*
cape	capite	*take*	capere	capiminī	*be taken*
es	este	*be*			
ī	īte	*go*			
nōlī	nōlīte	*be unwilling*			

*dīcō, dūcō, faciō, ferō have dīc, dūc, fac, fer for present active singular imperative, instead of the regular forms which end in -e.

EXERCISES

670. 1. Vidē. 2. Exīstimāte. 3. Fac. 4. Este. 5. Pellite. 6. Dēfende. 7. Comparāminī. 8. Arbitrāminī. 9. Commūnī. 10. Patere.

(Give both singular and plural.)

671. 1. Start out. 2. Say. 3. Come. 4. Hold. 5. Receive. 6. Try. 7. Send. 8. Follow. 9. Use. 10. Cross.

COMMANDS

672. MODELS

1. (*a*) **Laudēmus,** *let us praise.*
   (*b*) **Nē laudēmus,** *let us not praise.*
2. (*a*) **Laudā,** *praise.*
   (*b*) **Nōlī laudāre,** *be unwilling to praise, don't praise.*
3. (*a*) **Laudet,** *let him praise.*
   (*b*) **Nē laudet,** *let him not praise.*

NOTES. *a.* A command in the first person is called an *exhortation* or a *hortatory subjunctive.*

b. **Nē** or **nōn** with the imperative is not used in prose to express a command.

c. A command in the third person is called a *jussive subjunctive.*

673. *RULES.* (1) ***A command in the first person is expressed by the first person plural of the present subjunctive, the negative being* nē.**

(2) ***A positive command in the second person is expressed by the present imperative. The negative is usually expressed by* nōlī *or* nōlite *with the present infinitive.***

(3) ***A command in the third person is expressed by the present subjunctive, the negative being* nē.**

674. SUMMARY OF COMMANDS

	Affirmative	Negative
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1st Pers.	(is not found)	(is not found)
2nd Pers.	**laudā,** *praise*	**nōlī laudāre,** *don't praise*
3rd Pers.	**laudet,** *let him praise*	**nē laudet,** *let him not praise*
	PLURAL	PLURAL
1st Pers.	**laudēmus,** *let us praise*	**nē laudēmus,** *let us not praise*
2nd Pers.	**laudāte,** *praise*	**nōlīte laudāre,** *don't praise*
3rd Pers.	**laudent,** *let them praise*	**nē laudent,** *let them not praise*

DRILL EXERCISES

675. Give all the present imperatives of **dō, mūniō, sequor, iubeō, dēligō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

676. 1. Exercitum ēdūcat. 2. Nē hīberna dēfendāmus. 3. Nōlīte agrōs nostrōs populārī. 4. Mihi obsidēs dent. 5. Orgetorīx ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēligātur. 6. Nōlī Caesarī ēnūntiāre quid lēgātī dīcant. 7. Dīxit sē suīs auxilium dare nōn posse. 8. Helvētiī per fīnēs Sēquanōrum cōpiās suās trādūcent ut Aeduōrum agrōs populentur.

677. 1. Let us come. 2. Let them go. 3. Don't start out. 4. Let us not follow. 5. Let them all defend their homes and children. 6. Don't come into Gaul without a large army. 7. Let him lead his army across that river. 8. Let us not fear that the enemy will ravage the province.

LESSON LXXVIII

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

678. TEXT

"Ita nōs," inquiunt, "omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut agrī nostrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint.[5] Paene in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmānī, līberī nostrī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida nostra expugnārī nōn dēbuērunt." Ambarrī erant necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum. Helvētiī agrōs Ambarrōrum dēpopulātī sunt. Ambarrī Caesarī, "Nōn facile," inquiunt, "ab oppidīs nostrīs vim hostium prohibēmus."

Ita sē[1] omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī[2] agrī[3] vāstārī,[4] līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.[5] Eōdem

tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem[6] faciunt[7] sēsē[8] dēpopulātīs[9] agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. (185–191, Ch. 11.)

NOTES

1. **sē . . . meritōs esse:** the indirect discourse depends on the idea of saying implied in the previous words. In translating supply the words, *"saying that."*

2. Modifies **exercitūs.**

3. **agrī, līberī, oppida:** subjects of **dēbuerint.**

4. **vāstārī, abdūcī, expugnārī:** infinitives complementary to **dēbuerint.**

5. The perfect tense is sometimes used in a result clause depending on a secondary tense, though this is an exception to the rule for sequence of tenses. See §371. Note the difference between the Latin and the English idiom. The present infinitive and the perfect tense of **dēbeō** are here to be translated: *ought not to have been laid waste,* etc.

6. Predicate adjective agreeing with **Caesarem.**

7. **certiōrem faciunt:** equivalent to a verb of *saying.*

8. Subject of **prohibēre;** translate this by the progressive form.

9. **dēpopulātīs:** passive in meaning though the verb **dēpopulor** is deponent.

679. VOCABULARY

ab-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry away.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., *the Ambarri,* dependents of the Aeduans, southeast of them, near the Saône.

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, literally, *of common blood,* i. e., *related.* Masculine as substantive, *kinsman.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight.*

dē-populor, -populārī, -populātus sum, *ravage* (completely).

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *fight out;* regularly, *take* (*by storm*).

līberī, -ōrum, m., (free) *children.*

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, *deserve.*

necessārius, -a, -um, literally, *necessary.* Masculine plural as substantive, *close friends.*

paene, adverb, *almost.*
servitūs, servitūtis, f., *slavery.*
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste.*

What are the meanings of *consanguinity, depopulate, meritorious, devastate?*

680. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Both the gerund and the gerundive may be formed from the present participle by dropping the **s** and adding **-dī** for the genitive of the gerund and **-dus** for the masculine singular nominative of the gerundive, shortening the vowel before the ending.

681. GERUNDS

	FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
Gen.	**laudandī**, *of praising*	**monendī**, *of warning*	**dūcendī**, *of leading*
Dat.	**laudandō**, *for praising*	**monendō**, *for warning*	**dūcendō**, *for leading*
Acc.	**laudandum**, *praising*	**monendum**, *warning*	**dūcendum**, *leading*
Abl.	**laudandō**, *by, in praising*	**monendō**, *by, in warning*	**dūcendō**, *by, in leading*

	FOURTH CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION IN **-iō**
Gen.	**audiendī**, *of hearing*	**capiendī**, *of taking*
Dat.	**audiendō**, *for hearing*	**capiendō**, *for taking*
Acc.	**audiendum**, *hearing*	**capiendum**, *taking*
Abl.	**audiendō**, *by, in hearing*	**capiendō**, *by, in taking*

682. GERUNDIVES

The gerundives are the same in form and meaning as the future passive participles. See §388.

First Conj.	**laudandus, -a, -um;**	*to-be-praised*
Second Conj.	**monendus, -a, -um;**	*to-be-warned*
Third Conj.	**dūcendus, -a, -um;**	*to-be-led*
Fourth Conj.	**audiendus, -a, -um;**	*to-be-heard*
Third Conj. in **-iō**	**capiendus, -a, -um;**	*to-be-taken*

683.

The Gerund	The Gerundive
is active	is passive.
is a neuter verbal *noun.*	is a verbal *adjective.*
is used like any other noun.	always agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case.
has only four forms.	has all the forms of any regular adjective.

684. In the following sentences, illustrating the uses of the gerund, notice:

1. That the infinitive is used in place of the nominative of the gerund and also of the accusative (except as object of a preposition).
2. That, with an intransitive verb, the gerund is used like the English verbal noun in *-ing.*

Nom. **proficīscī erat difficile,** *starting out was difficult; it was difficult to start out.*

Gen. **proficīscendī causā frūmentum comparāvērunt;** *they prepared grain for the purpose of starting out.*

Dat. **diēs proficīscendō cōnstitūta est** (rare); *a day was appointed for starting out.*

Acc. **diēs ad proficīscendum cōnstitūta est;** *a day was appointed for starting out.*

proficīscī cōnātī sunt; *they tried starting out; they tried to start out.*

Abl. **eōs pugnandō superāvit;** *he conquered them by fighting.*

685. In the following sentences, comparing the gerund with the gerundive, notice that, when the English verbal noun in *-ing* is used with a direct object:

1. The gerund is not employed, except in the genitive case.
2. The English direct object, retaining its gender and number, takes the case the gerund would have had, and the gerundive is made to agree with this noun in gender, number, and case.

Gen. He came for the purpose of building a ship =
(either), Gerund: **nāvem faciendī causā* vēnit;**
(or), Gerundive: **nāvis faciendae causā* vēnit.**
(of a ship to-be-built)

Dat. He came for (the purpose of) building a ship =
Gerundive: **nāvī faciendae vēnit** (rare).
(for a ship to-be-built)

Acc. He came for (the purpose of) building a ship =
Gerundive: **ad* nāvem faciendam vēnit.**
(for a ship to-be-built)

Abl. He conquered the enemy by building ships =
Gerundive: **nāvibus faciendīs hostēs superāvit.**
(by ships to-be-built)

DRILL EXERCISES

686. Give, with meanings, all the participles of the model verbs; also, of **proficīscor, cōnor, eō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

In distinguishing the gerund from the gerundive, remember:

1. That the gerund has no endings except **-ī, -ō,** and **-um.**
2. That the gerundive always agrees in gender, number, and case with some noun.

---

* **causā** with the genitive and **ad** with the accusative express purpose.

687. 1. Spēs rēgnī obtinendī erat Orgetorīgī. 2. Mitte hominēs ad ratēs faciendās. 3. Helvētiī cupidī eius reī cōnficiendae esse dēbent. 4. Helvētiī erant cupidissimī eārum rērum cōnficiendārum. 5. Līberōs nostrōs dēfendendī facultātem merēmur. 6. Nostrōs necessāriōs cōnsanguineōsque in servitūtem abdūcendī causā hoc fēcit.

688. 1. Your children will be sent to (**ad**) see their (own) homes. 2. Their (close) friends will do those things that prepare them for (**ad**) resisting. 3. The Sequanians will make war by laying waste the territory. 4. Many kinsmen were left to (**ad**) set-fire-to the village. 5. Taking the town by storm will not be easy. 6. The army went almost out of sight by crossing the river. 7. We did not deserve slavery, did we?

LESSON LXXIX

CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH *QUOD* AND WITH *CUM*

689. **TEXT**

Allobrogēs trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant. Itaque fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt[1] et dēmōnstrant sibi[2] praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.[3] Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum esse sibi[4] statuit dum[5] omnēs fortūnae sociōrum cōnsūmerentur. Statuit etiam nōn exspectandum sibi dum[5] in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt[1] et dēmōn-

strant sibi[2] praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.[3] Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi[4] statuit dum,[5] omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent. (191–197, Ch. 11.)

NOTES

1. With **sē:** literally, *take one's self back, betake one's self, retreat, retire* (in good order).

2. Dative of possessor.

3. **sibi . . . esse reliquī:** (*that there was to them nothing of left*), *that they had nothing left.* For **reliquī**, see §491.

4. **nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi:** (*that it ought not to be waited by himself*), *that he ought not to wait.*

5. **dum** with the subjunctive means *until.*

690. VOCABULARY

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, literally, *take away altogether,* i. e., *use up, consume, destroy.*
dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *point out, show.*
ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *look out;* regularly, *wait, await.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune;* in plural, *property.*
nihil, n., indeclinable noun, *nothing.*
possessiō, possessiōnis, f., *possession.*
solum, -ī, n., *soil.*
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, literally, *station; decide.*

691. CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH *QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM*

Models

1. **Reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt quod cum fīnitimīs saepe contendunt,** *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight often with the neighbors.*
2. **Caesar mīlitēs laudāvit quod fortiter pugnāvissent,** *Caesar praised the soldiers because (as he said) they had fought bravely.*

NOTES. *a.* Of the two subordinate verbs introduced by **quod**, the first is indicative; the second, subjunctive.

b. The reason in the first is not quoted; the reason in the second is quoted.

692. *RULE.* **Quod, quia, quoniam** ***are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.***

693. **CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM***

MODEL

Hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mīsērunt, *since they were not able to persuade them, they sent ambassadors.*

NOTES. *a.* The verb of the subordinate clause, though subjunctive, is translated by an indicative.

b. The rule for sequence applies here.

694. *RULE.* **Cum,** ***meaning*** **since** ***or*** **because,** ***is used with the subjunctive.***

DRILL EXERCISES

695. 1. Decline together the Latin for *our children, the nearer province.* 2. Give the forms of the present imperative of **cōnor** and **cōnsūmō.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

696. 1. Nōlī adventum meum exspectāre. 2. Mittenturne ad fortūnās cōnsūmendās? 3. Cum cīvitās ob eās rēs incitāta esset, magistrātūs hominēs multōs ex agrīs cōgere statuērunt. 4. Cum Germānōs possessiōnibus nostrīs prohibuerīmus, tōtīus Galliae plūrimum poterimus. 5. Cum hanc fidem et iūs iūrandum dederītis, vōbīs obsidēs ostendam. 6. Cīvitāte incitātā, arma plūra comparārī oportet. 7. Vōbīs dēmōnstrābimus cūr nōs superāre nōn possītis.

697. 1. Let us start out. 2. Can't you decide who I am? 3. We are more powerful because we fight with the armies of the Germans. 4. Since all their property had been destroyed, they decided to await Caesar's approach. 5. Because a beginning of war has been made, we shall collect more men. 6. Will you show me why he praises his children?

LESSON LXXX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH *CUM*

698. **TEXT**

Flūmen[1] est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Hoc flūmen incrēdibilī lēnitāte[2] fluit ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat[3] iūdicārī nōn possit.[4] Id Helvētiī ratibus[5] ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant.

Flūmen[1] est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte[2] ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat[3] iūdicārī nōn possit.[4] Id Helvētiī ratibus[5] ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. (198–201, Ch. 12.)

NOTES

1. **flūmen est Arar:** *There is a river, the Saône.*
2. See §627.
3. See §370.
4. See §437.
5. **ratibus** and **lintribus:** ablatives of means, not absolute.

699. VOCABULARY

Arar, Araris, m., accusative **Ararim,** ablative **Ararī,** *the Saône,* a river of southern Gaul tributary to the Rhone.

in-crēdibilis, -e, literally, *unbelievable, incredible; extraordinary.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *judge.*

lēnitās, lēnitātis, f., *smoothness.*

linter, lintris, f., genitive plural **lintrium,** *small boat,* probably a "dug-out."

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

uter, utra, utrum, genitive **utrīus,** etc., interrogative adjective, *which* (of two). For declension see §283.

What English words are derived from **iūdicō, oculus?**

700. *CUM* TEMPORAL

MODELS

1. **Helvētiī contendunt cum suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,** *the Helvetians fight when they are keeping them out of their territory.*
2. **Cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est,** *when the state was trying to assert its right, Orgetorix died.*
3. **Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrāvit ab urbe proficīscī,** *when this had been reported to Caesar, he hastened to start out from the city.*

NOTES. *a.* In Model 1, the main verb is principal and **cum** is used with the indicative; in Models 2 and 3, the main verbs are historical and **cum** is used with the subjunctive.

b. The subjunctive is here translated by the indicative.

c. The rule for sequence applies here.

701. ***RULE. When the main verb is historical,* cum *temporal takes the subjunctive; otherwise the indicative is regularly used.***

DRILL EXERCISES

702. 1. Give the synopsis of **trānseō** in third person singular. 2. Decline **vīs, vir, incrēdibilis.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

703. 1. Maius oppidum; meliōrum cōnsiliōrum. 2. Duo mīlia passuum iit. 3. Ad oppidum oppugnandum eōdem diē revertit. 4. Incrēdibilis numerus mīlitum auxiliō urbī missus erat. 5. Cum Caesar ab urbe profectus esset, Genavam vēnit. 6. Cum omnia ad profectiōnem comparāta essent, ad rīpam convēnērunt. 7. Cum Caesar Rōmā vēnerit, exercitus domum contendet. 8. Helvētiī cum populum Rōmānum nōn esse amīcum iūdicārent, per Sēquanōs exiērunt.

704. 1. With extraordinary violence; with more soldiers. 2. A river of the greatest smoothness; to excel in number of men. 3. He does this when he wishes. 4. He does this because (**cum**) he wishes. 5. When they were not able to persuade the Allobroges, they compelled them by force. 6. Can you decide in what direction (**pars**) you are going? 7. When you are willing (future perfect) to send me, I shall go.

LESSON LXXXI

NUMERALS

705. TEXT

Helvētiī trēs iam partēs[2] cōpiārum id flūmen[2] trādūxerant. Quārta ferē pars citrā flūmen Ararim reliqua[3] erat. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar dē hīs rēbus certior factus est,

dē tertiā vigiliā[5] cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus est. Ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs[1] iam partēs[2] cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen[2] trādūxisse,[4] quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam[3] esse, dē tertiā vigiliā[5] cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. (201–206, Ch. 12.)

NOTES

1. **trēs . . . trādūxisse:** *that the Helvetians had already conveyed three parts* (or *fourths*) *of their troops across this river.*
2. **partēs** is object of the verb and **flūmen** is accusative governed by the preposition in the verb.
3. *left.*
4. Connect with **esse** by **et** (supplied).
5. **dē tertiā vigiliā:** *in the third watch.*

706. VOCABULARY

castra, -ōrum, n., plural only, *a* (fortified) *camp.*
citrā, preposition with acc., *on this side of.*
explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., literally, *one who finds out;* regularly, *scout.*
quārtus, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective, *fourth.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch,* one of the four equal divisions into which the Romans divided the time between sunset and sunrise.

707. NUMERALS

Numeral adjectives are of three classes:

1. *Cardinals,* answering the question *"How many?"* as: *one, two,* etc.

2. *Ordinals,* answering the question *"Which in order?"* as: *first, second,* etc.

3. *Distributives,* answering the question *"How many each?"* as: *one each, two each,* etc.

708. Learn the following:

Cardinals		Ordinals
1. **ūnus, -a, -um**	11. **ūndecim**	1st. **prīmus, -a, -um**
2. **duo, -ae, -o**	12. **duodecim**	2nd. **secundus, -a, -um**
3. **trēs, tria**	13. **tredecim**	3rd. **tertius, -a, -um**
4. **quattuor**	14. **quattuordecim**	4th. **quārtus, -a, -um**
5. **quīnque**	15. **quīndecim**	5th. **quīntus, -a, -um**
6. **sex**	16. **sēdecim**	6th. **sextus, -a, -um**
7. **septem**	17. **septendecim**	7th. **septimus, -a, -um**
8. **octō**	18. **duodēvīgintī**	8th. **octāvus, -a, -um**
9. **novem**	19. **ūndēvīgintī** (**decem novem**)	9th. **nōnus, -a, -um**
10. **decem**	20. **vīgintī**	10th. **decimus, -a, -um**
	21. **ūnus et vīgintī** (**vīgintī ūnus**)	

Distributives

1 each, **singulī, -ae, -a**
2 each, **bīnī, -ae, a**
3 each, **ternī** (**trīnī**), **-ae, -a**
4 each, **quaternī, -ae, -a**
5 each, **quīnī, -ae, -a**
6 each, **sēnī, -ae, -a**

Notes. *a.* Study (App. 47) the formation of the multiples of *ten* and of *a hundred.* Notice that the multiples of *ten* above *twenty* end in **-intā**, and the *hundreds* above *one hundred* end in **-entī, -ae, -a.**

b. Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo, trēs,** all the *hundreds* (except **centum**) and **mīlia** (plural of **mīlle**) are declinable. See §§96, 106, 284, 505. The *hundreds* are declined like the plural of **longus.**

c. Notice that **mīlle** in the singular is indeclinable, has two **l's,** and is usually an adjective, as: **mīlle passūs,** *a thousand paces.* In the plural, **mīlia** is declinable, has one l (usually), and is a noun, as: **duo mīlia passuum,** *two thousands of paces.*

d. The ordinals are declined like **longus;** the distributives like the plural of **longus.**

DRILL EXERCISES

709. Decline together **maior pars; omnis cīvitās; pater noster.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

710. 1. Duōbus bellīs. 2. Decem flūmina. 3. Ab quīnque mercātōribus. 4. Tertiā vigiliā. 5. Bīnae nāvēs. 6. Centum partium. 7. Quārtō diē. 8. Septuāgintā hominēs. 9. Septingentī hominēs. 10. Cum ternīs mīlitibus. 11. Aeduī iūdicāre nōn poterant quās cōpiās Helvētiī flūmen trādūxissent. 12. Duōs explōrātōrēs mīsit quī locum castrīs dēligerent. 13. Dīviciācus Caesarī resistere nōn cōnābitur quod est eī amīcus.

711. 1. By two roads. 2. Two soldiers each. 3. With the tenth legion. 4. One thousand paces. 5. Eight thousand paces. 6. Of the third watch. 7. Two eyes (acc.). 8. In the fourth month. 9. He awaited them for six days. 10. Two villages and three towns were being set-on-fire when I was with the army. 11. The others were able to send men to fortify the camp. 12. Caesar led his soldiers across the river which was nearest the town. 13. The scout's memory of these things was extraordinary.

LESSON LXXXII

CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ* **DECLENSION OF *DEUS***

712. TEXT

Hōs Helvētiōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs Caesar aggressus est et magnam partem eōrum concīdit. Reliquī sēsē fugae[1] mandārunt[2] atque in proximās silvās[3] abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus;[4] nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa[5] est. Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā[7] domō exierat atque L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae[1] mandārunt[2] atque in proximās silvās[3] abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus;[4] nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa[5] est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset[6] patrum nostrōrum memoriā,[7] L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. (206–213, Ch. 12.)

NOTES

1. See §53.
2. Shortened form of **mandāvērunt**. See §503, Note 1.
3. Accusative, because motion is implied in **abdidērunt**.
4. See §85.
5. Here an adjective.
6. See §701.
7. See §320.

713. VOCABULARY

ab-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [**dō, dare, dedī, datum,** *give*], literally, *put away;* regularly, *conceal, hide* (transitive). **sē abdere,** literally, *conceal one's self,* i. e., *hide* (intransitive), *withdraw.*

ag-gredior, ag-gredī, ag-gressus sum, literally, *go toward, "go for";* regularly, *attack.*

con-cīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [**con,** intensive, **caedō,** *cut*], *cut to pieces, slay.*

in-opīnāns, -opīnantis, adjective, literally, *not expecting,* i. e., *unaware;* when modifying a subject or an object, it may be translated by the adverb *unawares, unexpectedly.*

inter-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,** *do, make*], literally, *make away with;* regularly, *kill.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *put into the hands,* i. e., *entrust;* **sē fugae mandāre,** *take to flight, flee.*

nam, coördinate conjunction, *for.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *canton, district.*

Tigurīnus, -ī, m., *Tigurinus,* the name of a Helvetian canton.

CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*

714. ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
Imp.	ferēbam	ferrem
Fut.	feram	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES	
Present		*Pres.*	ferre	*Pres.*	ferēns
2nd Pers.	fer ferte	*Perf.*	tulisse	*Fut.*	lātūrus
		Fut.	lātūrus esse		

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	ferar
Imp.	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	ferar	
Perf.	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup.	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES	
Present		*Pres.*	ferrī	*Perf.*	lātus
2nd Pers.	ferre, feriminī	*Perf.*	lātus esse		(GERUNDIVE)
		Fut.	lātum īrī	*Fut.*	ferendus

715. DECLENSION OF *DEUS*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	deus	dīī, dī
Gen.	deī	deōrum
Dat.	deō	dīīs, dīs
Acc.	deum	deōs
Voc.	deus	dīī, dī
Abl.	deō	dīīs, dīs

Notice that, though **deus** is a noun of the second declension ending in **-us**, it has a vocative singular like the nominative.

DRILL EXERCISES

716. 1. Give synopsis of **faciō** in third person plural, with all infinitives and participles. 2. Give synopsis of **possum** in second person plural.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

717. 1. Fers. 2. Tulerant. 3. Ferēmus. 4. Fīēbat. 5. Factum est. 6. Fīunt. 7. Tulisse. 8. Ferris. 9. Ferēris. 10. Fierī. 11. Ferar. 12. Feriminī. 13. Aggredī poterās. 14. Hae rēs fierī possunt. 15. Nam eīs persuādēbō nē eant. 16. Cum reliquī interfectī essent, hominēs huius pāgī fugae sē mandāvērunt. 17. Quattuor mīlibus hominum concīsīs, complūrēs Helvētiī in montēs sē abdidērunt.

718. 1. They are made. 2. They are carried. 3. You will go. 4. It will be made. 5. You (sing.) will be carried. 6. You (plur.) carry. 7. They go. 8. They were made. 9. We are able. 10. Will you (sing.) be able to persuade them to go? 11. I fear those four legions will be cut to pieces. 12. For they attacked and killed all the men of that canton. 13. When will you withdraw into the forest?

LESSON LXXXIII

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

DATIVE OF AGENT

719. TEXT

Ea pars cīvitātis Helvētiae, quae pāgus Tigurīnus appellābātur, īnsignem calamitātem populō[3] Rōmānō intulerat. Ita is pāgus sīve cāsū[1] sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium prīnceps[4] poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est. Nam Tigurīnī avum Caesaris socerī, L. Pīsōnis, interfēcerant eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. L. Pīsōnis avus erat L. Pīsō lēgātus.

Ita sīve cāsū[1] sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars[2] cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō[3] Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps[4] poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod[5] eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant. (213–219, Ch. 12.)

NOTES

1. **cāsū** and **cōnsiliō**: see §611.

2. **quae pars . . . ea**: literally, *what part had inflicted . . . that (part) paid,* etc., i. e., *that part which had inflicted . . . paid.*

3. **populō**: see §537.

4. **princeps . . . persolvit**: *first paid the penalty.* Observe that the adjective **prīnceps** has here the force of an adverb.

5. An English order from **quod eius socerī** would be: **quod Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō** (interfēcerant) **Cassium interfēcerant L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum L. Pīsōnis eius** (i. e., **Caesaris**) **socerī.**

There were two men named Lucius Piso, one the grandfather of the other. Caesar had married as his fourth wife Calpurnia, a daughter of the younger Lucius Piso.

720. VOCABULARY

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*
calamitās, calamitātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*
cāsus, -ūs, m. [**cadō,** *fall*], literally, *a falling;* regularly, *chance.*
im-mortālis, -e [**in,** *not,* **mors,** *death*], *immortal.*
in-ferō, in-ferre, in-tulī, il-lātum, literally, *bring upon;* with **calamitātem,** *inflict.*
īn-signis, -e, *marked.*
per-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, literally, *release completely; pay (in full).*
pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.*
sed, coördinate conjunction, *but.*
sīve, coördinate conjunction, *or if:* **sīve . . . sīve,** *either . . . or.*
socer, socerī, m., *father-in-law.*
sōlum, adverb, *only.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but also.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge.*

721. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

There are two Periphrastic Conjugations.

1. *a.* The first periphrastic conjugation is the future active participle + some form of **sum,** as: **laudātūrus** (*going-to-praise*) + **est** (*he is*) = *he is going to praise.*

   b. It is always active and has an idea of *futurity* or *intention.*

   c. The present infinitive of the first periphrastic conjugation is the same in form and meaning as the regular future active infinitive.

   d. The subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation is used where a future or future perfect subjunctive active of the ordinary conjugations is wanted.

2. *a.* The second periphrastic conjugation is the future passive participle (gerundive) + some form of **sum**, as: **laudandus** (*to-be-praised*) + **est** (*he is*) = *he is to-be-praised, he must* (*ought to, deserves to, has to*) *be praised.*

b. It is always passive and has generally not so much an idea of futurity or intention, as of *obligation, necessity,* or *propriety.*

722. FIRST (OR ACTIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

Pres.	**laudātūrus sum,** *I am going-to-praise*
Impf.	**laudātūrus eram,** *I was going-to-praise*
Fut.	**laudātūrus erō,** *I shall be going-to-praise*
Perf.	**laudātūrus fuī,** *I was,* or *have been, going-to-praise*
Plu.	**laudātūrus fueram,** *I had been going-to-praise*
Fut. Perf.	**laudātūrus fuerō,** *I shall have been going-to-praise*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	**laudātūrus sim**
Impf.	**laudātūrus essem**
Perf.	**laudātūrus fuerim**
Plu.	**laudātūrus fuissem**

INFINITIVES

Pres.	**laudātūrus esse,** *to be going-to-praise*
Perf.	**laudātūrus fuisse,** *to have been going-to-praise*

723. *Pres.* **monitūrus sum,** *I am going-to-advise*
ductūrus sum, *I am going-to-lead*
audītūrus sum, *I am going-to-hear*
captūrus sum, *I am going-to-take*

Impf. **monitūrus eram,** *I was going-to-advise*
etc.

724. SECOND (OR PASSIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

Pres. laudandus sum, *I am to be, have to be, must be praised*
Impf. laudandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, praised*
Fut. laudandus erō, *I shall have to be, shall deserve to be, praised*
Perf. laudandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, praised*
Plu. laudandus fueram, *I had deserved to be praised*
Fut. Perf. laudandus fuero, *I shall have deserved to be praised*

SUBJUNCTIVE		INFINITIVES	
Pres.	laudandus sim	*Pres.*	laudandus esse, *to deserve to be praised*
Impf.	laudandus essem		
Perf.	laudandus fuerim	*Perf.*	laudandus fuisse, *to have deserved to be praised*
Plu.	laudandus fuissem		

725. *Pres.* monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*
dūcendus sum, *I am to be, must be, led*
audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*
capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*

Impf. monendus eram, *I was to be, had to be, advised*
etc.

726. DATIVE OF AGENT

Models

1. **Caesarī omnia erant facienda,** *everything had to-be-done by Caesar.*
2. **Pugnandum erat Caesarī,** *it (the battle) had to-be-fought by Caesar.*

Notes. *a.* Caesarī here denotes the person who had something to do, and answers the question "By whom?" It is called the *dative of agent.* Compare with the ablative of agent, §306.

b. Intransitive verbs in this conjugation must be used impersonally. See Model 2.

727. ***RULE. The dative is used with the second (passive) periphrastic conjugation to denote the person who has the thing to do.***

DRILL EXERCISES

728. 1. Decline **deus immortālis; quae pars.** 2. Give synopsis of **ferō** in third person singular.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

729. 1. Nōnne exspectātūrus es? 2. Exspectandum est Caesarī. 3. Quid sēcum lātūrī erant? 4. Orgetorīx ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus erat. 5. Sed quattuor pāgōs Helvētiae cīvitātis ūnō tempore cāsū aggressī sumus. 6. Nōnne illam calamitātem īnsignem ultūrus es? 7. Nōn sōlum pūblicī sed etiam prīvātī fīnēs sunt vāstandī.

730. 1. The Helvetians were going-to-assault Noreia. 2. We are going-to-await the man who has been placed-in-command of the town. 3. He asked not only what the lieutenant had done but also what he was going-to-do. 4. The gods surpass men in influence. 5. The chance of a public disaster ought not to-be-awaited by you. 6. Did he avenge that extraordinary private wrong?

LESSON LXXXIV

SUPINES

VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

731. TEXT

Hōc proeliō factō Caesar reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōnsequī vult. Itaque pontem in[1] Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī illum id ūnō diē fēcisse in-

tellegēbant. Helvētiī id, ut[3] flūmen trānsīrent, diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. Repentīnō eius adventū commōtī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. Cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in[1] Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum[2] id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut[3] flūmen trānsīrent, illum[4] ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. (220–227, Ch. 13.)

NOTES

1. *over.*

2. **cum . . . intellegerent:** English order, **cum intellegerent illum fēcisse ūnō diē id quod,** etc.

3. **ut flūmen trānsīrent:** in apposition with **id;** translate, (*namely*) [*that they*] *cross the river.* See §414.

4. Refers to Caesar.

732. VOCABULARY

aegrē, adverb, comparative **aegrius,** superlative **aegerrimē** [aeger], *hardly; with difficulty;* superlative, *with the greatest difficulty.*

Cassiānus, -a, -um [**Cassius**], *relating to Cassius;* **bellum Cassiānum,** *the war with Cassius.*

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [**con,** intensive], literally, *move strongly;* regularly, *alarm.*

cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [**con,** intensive], literally, *follow closely,* i. e., *pursue, overtake.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *care for;* with an object modified by gerundive, *cause.*

Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, m., *Divico,* a Helvetian chief.

dux, ducis, m. or f. [**dūcō,** *lead*], *leader.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *unexpected.*

What are the meanings of *commotion, consecutive?*

733. PURPOSE WITH GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

MODELS

1. **Mīlitēs mittet** { **ad pugnandum.** / **pugnandī causā.** } *He will send soldiers to fight.*

2. **Mīlitēs mittet** { **ad urbem oppugnandam.** / **urbem oppugnandī causā.** / **urbis oppugnandae causā.** } *He will send soldiers to attack the city.*

NOTE. Notice that in Model 2 either the gerund or the gerundive is used in the genitive case; after a preposition, the gerund is used with intransitive verbs and the gerundive with transitive. See §685.

734. SUPINES

The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension. It has two forms: the accusative in **-um** (which is given as the fourth principal part of verbs) and the ablative in **-ū.**

735. The following are the supines of the model verbs:

Acc.	**laudātum**	**monitum**	**ductum**	**audītum**	**captum**
Abl.	**laudātū**	**monitū**	**ductū**	**audītū**	**captū**

736. SUPINE IN *-ŪM*

MODEL

Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt auxilium rogātum, *they send ambassadors to Caesar to ask aid.*

NOTES. *a.* The supine **rogātum** = **quī** (or **ut**) **rogent.**
b. The main verb **mittunt** implies *motion.*

737. ***RULE. The accusative of the supine is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.***

738. SUPINE IN *-ū*

MODEL

Facile factū est, *it is easy (in-the-doing) to do.*

739. ***RULE. The ablative of the supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification.***

740. VARIOUS WAYS OF EXPRESSING PURPOSE

Purpose may be expressed in five ways.

The sentence *he will send soldiers to attack the city,* may be written as follows:

Mīlitēs mittet	**ut (or quī) urbem oppugnent.**	**ut (nē)** or a relative with the subjunctive.
	ad urbem oppugnandam.	Gerundive with **ad.**
	urbem oppugnandī causā.	Gerund with **causā.**
	urbis oppugnandae causā.	Gerundive with **causā.**
	urbem oppugnātum.	Supine.

Notice that *the infinitive is not used in Latin to express purpose.*

DRILL EXERCISES

741. Give the supines of **statuō, tollō, ferō, eō, sequor.**

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

742. 1. Dux Helvētiōrum cōpiās aegrē cōnsequētur. 2. Aeduī dīxērunt sē Rōmam auxiliī rogandī causā lēgātōs missūrōs esse. 3. Rōmānī auxilium ferendum cūrāvērunt. 4. Lēgātī cīvitātum vīgintī vēnērunt Caesarem vīsum. 5. Propter amīcitiam Aeduōrum mīlitēs Caesarī ad vim hostium prohibendam mittendī sunt. 6. Sed initium mūniendī fēcērunt cum repentīnō Caesaris adventū commōtī essent.

743. [Write the first three sentences in as many ways as possible.] 1. The Aeduans sent men to overtake the leader. 2. He went to see the city. 3. Ambassadors came to seek peace. 4. They did not wish to ask Caesar why his sudden arrival alarmed the Helvetians. 5. With difficulty he caused twenty men to-be-sent (as) hostages. 6. Will the gods bring us help?

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

744. Give an account of the events narrated in Chapters XI, XII, and XIII (seven lines), and then translate those chapters.

745. Memory Work.

a. Give the present imperative of each of the model verbs and of **sum, eō, ferō** (§669).

b. Give the gerund and the gerundive of each of the model verbs (§§681, 682).

c. Give the first twenty-one cardinals; the first ten ordinals; the first six distributives. What is the ending of the *tens* above **vīgintī**? of the *hundreds* above **centum** (§709)?

d. Give the conjugation in the present indicative active and passive of **ferō**; also the synopsis in the third person singular (§714).

e. Give the synopsis of the first periphrastic conjugation of **dūcō** in the third person plural; of the second periphrastic of **audiō** in the third person singular (§§722–725).

f. Give the supines of the model verbs (§735).

746. Latin-English Vocabulary.

Give the memoranda of the nouns; the entire nominative and comparison of the adjectives; the principal parts of the verbs; and the meanings of all the words.

abdō
aegrē
aggredior
calamitās
castra
cāsus
commoveō
concīdō
cōnsanguineus
cōnsequor
cōnspectus
cōnsūmō
cūrō
dēfendō
dēmōnstrō
dux
explōrātor
expugnō
exspectō
fortūna
incrēdibilis
īnferō
īnsignis
interficiō
iūdicō
līberī
mandō
mereor
nam
necessārius
nihil
nōn sōlum— sed etiam
paene
pāgus
populor
pūblicus
repentīnus
sed
servitūs
sōlum
statuō
trādūcō
ulcīscor
uter
vāstō
vigilia

747. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for each of the following:

alarm
almost
attack (verb)
avenge
await
bring upon
but
camp
canton
cause (verb)
chance
children
close friend
conceal
consume
cut to pieces
decide
defeat (noun)
defend
deserve
disaster
entrust
extraordinary
for
fortune
hardly
hide
inflict
judge
kill
kinsman
lay waste
leader
lead across
marked
not only— but also
nothing
only
overtake
point out
property
public
pursue
ravage
scout
show
sight
slavery
take by storm
unexpected
use up
watch (noun)
which (of two)
with difficulty

748. Syntax.

Commands: How is a command in the first person expressed? What is it called?

How is a command in the second person expressed? How is its negative expressed?

How is a command in the third person expressed? What is it called?

Name the characteristics of the gerund; of the gerundive. When must the gerundive be used rather than the gerund? What is expressed by **causā** and **ad** with the gerund or gerundive?

Give the rule for **cum** *causal;* for **cum** *temporal.*

Contrast the periphrastic conjugations in form; in meaning.

Give the rule for dative of agent; contrast it with the ablative of agent.

749. Composition.

Translate in five ways the following sentence: *They went to fortify the town.*

Make up a short English sentence as an example of each of the following: command; use of gerundive; **cum** temporal; **cum** causal; second periphrastic conjugation; dative of agent.

Translate those sentences into Latin.

LESSON LXXXV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

To the teacher: It is thought that, with the completion of the work to this point, all the subjects that can be studied with profit during the first year and all that are necessary for beginning the second year's work have been covered. The remainder of the book is added:

1st. For those teachers who want more translation. These may omit Lessons 85–90, reading to their classes the translation of the intervening text, and pass immediately to the translation of Chapters 15–29, which, with the sentences under each, serve to apply and review the principles already taught.

2nd. For those teachers who want more drill in forms and syntax. These may take up the lessons in order and then proceed with the translation of Chapters 15–29.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

750. Review: Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, §522. Sequence of Tenses, §370.

751. MODELS

1. **Hōc itinere venīmus quod nūllam aliam viam habēmus.**
2. **Dīcunt sē hōc itinere venīre quod nūllam aliam viam habeant.**
3. **Dīxērunt sē hōc itinere venīre quod nūllam aliam viam habērent.**

TRANSLATION

1. *We are coming by this road because we have no other way.*
2. *They say that they are coming by this road because they have no other way.*
3. *They say that they were coming by this road because they had no other way.*

NOTES. When direct discourse is changed to indirect, notice that:

a. The main verb of the direct discourse becomes in the indirect discourse an infinitive with subject accusative. See §520.

b. The tense of the infinitive is not influenced by that of the introductory verb, but corresponds to that of the direct discourse.

c. The subordinate verb becomes (or remains) subjunctive, the tense depending on the rule for sequence of tenses. If either the

introductory verb or the main verb of the direct discourse is a past tense, the subordinate verb of the indirect discourse is a historical tense.

d. The changes in person and pronouns are the same as in English.

752. ***RULE. In indirect discourse main clauses containing a statement require the infinitive with subject accusative; subordinate verbs require the subjunctive.***

753. Remember that:

a. Latin indirect STATEMENTS
never have an introductory word, like *that* in English;
always have their main verbs in the infinitive.

b. Latin indirect QUESTIONS
always have an interrogative as an introductory word;
always have their main verbs in the subjunctive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

754. 1. Dīxērunt hunc pāgum quī esset in cīvitāte Helvētiā appellārī Tigurīnum. 2. Caesar ab Aeduīs certior factus est eōs vim hostium prohibēre velle quī iter in fīnēs eōrum fēcissent. 3. Ēnūntiātur Caesarem Labiēnum legiōnī praeficere nōluisse quae in Galliā hiemāret. 4. Rogāvit cūr Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī essent. 5. Caesar nōn intellēxit cūr hominēs ā maleficiō temperāvissent. 6. Cōnsul putāvit mīlitēs in hīberna reversūrōs esse cum Caesar pervēnisset.

755. 1. I fear that the scouts will not cross the river. 2. Translate 1 after **dīxit.** 3. The children are being led away because the enemy are coming. 4. Translate 3 after **intellegō.** 5. I shall go when I am able (future tense). 6. Translate 5 after **respondit.** 7. They say that they are willing to choose Orgetorix because he has been friendly to your state.

LESSON LXXXVI

CONDITIONS

TEXT

(It will be found that pupils more readily understand Chapters XIII and XIV if the direct discourse is translated and discussed first; then the indirect may be translated and the differences pointed out.)

756. DIRECT FORM

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs[1] faciet (inquit Dīvicō), in eam partem[2] ībunt atque ibi erunt[3] Helvētiī ubi eōs tū cōnstitueris atque esse volueris: sīn[4] bellō persequī persevērabis, reminīscere[5] et[6] veteris incommodī[7] populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod[8] improvīsō ūnum pāgum[9] adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs[10] auxilium ferre nōn possent,[11] nōlī[12] ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicere. (227–235, Ch. 13.)

NOTES

1. In the direct discourse, **nōbīscum**, **ībimus**, and **erimus** might be used instead of **cum Helvētiīs**, **ībunt**, and **erunt Helvētiī**. There is often a similar choice, but only one form will be printed.

2. i. e., of Gaul.

3. *will stay.*

4. **sīn . . . persevērābis:** *but if you* (Caesar) *continue to follow them* (the Helvetians) *up with war.*

5. **reminīscere:** second person singular imperative.

6. **et . . . et:** *both . . . and.*

7. **incommodī, virtūtis:** verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* may govern a genitive which is translated as a direct object.

8. *as to the fact that, whereas.*

9. **ūnum pāgum:** i. e., the Tigurini.

10. *to their comrades.*

11. See §693.

12. **nōlī . . . tribuere aut . . . dēspicere:** *do not ascribe it especially to your bravery or despise us.* For the use of **nōlī**, see §673, 2.

757. VOCABULARY

ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, literally, *rise against; attack.*
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, literally, *put in motion, drive; discuss, talk.*
dē-spiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, literally, *look down on; despise.*
improvīsō, adverb, not compared, *unexpectedly.*
in-commodus, -a, -um, *inconvenient.* Neuter used as a substantive, literally, *an inconvenience; disaster.*
per-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, literally, *follow thoroughly,* i. e., *follow up.*
per-sevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *continue.*
prīstinus, -a, -um [**prior,** *former*], *former.*
re-minīscor, -minīscī, ————, *remember.*
sīn, subordinate conjunction, *but if.*
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *assign* (*it*).
vetus, veteris, adjective, comparative **vetustior,** superlative **veterrimus,** literally, *old; former.* For declension see App. 35.

What are the meanings of *persecute, persevere, pristine, reminiscences, veteran, improvise?*

758. INDIRECT FORM

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret,[1] in eam partem itūrōs[2] atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur[3] et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē[4] ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. (227–235, Ch. 13.)

NOTES

1. **faceret, cōnstituisset, voluisset, persevērāret:** see §371.
2. **itūrōs, futūrōs, Helvētiōs:** see §§ 521, 522.
3. A verb in indirect discourse expressing a command is in the subjunctive.
4. **nē . . . tribueret aut . . . dēspiceret:** *that he should not ascribe it,* etc., *or despise them* (the Helvetians). See Note 3, above.

759. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A conditional sentence is complex, having two essential clauses, condition and conclusion; e. g., *if he asks, I reply.* The condition is introduced in Latin by the subordinate conjunctions: **sī,** *if;* **nisi,** *if not, unless;* **sīn,** *but if.*

760. Conditional sentences are divided into three classes as regards time:

Present.
Past.
Future.

They are divided into two classes as regards meaning:

(1) *Indicative conditions,* which include both *assumed* and *future more vivid;* and
(2) *Subjunctive conditions,* which include *contrary to fact* and *future less vivid.*

761. INDICATIVE CONDITIONS

Indicative conditions are subdivided into two classes as regards meaning:

A. Assumed.
B. Future More Vivid.

762. A. *Assumed Conditions.*

MODELS

1. *Present:* **sī rogat, respondeō**; *if he asks, I reply.*
2. *Past:* **sī** { **rogābat, respondēbam**; / **rogāvit, respondī**; } *if he asked, I replied.*

NOTE. Nothing is assumed as to the actual facts in these conditions. But if the conditions are assumed as true, the conclusions are also assumed as true.

763. B. *Future More Vivid Conditions.*

MODEL

Future: **sī** { **rogābit,** / **rogāverit,** } **respondēbō**;

if { *he shall ask, asks,* / *he shall have asked,* } *I shall reply.*

NOTE. This form of condition is of practically the same nature as *assumed conditions*, but it refers to the future and vividly expresses confidence in the fulfillment of the condition.

764. ***RULE. Assumed and more vivid future conditional sentences have both verbs in the indicative.***

765. 1. Sī quid volent, revertentur. 2. Eōs prohibēre poterat, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnābantur. 3. Sī vim facere cōnābuntur, Caesar eōs prohibēbit. 4. Sī id fit, est perīculum. 5. Sī hostēs impedītōs imprōvīsō aggressī sunt, magnam partem eōrum concīdērunt. 6. Nisi nōbīscum dē pāce agēs, magnō dolōre afficiar. 7. Sī vōs adorīrī volent, prīstinā virtūte pugnābunt. 8. Dēspicisne nōs propter veterem calamitātem nostram?

766. 1. If he does (fut.) not talk with me about the former wrongs, I shall despise him. 2. If Divico talked thus with Caesar, the ambassador announced it. 3. But if we (shall) attack them suddenly, they will go into Gaul. 4. If I am able to persuade my old friends, (there) is no danger. 5. If the Helvetians have decided to go from their state, they have already started out. 6. If the depth of the river was great, the enemy were not willing to cross. 7. Caesar said he would come when he wished.

LESSON LXXXVII

CONDITIONS—Continued

767. **TEXT**

DIRECT FORM

Nōs[1] ita ā patribus[2] maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nītāmur. Quarē nōlī[3] committere ut hīc locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.

(Caesar respondit): Eō[4] mihi minus[5] dubitātiōnis[6] datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque[7] eō[8] gravius ferō quō minus meritō[9] populī Rōmānī accidērunt. (235–244, Chs. 13 and 14.)

NOTES

1. **nōs . . . nītāmur:** *we have so learned from our fathers and ancestors that we fight by (means of) bravery rather than depend on deceit or ambuscades.*

2. **patribus maiōribusque:** see §609.

3. **nōlī . . . prōdat** = (literally) *do not allow that this place where we have taken our stand shall take its name from the disaster of the Roman people and the destruction of the army or hand down the memory* (of such a disaster and destruction); (freely) *do not allow this place where*, etc., *to take*, etc.

4. Ablative of cause, explained by the following **quod** clause.

5. Used substantively, subject of **datur**.

6. **minus dubitātiōnis:** *the less hesitation:* see §491.

7. **atque . . . accidērunt:** (literally) *and I bear (it) more heavily by that amount by which they* (these things) *did not happen by the fault of the Roman people;* (freely) *I am more displeased in just the same proportion as they have not happened through the fault of the Roman people.*

8. **eō, quō:** see §620.

9. See §456, Note 2.

768. VOCABULARY

ac-cidō, ac-cidere, ac-cidī, ————, literally, *fall to* (any one); regularly, *befall, happen.*

com-memorō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *call to mind,* i. e., *mention.*

com-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [con, *together*], literally, *send together; allow, permit.*

cōn-sistō, cōn-sistere, cōn-stitī, ————, literally, *stand together; take one's stand, halt.*

discō, discere, didicī, ————, *learn.*

dolus, -ī, m., *deceit.*

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f., *hesitation.*

graviter, adverb, literally, *heavily;* **gravius ferre,** *bear more heavily,* i. e., *be more displeased.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, f., *ambuscades.*

interneciō, interneciōnis, f., *destruction.*

maior, maius (comparative of **magnus,** *great*), *greater;* **maior** (**nātū** understood), *greater as to birth,* i. e., *older;* plural as a substantive, *ancestors.*

meritum, -ī, n. [**mereor,** *deserve*], *desert.*

nītor, nītī, nīsus or **nīxus sum,** literally, *lean, rest; rely.*

nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*

prō-dō, prō-dere, prō-didī, prō-ditum [**dō, dare, dedī, datum,** *give*], literally, *give forth; hand down* (to future generations).

Give the derivations and meanings of *insidious, majority, accident, commemorate, disciple.*

769. INDIRECT FORM

Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret[1] ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent[2] ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet[3] aut memoriam prōderet.

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent[4] memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre[5] quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent. (235–244, Chs. 13 and 14.)

NOTES

1. See §758, Note 3.
2. See §751, Note *c.*
3. **caperet, prōderet:** see §371.
4. **commemorāssent, accidissent:** see §371.
5. Supply **sē** (Caesar) as subject.

770. SUBJUNCTIVE CONDITIONS

Subjunctive conditions are subdivided into two classes as regards meaning:

A. Contrary to Fact.
B. Less Vivid Future.

771. A. *Contrary to Fact Conditions.*

MODELS

1. *Present:* **sī rogāret, respondērem;** *if he were asking* (now), *I should be replying* (now).

2. *Past:* **sī rogāvisset, respondissem**; *if he had asked, I should have replied.*

NOTES. *a.* In Model 1, notice that:
the condition is evidently untrue, hence the conclusion is untrue;
the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.
b. This is called a *present contrary to fact condition.*
c. In Model 2, notice that:
the condition is evidently untrue, hence the conclusion is untrue;
the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.
d. This is called a *past contrary to fact condition.*

772. ***RULE. Contrary to fact conditional sentences have both verbs in the imperfect subjunctive, if referring to present time; in the pluperfect subjunctive, if referring to past time.***

773. B. *Future Less Vivid Conditions.*

MODEL

Future: **sī roget, respondeam**; *if he should ask, I should reply.*

NOTES. *a.* In the model, notice that:
the condition is stated less vividly than the other future condition, or as merely possible.
the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.
the English auxiliaries are *should* and *would.*
b. This is called a *future less vivid condition.*
c. Compare it with the indicative future more vivid condition, §763.

774. ***RULE. Less vivid future conditional sentences have both verbs in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.***

775. SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS

I. Indicative:

a. Assumed;

1. *Present,* use the present indicative.
2. *Past,* use a past tense of the indicative.

b. More Vivid Future;

use the future or future perfect indicative.

II. Subjunctive:

a. Contrary to Fact;

1. *Present,* use the imperfect subjunctive.
2. *Past,* use the pluperfect subjunctive.

b. Less Vivid Future;

use the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

776. 1. Nisi exercitus cōnstitisset, Helvētiōs nōn superāvisset. 2. Sī Helvētiī īnsidiīs nōn nītantur, nōbīs resistere nōn possint. 3. Sī Caesar id committat, aut fugae sē mandent aut interficiantur. 4. Sī prīncipēs in hoc oppidum Genavam nōmine revertantur, hostēs eōs cōnsequī cōnentur. 5. Sī mūrō et fossā castra commūnīre voluisset, cīvitās eum dēfendisset. 6. Sī mīlitēs Labiēnum aggrederentur, sē dēfenderet. 7. Gravius tulissem, nisi eae rēs accidissent.

777. 1. If I undertake a matter (**rēs**), I complete it. 2. If I undertook a matter, I completed it. 3. If I undertake (future) a matter, I shall complete it. 4. If I should undertake a matter, I should complete it. 5. If you were with Caesar, you would not wish to go home. 6. If the Aeduans had been able to defend their name, this would not have happened. 7. If you should allow this, I should be much displeased. 8. If you had depended on ambuscades, you would not have halted here. 9. I say that I shall go home if I am able.

LESSON LXXXVIII

WISHES

TEXT

778. **DIRECT FORM**

Quī sī[1] alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius[2] fuisset, nōn fuit[3] difficile cavēre, sed eō[4] dēceptus est, quod neque commissum[5] ā sē intellegēbat quārē[6] timēret, neque sine causā timendum[7] putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae[8] oblīvīscī velit, num[9] etiam recentium iniūriārum,[10] quod eō invītō[11] iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere potest? (244–251, Ch. 14.)

NOTES

1. **quī sī:** *for if they.* **quī** is the subject of **fuisset, dēceptus est, intellegēbat, timēret, putābat,** and refers to the Roman people.

2. **sibi cōnscius:** literally, *conscious to themselves;* but English omits *to themselves.*

3. **nōn fuit . . . cavēre:** *it would not have been difficult to be on their guard.* **fuit** is indicative by exception.

4. See §611.

5. **(aliquid) commissum (esse):** *that anything had been done.*

6. **quārē timēret:** *on account of which they should be afraid.*

7. **timendum (esse):** the construction is impersonal, *it was to be feared,* but it is better to render the impersonal Latin verb by the personal construction: *nor did they think they ought to be afraid without reason.*

8. See §756, Note 7.

9. See §595, *c.*

10. Objective genitive, modifying **memoriam** and explained by the **quod** clauses that follow: *that you have attempted,* etc., *that you have troubled the Aeduans,* etc.

11. **eō invītō:** see general vocabulary under **invītus.**

779. VOCABULARY

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, genitive **alicuius,** dative **alicui,** etc., indefinite adjective, *any.* See App. 62.
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard.*
cōn-scius, -a, -um, *conscious, aware.*
contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult, affront.*
dē-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,** *take*], literally, *take away* (one's security), i. e., *deceive, "take in."*
dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, literally, *place down,* i. e., *lay aside.*
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *forget.*
recēns, recentis, adjective, *recent.*
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *try, attempt.*
utinam, adverb, *may, I wish that, I hope that, would that.*
vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *trouble, harass.*

780. INDIRECT FORM

Quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet,[1] num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? (244–251, Ch. 14.)

NOTE

1. Not a contrary to fact condition. See §371.

781. SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH (OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE)

Wishes are divided into three classes as regards time:

Present.
Past.
Future.

They are divided into two classes as regards meaning: *Possible Wishes* referring to the future (i. e., *hopes*) and *Impossible Wishes* referring to the present or past (i. e., *regrets*).

Models

1. *Present:* **Utinam Caesar venīret,** *I wish that Caesar were coming* (now)!
2. *Past:* **Utinam Caesar vēnisset,** *I wish that Caesar had come* (in the past)!
3. *Future:* (**Utinam**) **Caesar veniat,** *I hope that Caesar will come* (in the future)!

Notes. *a.* In Model 1 the wish, expressed by the imperfect subjunctive, implies that Caesar is *not* coming and so is impossible of fulfillment in present time.

b. In Model 2 the wish, expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive, implies that Caesar did *not* come in the past and so was impossible of fulfillment in past time.

c. In Model 3 the wish, expressed by the present subjunctive, is possible of fulfillment in future time.

d. Compare wishes with subjunctive conditions (§§ 772, 774) and note that:

1. Contrary to fact conditions and impossible wishes (regrets) refer to present and past time, and take the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.
2. Future less vivid conditions and possible wishes (hopes) refer to future time and take the present subjunctive.

e. **Utinam** is often omitted with possible wishes, but never with impossible wishes.

f. The negative is **nē**.

782. ***RULE. Future (possible) wishes are expressed by the present subjunctive with or without*** **utinam**; ***present and past (impossible) wishes are expressed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with*** **utinam**. ***The negative is*** **nē**.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

783. 1. Utinam Cassius cāvisset! 2. Utinam nē Helvētiī ūllam calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulissent! 3. Sī Rōmānīs invītīs per prōvinciam iter temptāvissent, Caesar eōs vexāvisset. 4. Utinam nē ā vōbīs dēceptus essem! 5. Hārum contumēliārum memoriam dēpōnere cōnēmur! 6. Nōlīte verērī nē Helvētiī Caesarem superent.

784. 1. I wish I were in Italy! 2. I hope this may happen often! 3. I wish this had not been done! 4. I wish that we were with Caesar's army! 5. I hope that we may live at home for a year! 6. Would that we had tried to lay aside the memory of this recent insult! 7. But this will not trouble me, if I am (future) on my guard. 8. I fear that I have been deceived by your leader. 9. That will not happen if you defend (future) me.

LESSON LXXXIX

WORD FORMATION

TEXT

785. **DIRECT FORM**

Quod[1] vestrā victōriā[2] tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque[3] tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinent. Cōnsuēvērunt[5] enim dī immortālēs, quō[4] gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. (251–257, Ch. 14.)

NOTES

1. **quod:** *the fact that.* The two **quod** clauses are the subjects of **pertinent.**

2. See §611.

3. **quodque . . . admīrāminī, pertinent:** *and the fact that you are surprised that you have inflicted these injuries so long without punishment, tend to the same result:* i. e., that it is now high time that you should receive the punishment due you.

4. **quō gravius doleant:** *in order that they may feel more pain.* **quō** is used for **ut** when there is a comparative in the purpose clause.

5. **cōnsuēvērunt,** etc.; translate in the following order:

Enim quō hominēs, quōs volunt ulcīscī prō eōrum scelere, doleant gravius ex commūtātiōne rērum, dī immortālēs cōnsuēvērunt concēdere interdum hīs (hominibus) secundiorēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem: *for, in order that men whom they wish to punish for their crimes may feel more pain* (from) *because of a change of circumstances, the immortal gods are accustomed to grant sometimes to these* (men) *greater prosperity and longer freedom from punishment.*

786. VOCABULARY

ad-mīror, -mīrārī, -mīrātus sum, *wonder, be surprised.*
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, f., *change.*
cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *became accustomed;* perfect, *I have become accustomed* = (regularly) *I am accustomed.*
diū, adverb, comparative **diūtius,** superlative **diūtissimē,** *for a long time.*
diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū,** adverb, *long*], *long,* adjective, referring to time.
doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *feel pain, suffer.*
enim, coördinate conjunction, *for.*
glōrior, glōriārī, glōriātus sum [**glōria,** *glory*], *boast* (*of*), *glory* (*in*).
impūne, adverb, *without punishment, with impunity.*
impūnitās, impūnitātis, f., *freedom from punishment, impunity.*
īnsolenter, adverb, *haughtily.*
inter-dum, adverb, literally, *between whiles,* as we say; *meanwhile.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*
secundus, -a, -um [**sequor,** *follow*], *second; favorable;* **secundiōrēs rēs,** literally, *more favorable things,* i. e., *greater prosperity.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

787. INDIRECT FORM

Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. (251–257, Ch. 14.)

COMPOUND WORDS

788. *a.* Some words in Latin, as in English, are formed by prefixing certain particles to other words. Such words are called *compounds.* Compound words differ in meaning from the simple words in accordance with the meanings of the prefixes, as:

ab, *from* + **dūcō,** *lead* = **abdūcō,** *lead from.*
ad, *to* (*toward*) + **dūcō,** *lead* = **addūcō,** *lead to* (*toward*).

b. The following words that are often used as prefixes should, with their meanings, be carefully noted:

ā, ab (abs); *away from.*
ad; *to, toward, at, near.*
ante; *before, in front of.*
circum; *around.*
cum (con-); *together, with;* often intensive, *completely.*
dē; *down from.*
ē, ex; *out from, out of;* often intensive, *completely.*
in; *in, on, into, against.*
inter; *among, between.*
ob; *towards, against.*

per; *through;* hence also intensive, *thoroughly.*
prae; *before, in front of;* sometimes intensive, *very, very much.*
prō; *forth, before.*
sub; *under, underneath, from under, up.*
trāns (**trā-**); *across.*

c. Words are also formed by prefixing particles that are never used independently, as:

dis-; *apart, between;* as: **dis-**, *apart* + **pōnō**, *place* = **dispōnō**, *place at intervals.*
re-, **red-**; *back, again;* as: **re-**, *back* + **pellō**, *drive* = **repellō**, *drive back.*

d. Some adjectives are formed by prefixing **in-**; *in-, un-;* as:

in-, *un-* + **crēdibilis**, *believable* = **incrēdibilis**, *unbelievable.*

e. Most of these prefixes take on different forms adapted to the initial consonants of the words with which they are used. Notice, for example, the **ad-** in the following:

appellō, attingō, afficiō, addūcō, accipiō, aggredior, ascendō.

f. Notice also that, with verbs compounded with prefixes, a short **a** or **e** in the stem may be changed to short **i**, as:

faciō, afficiō; teneō, retineō.

Other changes of vowels may occur.

EXERCISES

789. Give the meaning of each of the following words:

1. Subeō. 2. Trānsportō. 3. Reddō. 4. Redeō. 5. Prōvideō. 6. Adeō. 7. Praeferō. 8. Perferō. 9. Antepōnō. 10. Obveniō. 11. Circumdūcō. 12. Interpōnō. 13. Commoveō. 14. Īnfirmus. 15. Impōnō. 16. Dēmittō. 17. Dīmittō. 18. Expellō.

790. Form words by combining the following prefixes with words as indicated, and give their meanings:

ā, ab; and **sum, vertō, similis.**
ad; and **ferō, eō, sum.**
ante; and **cēdō, ferō, mittō.**
circum; and **veniō, eō, -iciō (iaciō).**
cum (con-); and **veniō, mūniō, vocō.**
dē; and **dūcō, pellō, fluō.**
ē, ex; and **veniō, vocō, mittō.**
in; and **fluō, sequor, eō.**
inter; and **mittō, pellō, -iciō (iaciō).**
ob; and **dūcō, pōnō, pugnō.**
per; and **sequor, eō, facilis.**
prae; and **dīcō, pōnō, eō.**
prō; and **mittō, sequor, veniō.**
sub; and **portō, sum, moveō.**
trāns; and **eō, ferō, mittō.**
dis-; and **pōnō, pellō, cēdō.**
re-, red-; and **portō, petō, ferō.**
in-; and **certus, firmus, audītus.**

LESSON XC

WORD FORMATION—Continued

TEXT

791. **DIRECT FORM**

Cum[1] ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur,[2] utī[3] ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī[4] Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs[5] sociīsque eōrum[6] intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam. (Dīvicō respondit): Ita Helvētiī ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;[7] eius reī[8] populus Rōmānūs est testis. (257–264, Ch. 14.)

NOTES

1. **cum . . . sint:** *although these things are so.* **cum** here has a concessive force.

2. **dabuntur, satisfaciētis, faciam:** see §764.

3. **utī . . . intellegam:** *in order that I may know that you will do those things that you promise.* See §414.

4. **sī Aeduīs . . . item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis:** *if you will pay damages to the Aeduans . . . and likewise to the Allobroges.*

5. **ipsīs sociīsque:** see §537.

6. **ipsīs** and **eōrum:** refer to the Aeduans.

7. Contracted from **cōnsuēverint.** See §503, Note 1.

8. **reī:** see §499.

792. VOCABULARY

ac-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ad,** *to,* **capiō,** *take*], *receive.*

dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go apart;* regularly, *go away, depart.*

īn-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum,** *station*], literally, *place upon; establish; train.*

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

respōnsum, -ī, n. [neuter of perfect passive participle of **respondeō** used substantively], *answer, reply.*

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, passive, **satis-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum,** literally, *do enough,* i. e., *satisfy; pay damages.*

testis, testis, m. or f., *witness.*

793. INDIRECT FORM

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit. (257–264, Ch. 14.)

DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND VERBS

794. The following endings added to verb stems form nouns with meanings as indicated:

a. **-tor** (**-sor**), *agent* or *doer*, i. e., one who performs the act indicated by the verb stem. English equivalents are *-er, -or, -tor;* as: *maker, donor, navigator.*

MODEL

explōrātor = stem of **explōrō** (*find out*) + **-tor** (*one who*) = *one who finds out, a scout.*

b. **-tiō** (**-siō**) and **-tus** (**-sus**), genitive **-ūs**, *act* or *the result of an act.* English equivalents are *-ing, -ion, -tion;* as: *fastening, coercion, direction.*

MODEL

mūnītiō = stem of **mūniō** (*fortify*) + **-tiō** (*act* or *result of act*) = *fortification* (either the act or the result).

795. The following endings added to noun and adjective stems form nouns that denote *abstract quality:*

-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō. English equivalents are *-ness, -ship, -tude, -(t)y;* as: *weariness, friendship, altitude, luxury.*

MODEL

magnitūdō = stem of **magnus** (*large*) + **-tūdō** (*abstract quality*) = *largeness, size.*

EXERCISES

796. Give the meaning of each of the following in such a way as to show the formation:

1. Imperātor. 2. Dēditiō. 3. Victōria. 4. Difficultās. 5. Dēfēnsor. 6. Oppugnātiō. 7. Firmitūdō. 8. Potentia. 9. Conventus.

797. Form words by combining the following endings and stems as indicated, and give their meanings:

1. **-tor**; and **da-, ē-vocā-, duc-.**
2. **-ia**; and **audāc-, miser-.**
3. **-tiō**; and **profec-** (**proficīscor**), **exīstimā-, conten-** (**contendō**).
4. **-tia**; and **amīcī-, poten(t)-, persevēran(t)-.**
5. **-tus**; and **mō-** (**moveō**), **adi-** (**adeō**), **cōnā-** (**cōnor**).
6. **-tūs**; and **vir-, servi-, senec-.**
7. **-tās**; and **nōbili-, boni-, pauci-.**
8. **-tūdō**; and **firmi-, sōli-, ampli-.**

ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

798. Give an account of Divico's speech and Caesar's reply, and then translate.

799. Latin-English Vocabulary.

Give the memoranda of the nouns; the entire nominative and comparison of the adjectives; the principal parts of the verbs; and the meanings of all the words.

accidō	**cōnsuēscō**	**improvīsō**	**respōnsum**
admīror	**contumēlia**	**īnsidiae**	**recēns**
adorior	**dēcipiō**	**īnstituō**	**secundus**
agō	**dēpōnō**	**interdum**	**sīn**
aliquī	**dēspiciō**	**nītor**	**temptō**
caveō	**discēdō**	**nōmen**	**vetus**
committō	**diū**	**polliceor**	**vexō**
commūtātiō	**doleō**	**prīstinus**	**victōria**
cōnsistō	**enim**	**quam** (conj.)	

800. English-Latin Vocabulary.

Give the first form of the Latin for the following:

allow
ambuscades
any
attack (verb)
become accustomed
be on one's guard
but if
change
deceive
depart
despise
discuss
favorable
for (conj.)
for a long time
former
happen
halt
insult
lay aside
meanwhile
name
old
promise
recent
rely
reply
suffer
take one's stand
talk
than
train
trouble
try
unexpectedly
victory
wonder

801. Syntax.

When Latin direct discourse becomes indirect, what changes take place?

Conditions: Define an assumed condition. Give rule.
Define a future more vivid condition. Give rule.
Define a contrary to fact condition. Give rule.
Define a future less vivid condition. Give rule.

Wishes: Into what two classes are wishes divided as to meaning?
Into what two classes are impossible wishes divided? How is each expressed?
How is a possible wish expressed?

802. Composition.

Make up short English sentences as examples of: indirect discourse; each of the four kinds of conditions; of a possible wish; of an impossible wish.

Translate the sentences into Latin.

CHAPTER XV–XXIX

NOTE.—From this point the text is given connectedly with notes instead of being divided into lessons as heretofore. The exercises for writing are placed at the end of each chapter, and may be divided in the assignment of lessons, at the discretion of the teacher.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proelō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium

265. **movent:** supply **Helvētiī.** **idem:** neuter accusative.

266. **equitātum:** direct object of **praemittit.** **quattuor mīlium:** see §648, Note *c.*

268. **coāctum habēbat:** compare with **habēre obstrictās,** §615, Note 4. **quī videant:** *to see.* See §423, 1. **quī:** plural, because it refers to the individuals of the collective antecedent, **equitātum.** **quās in partēs:** *in what direction.*

269. **faciant:** see §370. **cupidius:** *too eagerly.*

271. **paucī dē nostrīs:** *a few of our men.*

272. **equitibus:** why no preposition? See §581, Note 1.

274. **novissimō agmine:** place in which. **proeliō:** see §313.

276. **satis (esse) habēbat . . . prohibēre:** *he held that (it) was enough . . . to keep away:* **prohibēre** is the subject of the **esse** supplied.

277. **ita:** correlative with **utī.** **circiter:** an adverb modifying the adjective **quīndecim.**

agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs
280 mīlibus passuum interesset.

279. **prīmum:** supply **agmen.** **amplius:** used as a noun, the subject of **interesset.** **quīnīs aut sēnīs:** the distributives are used to indicate that the two armies were this distance apart *each day.*

280. **interesset:** see §437.

EXERCISES

Review: Time Constructions, §§ 320, 327.
Reflexive Pronoun, §407.
Relative Pronoun, §§ 150, 152.

1. They will come back in ten days. 2. Caesar, on that day, persuaded the soldiers. 3. For many years, he tried to hold the royal power. 4. Orgetorix died at that time. 5. The rear of the enemy marched thus for about fifteen days. 6. In twenty days the cavalry will come to that place from which they had started out. 7. At the same time the Helvetians were elated by a battle by means of which they had begun to rout a large number of horsemen. 8. We shall take with use five or six men each, if you will take the same number with you. 9. Caesar always kept the tenth legion with him, because it was most friendly to him.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est,

281. **Aeduōs frūmentum:** *grain from the Aeduans;* verbs of demanding govern two accusatives.

282. **essent . . . pollicitī = pollicitī essent. flāgitāre = flāgitābat.** In animated description the present infinitive may be used for the imperfect or perfect indicative, and has its subject in the nominative. This is called the *historical infinitive.*

283. **ut:** how translated? See §472, Note 2.

posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō 285
autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frū- 290
mentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat,

284. **frūmenta:** *standing grain;* **frūmentum:** (*harvested*) *grain,* used in the singular because in bulk.

285. **nē . . . quidem:** always emphasizes what comes between the two words. **pābulī:** see §491.

286. **frūmentō:** see §635. **flūmine, nāvibus:** ablates of means.

287. **minus = nōn.**

288. **diem:** see §327. **diem . . . Aeduī:** *the Aeduans kept putting him* (Caesar) *off from day to day.*

289. **dūcere, dīcere:** for form and translation, see note on **flāgitāre,** line 282, above. **cōnferrī . . . dīcere:** *they* (the Aeduans) *kept saying it* (the grain) *was being collected, it was being brought, it was close at hand.* **ubi:** connects **intellēxit** with **accūsat.** Before trying to translate this sentence, render into English the following sentences:

1. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, prīncipēs eōrum convocāvit. 2. Eōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat. 3. In hīs Dīviciācum convocāvit et Liscum quī summō magistrātuī praeerat. 4. Hunc vergobretum appellant Aeduī quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem. 5. Graviter eōs prīncipēs accūsat quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur.

291. **sē** (understood) is the subject and **frūmentum** the object of **mētīrī. frūmentum mētīrī** is the subject of **oportēret,** but translate: *it was necessary to measure out grain to the soldiers.* **oportēret:** see §751, Note *c.* **convocātīs prīncipibus:** ablative absolute, denoting time and modifying **accūsat:** *after summoning the chief men, he reproached,* etc. **eōrum:** the Aeduans.

292. **quōrum . . . habēbat:** explains **prīncipibus.**

in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

293. **Dīviciācō et Liscō**: appositives of **prīncipibus**. **quī . . . praeerat**: explains **Liscō**.

294. **quem . . . Aeduī**: explains **magistrātuī**: see §527. **quī . . . potestātem**: explains **vegobretum**. **annuus**: an adjective, here used with the force of an adverb.

295. **in suōs**: *over his subjects.*

296. **possit**: the subject is **frūmentum** (understood).

297. **propinquīs hostibus**: ablative absolute denoting time.

298. **sublevētur**: see §692. In this case the reason is Caesar's own, not another's. Yet he is *quoting* the reason he gave for his complaint; hence the subjunctive, i. e., the reason is given by Caesar the general and quoted by Caesar the author. **ex**: *in.*

299. **multō**: see §620.

EXERCISES

Review: Place Constructions, §§327, 460, 468, 476.
Appositive and Predicate Noun, §85.
Demonstrative Pronouns, §§134, 135, 142, 482.

1. The soldiers are in the town. 2. He hastened from Geneva to Gaul. 3. In these places were large forests. 4. Their territory extends forty miles. 5. The grain in that place will not be ripe this month. 6. Meantime Caesar turns away from the same river because he wishes to follow the Helvetians. 7. The Boii have gone to Noreia, but not even now are they far from home. 8. Caesar hastened from Aquileia, a large town of Italy, to Ocelum, the last town of the nearer province. 9. Liscus had been the chief of the

Aeduans, by whom he was considered (**habeō**) very powerful. 10. He calls the chiefs from the fields into that camp in which he himself has been for many days.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum 305
cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia 310

302. **quod**: supply the antecedent **id**, the object of **prōpōnit**. The rest of the chapter beginning with **esse nōnnūllōs** is explanatory of **(id) quod**.

303. **quī . . . possint**: *who, though private citizens, possess more influence than*, etc.

305. **nē . . . cōnferant**: *from collecting the grain*. The negative clause of purpose with **nē** or **quōminus** after a verb of hindering may be rendered by *from* with the verbal noun in *-ing*.

306. **cōnferant**: plural because of the plural idea in **multitūdinem**. **praestāre . . . ēreptūrī**: the arguments by which these men (**hōs**) influence the multitude. **praestāre, Gallōrum . . . perferre; neque dubitāre, etc.**: (*saying that*) *it was better to endure the rule of the Gauls than that of the Romans; and they did not doubt*, etc. **praestāre** is used impersonally and has **perferre**, line 308, for its subject.

308. **quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī**: after a negatived expression of *doubt* (here **dubitāre**), **quīn**, *that*, and the subjunctive must be used. **dubitāre** has **hōs**, line 304, for its subject.

309. **superāverint**: the future perfect indicative in direct discourse becomes perfect subjunctive in the indirect. **Aeduīs . . . sint ēreptūrī**: *they would wrest from the Aeduans*. Some verbs compounded with **ab, dē, ex** govern the dative (here **Aeduīs**), instead of the ablative, of separation. **sint ēreptūrī**: see §722. **ūnā cum**: *together with*.

310. **eīsdem**: i. e., the **nōnnūllōs** of line 302.

quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

311. **quaeque** = **et (ea) quae.**

312. **sē:** i. e., Liscus. **quod . . . ēnūntiārit:** *because under compulsion he disclosed the critical matter to Caesar.* **ēnūntiārit** = **ēnūntiāverit.**

313. **quantō . . . fēcerit:** indirect question, the object of **intellegere.** **id:** i. e., made this disclosure.

EXERCISES

Review: Ablative of Agent, §306.
Ablative of Manner, §627.
Ablative of Accompaniment, §642.
Adjectives with Genitive in **-īus**, §283.

1. To which man (of two) will you give this? 2. No grain was brought in by any (of the) traders. 3. The bridge torn down (ablative absolute), they returned very hopefully to the camp. 4. Are you allowed (is it allowed to you) to establish peace with your neighbors? 5. Liscus, who was influenced by Caesar, declared that some were very powerful. 6. Other things that were being done in the whole camp were reported by one man. 7. I know with how much danger Liscus informed Caesar. 8. The people were so hindered that no grain was collected by them. 9. Then at last a reply was made (it was replied) by Caesar. 10. A hundred towns were taken by the men of one legion.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesen-

317. **plūribus praesentibus:** (*with*) *too many present;* ablative absolute.

tibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs

319. **quaerit**: *he asks about.* **sōlō**: supply **eō**, referring to Liscus.

321. (**ea**) **esse vēra**: *that* (*these reports*) *are true.* (**reperit**) **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**, etc.: (*he discovers*) *that Dumnorix is the very man*, etc.

322, 323. **audāciā, grātiā**: see §649.

324. **annōs**: see §327.

325. **parvō pretiō**: *at a small price;* ablative of price, a subdivision of ablative of means. **redēmpta habēre**: *had bought up;* compare with **habēre obstrictās**, §615, Note 4. **illō licente**: ablative absolute.

326. **contrā**: *against him.* **audeat**: a few verbs like **audeō**, having no perfect stem, use passive forms for tenses of completed action. Such verbs are called semi-deponent. See App. 74.

It was the custom of the Romans to auction off the right to collect the taxes of the provinces. The tax collector often exacted much more than the legal amount, keeping the balance for himself.

rēbus: see §313. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.*

327. **auxisse** and **comparāsse**: supply **sē** (Dumnorix) as subject.

329. **neque** = **et nōn.**

331. **causā**: *for the sake.* **mātrem . . . potentissimō**: translate in the following order; **mātrem hominī in** (*among*) **Biturīgibus nōbilissimō et potentissimō illīc.**

332. **collocāsse**: *he had married off.* **ipsum**: i. e., Dumnorix.

uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

333. **uxōrem:** *who was she?* See line 58. **ex mātre:** *on his mother's side.* **propinquās suās:** *his female relatives.* **nūptum:** a supine with **collocāsse,** which is considered here as a verb of motion, as is evident from the phrase **in aliās cīvitātēs.** Translate: *he had married off his mother,* etc., *into other states.*

334. **Helvētiīs:** see §529.

335. **suō nōmine:** *on his own account* (*name*).

337. **dēminūta:** supply **sit.**

338. **quid:** the indefinite pronoun. See §571, Note 5.

339. **summam . . . venīre:** *he* (*came into*) *entertained the highest hope,* etc. **rēgnī obtinendī:** see §§499, 682.

340. **imperiō:** *under the control;* see §626, Note *d.*

342. **quod . . . factum:** *respecting the unfortunate engagement of cavalry which had occurred a few days before.* For a description of this engagement, see Chap. 15.

343. **ante:** an adverb. **diēbus:** see §620.

345. **auxiliō:** see §544.

EXERCISES

Review: Ablative of Separation, §609.
Ablative of Cause, §611.
Conjugation of **ferō**, §714.

1. We shall ask whether they are going-to-carry the grain. 2. Dumnorix was very powerful because-of his property and kindness. 3. On this account he had dared to speak very freely in the conference. 4. No one desired to increase the price of the taxes. 5. He married off his mother and sister according-to his own will. 6. Did you know that he took (as) wife the daughter of Orgetorix from the Helvetians? 7. When he was alone in the council, he was thoroughly frightened. 8. He will always favor the Helvetians and hate the Romans because-of that cavalry battle. 9. The grain was being very quickly collected from the neighboring states.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā-

347. **quibus:** how translated here? **cum . . . accēderent:** *since the most clearly proven facts were added to these suspicions.* These facts (**rēs**) are stated in the following **quod** clauses.

348. **accēderent:** (literally, *went in addition to*); freely, *were added to.* **quod:** *the fact that.*

349. **trādūxisset:** the subject is Dumnorix; for mood, see §752. **dandōs cūrāsset:** compare with **faciendum cūrāvit,** line 221. **eōs** = **Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.**

350. **iniussū . . . ipsīs:** *without his own order and (that) of the state but also without their* (Caesar's and the Aeduans') *knowledge.*

351. **magistrātū:** i. e., Liscus.

352. **satis esse causae:** *that it was a sufficient reason.* **satis:** here used as a noun, the subject of **esse.** **causae:** see §491. **arbitrābātur:** the subject is Caesar.

rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

353. **animadverteret:** see §370.

354. **rēbus:** see §529. **hīs . . . repugnābat:** *one consideration offset all these facts.*

355. **quod . . . cognōverat:** explains **ūnum.**

357. **cognōverat:** (*he had learned*), *he knew* (*of*). **nē . . . offenderet verēbātur:** see §430. **eius:** refers to Dumnorix and modifies **supplicium;** see §499.

358. **animum:** *feelings.*

359. **cōnārētur: priusquam** takes the subjunctive when the subordinate act is foreseen.

360. **per . . . Troucillum:** modifies **colloquitur.**

361. **prīncipem:** *a prominent man.* **Galliae:** appositive to **prōvinciae.**

362. **cui . . . habēbat:** *in whom he had the greatest confidence in all matters.* **fidem habēbat = cōnfīdēbat:** see §529. **eō:** i e., Diviciacus.

363. **ipsō:** i. e., Diviciacus. **ipsō praesente:** compare with **plūribus praesentibus,** line 317.

364. **sint dicta, dīxerit:** see §370.

365. **eō:** i. e., Dumnorix. **sē:** i. e., Caesar.

366. **sine eius offēnsiōne animī:** *without hurting his* (*Diviciacus's*) *feelings.* **ipse dē eō statuat:** *that he* (*Caesar*) *should decide about him* (*Dumnorix*).

367. **causā cognitā:** *after investigating the case.* **statuat, iubeat:** see §423, 2. **cīvitātem,** i. e., of the Aeduans.

EXERCISES

Review: Ablative of Means, §313.
Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, §635.
Ablative of Description, §649.
Ablative of Specification, §656.
Ablative Absolute, §398.
Participles, §§388, 390.

1. Dumnorix was using the cavalry of the Aeduans without their knowledge. 2. His brother, Diviciacus, was (a man) of eminent justice. 3. No one was so remarkable in zeal and good will. 4. Having learned these things, Caesar urged that Diviciacus call his brother to him. 5. But Diviciacus feared that he would be unable to win over Dumnorix with this speech. 6. To his brother, whom he was going-to-defend, he sent this messenger. 7. He had not dared to favor these men. 8. Caesar said that Dumnorix was increasing the dangers of the state by heavy (great) taxes. 9. He did not attempt to do anything until Dumnorix should decide (subj.) about his brother. 10. After these things were done, Caesar returned to his home.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō 370 plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse

[Throughout this chapter use proper names in place of pronouns wherever the meaning would not otherwise be clear.]

368. **multīs cum lacrimīs**: denotes the manner of **obsecrāre.**

369. **quid**: form and meaning? see §571, Note 5. **gravius**: *too severe.* **in**: *against.*

370. **illa**: refers to the charges made in Chap. 19. **nec quemquam**: *and nobody.* **ex eō**: *from that fact.*

371. **dolōris**: modifies **plūs**; see §491. **proptereā quod**: connects **crēvisset** with **capere.** **cum** connects **posset** with **crēvisset.** **sē** (in line 370) and **ipse** refer to **Diviciacus.**

grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grā-
375 tiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum
380 utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae

372. **grātiā:** see §611. **plūrimum:** modifies **posset.** Between **Galliā** and **ille,** insert **et. ille,** i. e., Dumnorix. **minimum posset:** *had very little influence.*

373. **per sē crēvisset:** means that Dumnorix had gained power through Diviciacus.

374. **opibus, nervīs:** see §635.

375. **suam:** refers to Diviciacus. **ūterētur:** the subject is Dumnorix.

376. **et . . . et:** *both . . . and.*

377. **sī:** connects **accidisset** with **exīstimātūrum (esse). eī:** i. e., Dumnorix. **ipse:** i. e., Diviciacus.

378. **eum locum:** *such a position.* **apud eum:** *with him* (*Caesar*).

379. **suā:** i. e., Diviciacus. **voluntāte:** see §611. **futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur:** *the result would be that the sympathies,* etc., *would be turned from,* etc. **futūrum esse** with the subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive, which rarely occurs. The same form is necessarily used when the given verb has no future active participle.

380. **āverterentur:** see §437. **cum:** *while.*

381. **peteret:** see §701.

382. **rogat . . . faciat:** *he asks him to make,* etc. The substantive clause of purpose without an introductory **ut** may follow verbs of *asking, urging,* and *desiring,* including **volō** and its compounds.

383. **tantī . . . ostendit:** *he shows that his* (*Diviciacus's*) *favor with him* (*Caesar*) *is of so great value.* The genitive **tantī** is used to express *indefinite price* or *value.*

iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

384. **suum:** i. e., Caesar's. **eius:** i. e., Diviciacus. **voluntātī ac precibus:** indirect object of **condōnat:** literally, *he freely gives the wrong to his wish and entreaties;* freely, *he pardons the wrong at his wish and entreaties.*

387. **in reliquum tempus:** *for the future.*

388. **vītet:** see note on **faciat,** line 382. **praeterita:** *the past.*

389. **frātrī:** *for (the sake of) his brother.* **Dumnorīgī:** *over Dumnorix.*

EXERCISES

Review: Ablative of Comparison, §618.
Ablative of Measure of Difference, §620.
Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs, §§111, 566, 567, 573, 574, 575, 583, 589.
Declension of Comparatives, §§112, 576.

1. Dumnorix wept much less than Diviciacus. 2. Diviciacus especially wished Caesar to call Dumnorix to him. 3. I know these things and no one feels (**capiō**) more (of) distress than I. 4. You are using this power for the sake (**causā**) of obtaining royal power. 5. On the same day he talked a very long time with many others. 6. If anything rather severe happens (future perfect) to him, the people will think I did it. 7. For this reason very many (of) my friends will not pardon me. 8. The common people of the state had not dared to complain very much. 9. Not even Caesar was able to speak more freely to Dumnorix than to Diviciacus. 10. Diviciacus was the first with whom Caesar talked.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

391. **factus**: agrees with **Caesar** (understood), subject of **mīsit**. **hostēs cōnsēdisse**: indirect statement with **certior factus**: *being informed that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain.*

392. **mīlia**: see §288.

393. **quālis . . . ascēnsus**: object of **cognōscerent**, which is a purpose clause depending on **mīsit**: *he sent (men) to find out what the nature*, etc.

395. **esse**: supply **ascēnsum** as subject. **dē**: (*after the beginning of*), *in*, **Labiēnum**: subject of **ascendere**. **lēgātum prō praetōre**: *his lieutenant-general;* literally, *a general in place of the commander*, i. e., with special delegated powers.

396. **ducibus**: *as guides.*

398. **quid suī cōnsiliī sit**: *what his plan is.* **cōnsiliī**: see §491. **sit**: see §370.

399. **quō**: see §313.

400. **quī . . . habēbātur**: *who was regarded as very skillful in military science.*

402. **Crassī**: supply **exercitū**. Both in reading the Latin and in translating give the names in full.

EXERCISES

Review: Genitive with Nouns, §35.
Objective Genitive, §499.
Possessive Genitive, §489.
Conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō**, §560.

1. Diviciacus's love for his brother was (for) a great help to Caesar. 2. Caesar's scouts afterwards learned what the character of the mountain was. 3. One wished to report that the road was very easy, but the other was unwilling. 4. They prefer not to hinder Caesar's plan. 5. The Helvetians' army will encamp at the foot of the mountain. 6. What-sort-of an army can Caesar make with these legions? 7. After the flight of the enemy was seen (ablative absolute), Caesar returned to Noreia. 8. The scouts informed Caesar that the beginning of the flight had been made by Dumnorix. 9. Considius was so skillful that Caesar preferred to send him against the enemies' forces. 10. Caesar wanted to use all the power that he had.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem

404. **prīmā lūce:** *at daybreak.* **cum** connects **tenērētur, abesset** and **cognitus esset** with **accurrit.** See §701. **summus mōns:** *the summit of the mountain.* Adjectives denoting *order* and *succession* are used in agreement with the noun to designate a *particular part.*

405. **ipse:** i. e., Caesar.

406. **passibus:** see §618. **neque = et nōn,** the **nōn** modifying **cognitus esset.**

īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

412. **ut erat eī praeceptum:** *as he had been directed;* the verb is intransitive and so used impersonally in the passive, the subject being the clause, **nē committeret.**

413. **committeret:** see §423, 3. **ipsīus = Caesaris.**

415. **fieret:** see §414. **exspectābat** and **abstinēbat:** note the tense. See §161.

416. **multō diē:** *in broad day,* contrasted with **prīmā lūce.**

417. **et . . . et . . . et:** in translating, omit the first.

419. **quod . . . renūntiāvisse:** *had reported to him* (*for*) *as if seen what he had not seen;* supply **id** as the antecedent of **quod** and object of **renūntiāvisse.** **vīsō:** a participle used as a noun.

420. **quō cōnsuērat intervāllō:** (*at which interval he was accustomed*), *at the usual interval.*

EXERCISES

Review: Partitive Genitive, §491.
Genitive of Description, §649.
Genitive of Measure, §648, Note *c.*

1. I will tell you what my plan is. 2. He sent ahead Publius Considius, who had been considered rather skillful. 3. It was said that Considius was too desirous of making an attack. 4. Caesar drew up a battle line of five hundred soldiers. 5. A large number of cavalrymen was sent to the hill by Labienus to make an attack. 6. The fear of Considius for the enemy was finally reported to Caesar. 7. At

daybreak two thousand horses were seen near the-top-of the mountain. 8. They ran from place to place and finally returned to the bank of the river. 9. A battle line of great length had been seen by Considius. 10. Considius had been considered (a man) of remarkable bravery.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī

422. **diēī:** see §489.

423. **cum . . . oportēret:** (*when*) *within which it was necessary to measure out grain to the army.* **oportēret:** the subject is **frūmentum mētīrī.**

425. **aberat:** the subject is Caesar. **reī . . . prōspiciendum:** the verb is intransitive and therefore used impersonally in the passive; (*it must be provided for the supplies*), *that he must provide for supplies.* **reī:** see §537.

427. **Bibracte:** see §460.

428. **fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī:** i. e., those that had been members of his force. **Gallōrum:** here an adjective.

429. **quod . . . exīstimārent:** gives the first reason for **īnsequī coepērunt,** line 435.

430. **eō magis, quod:** *the more for this reason,* giving the reason for **exīstimārent.** See §611.

431. **superiōribus . . . occupātīs:** ablative absolute, denoting concession; *though they had seized the higher positions.*

432. **sīve eō:** *or for this reason.* **quod . . . cōnfīderent:** gives the second reason for **īnsequī coepērunt. rē . . . posse:** *that they* (the Romans) *could be cut off from supplies* (at Bibracte). **rē frūmentāriā:** see §609.

posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

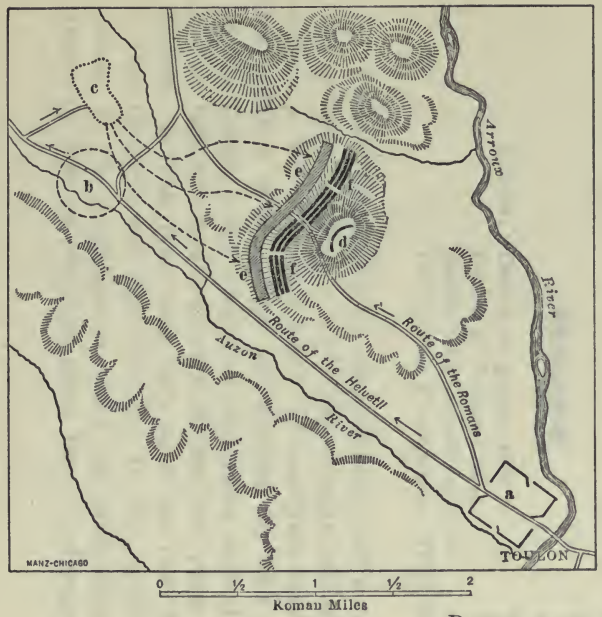
EXERCISES

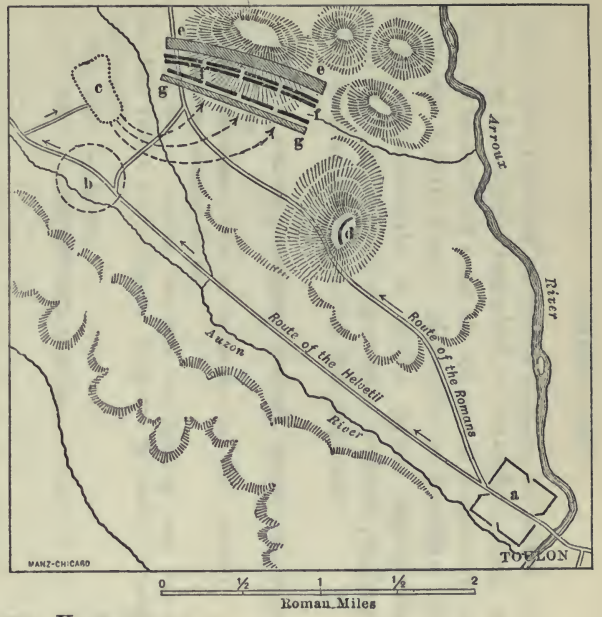
Review: Indirect Object, §53.
Dative with Special Verbs, §529.
Dative with Compound Verbs, §537.
Conjugation of **fīō**, §633.

1. Caesar turned aside his line-of-march (**iter**) so that he might seek grain. 2. He started out for Bibracte because that town was full of grain. 3. Caesar did not attack the enemy on the day before, because he had trusted Considius. 4. Caesar thought it was fitting to give grain to his (men) on the next day. 5. He had always favored the plan of starting out at daybreak. 6. Labienus had been placed-in-command of the rear line. 7. But the enemy had made war upon them the same year. 8. On this account he easily persuaded them to harass (see §423, 2) our (men) on the rear. 9. Caesar's army did not have enough (of) grain. 10. A cavalry attack will be made by the Helvetians.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre pro-

436. **advertit**: *turned his attention to;* for construction of **animum** and **id**, compare that of **partēs** and **flūmen**, §705, Note 2.
437. **quī sustinēret**: *to check.* See §423, 1.
438. **in colle mediō**: *midway up the slope.*
439. **legiōnum**: see §649.
440. **legiōnēs**: one of the subjects of **collocārī**, line 441.





BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.

First stage

a *Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle*
b *Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle*
c *Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle* (24, 9)
d *Roman fortification* (24, 8)
e *The Helvetii*
f *The Romans*

Second stage.

a *Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle*
b *Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle*
c *Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle* (24, 9)
d *Roman fortification* (24, 8)
e *The Helvetii*
f *The Romans*
g *The Boii and Tulingi*

ximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab eīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī 445 cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

441–444. **collocārī, complērī, cōnferrī, mūnīrī:** all depend on **iussit.**
ac: *and thus.*

442. **hominibus:** ablative of means; see §581, Note 1.

443. **eum:** supply **locum.**

444. **cum . . . carrīs:** not only the fighting men, but the baggage and the women and children. This was to make the men fight more desperately.

446. **aciē:** see §627.

447. **sub . . . successērunt:** *came up . . . near to.*

EXERCISES

Review: Dative of Agent, §727.
Dative of Purpose, §544.
Dative with Adjectives, §546.
Periphrastic Conjugations, §§721–725.

1. Caesar thought his troops ought-to-be-led away. 2. He was going-to-draw up a triple line-of-battle midway up the slope. 3. When he had filled the mountain with men, he sent soldiers as aid to the four legions. 4. This very compact battle-line was a (source of) hindrance to the Helvetians. 5. The baggage had-to-be-carried into one place by these legions. 6. This place was very near our van (first line). 7. Our cavalry was very friendly to the cavalry of the Gauls. 8. The mountain on which the battle line had been drawn up was an excellent place for a conference. 9. All

the wagons had-to-be-brought from this place by the Helvetians. 10. Caesar said he was going-to-enroll these legions in hither Gaul.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere

448. **suō (equō remōtō)**: *sending away his own horse.* **omnium:** refers to staff-officers only.

449. **aequātō . . . perīculō**: ablative absolute denoting means.

GLADIUS

450. **tolleret**: see §414. **ē locō**: modifies **missīs**.

451. **pīlīs missīs**: ablative absolute denoting means.

452. **gladiīs dēstrictīs**: *with drawn swords.*

453. **fēcērunt**: supply **nostrī** as subject. **erat**: the subject is the following **quod** clause. **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō quod**: *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls for fighting that.* For the two datives, see §544, 543, *c.*

454. **plūribus . . . colligātīs**: ablative absolute, denoting cause and modifying **poterant**; *many of their shields having been pierced through and fastened together by one blow of the javelins.* **ictū**: ablative of means, modifying **trānsfīxīs et colligātīs.**

455. **cum . . . īnflexisset**: *when the iron point had become bent.* **ēvellere**: supply **pīlium** as object. **ēvellere** and **pugnāre**: complementary infinitives, depending on **poterant**: supply **Gallī** as subject.

PILA

neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

457. **multī ut . . . praeoptārent:** *so that many preferred.* See §437, **multī**, being emphatic, precedes **ut**, which usually stands first in its clause.

458. **manū:** see §609. **nūdō corpore:** *with body unprotected.* See §627.

459. **aberat . . . passūs:** *was about a mile distant.*

460. **mīlle:** an adjective. **passūs:** see §327. **captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs:** *after the mountain was taken and while our men were coming up.*

463. **novissimīs praesidiō:** *a protection to the rear:* see §§543, *c*, 544. **ex itinere:** *turning aside from their march.*

464. **aggressī:** modifies **Bōī et Tulingī.** **circumvenīre:** depends on **coepērunt.**

466. **conversa signa intulērunt:** literally, *carried forward their reversed standards;* freely, *wheeled about and advanced.*

467. **aciēs:** supply verb from **intulērunt.** **victīs ac submōtīs:** *the conquered and dislodged* (Helvetians). See §529.

468. **ut venientēs sustinēret:** *to withstand those* (the Boii and Tulingi) *who were advancing.* Observe that the present participle is here equivalent to a relative clause.

EXERCISES

Review: Subject Accusative, §521.
Infinitives, §377.
Declension of **domus**, §458.

1. The shield and javelin were chosen by the Romans (as) their arms. 2. Caesar had removed from sight all (of) the horses. 3. At length they began to ask (for) the aid of Caesar. 4. Did the first line try to resist those who had gone out from home? 5. He says one side of their bodies was covered (**compleō**) with wounds. 6. The shields which were carried in one hand served-as (were) a hindrance for battle. 7. He said he would follow them home and readily conquer them. 8. He ordered the Gauls to remain at home and not to complain.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in

469. **ancipitī proeliō:** *in a double (-headed) battle.* See §313. **pugnātum est:** *(it was fought), they fought.*

470. **possent:** supply as subjects **Helvētiī, Bōī, Tulingī.**

471. **alterī . . . alterī:** *the one party* (Helvetians) . . . *the other party* (Boii and Tulingi).

473. **cum pugnātum sit:** *although they fought.* **hōrā septimā:** about one o'clock (reckoned from sunrise).

474. **āversum:** *(turned away) in flight.* **ad multam noctem:** *till late at night.*

475. **etiam ad:** *close to.*

476. **in nostrōs venientēs:** *upon our men as they came up.*

nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

477. **coniciēbant**: note the imperfect tenses here and in the next line. **nōnnūllī . . . subiciēbant**: *some among the carts and wagons were casting pikes and darts.*

479. **cum esset pugnātum**: *when they had fought;* see §701. **impedīmentīs**: see §635.

481. **atque**: *and also.* **ūnus ē fīliīs**: *one of his sons;* the partitive genitive might have been used. **circiter**: an adverb modifying the numeral adjective.

482. **eā tōtā nocte**: *during the entire night.*

483. **partem**: see §327.

483–486. **nūllam . . . potuissent**: translate in the following order:

Itinere intermissō nūllam partem noctis, pervēnērunt in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō, cum nostrī nōn potuissent sequī eōs, morātī trīduum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum.

485. **occīsōrum**: *of (the) slain.*

486. **trīduum**: see §327.

487. **eōs = Helvētiōs. nē . . . habitūrum**: this is all indirect statement quoting the purport of the letter. **nē . . . iuvārent**: (*ordering them*) *not to help,* etc.

488. **aliā**: see vocabulary. **quī sī**: *for if they.* **iūvissent**: for the future perfect indicative of the direct statement. **sē eōdem . . . habitūrum (esse)**: *he would regard them in the same position as (he regarded) the Helvetians.*

EXERCISES

Review: Complementary Infinitive, §508, Note *b*.
Indirect Discourse, §§752, 753.
Declension of Personal Pronouns, §552.
Conjugation of **possum**, §506.

1. You will be able to help me within an hour. 2. Caesar had always been unwilling to delay at home longer than one night. 3. The Helvetians did not desire to receive the attacks of Caesar's troops until (**ad**) evening. 4. It was reported to Caesar that you had fought very fiercely in a double (-headed) battle. 5. I said I would be friendly to you if you would be friendly to me. 6. He says they took Orgetorix's son and daughter who were in the camp. 7. It is said that the Romans are not able to follow them because about a hundred soldiers are wounded. 8. Caesar said he would send a dispatch and message to the Lingones, if they tried to help the Helvetians. 9. I replied that a retreating (turned-away) army was seen by no one. 10. After this battle the Romans got-possession-of the Gauls' property.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea con-

491. **rērum**: see §499.

492. **quī cum**: *and when these* (*ambassadors*). **cum**: introduces **convēnissent, prōiēcissent, petīssent** and **iussisset.**

494. **eōs**: i. e., the Helvetians.

495. **iussisset**: the subject is Caesar.

quīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

498–504. **circiter hominum . . . contendērunt:** *about six thousand men . . . either overwhelmed with fear lest, after their arms were surrendered, they would be afflicted with punishment or, influenced by a hope of safety, because in so great a number of prisoners they thought their flight would either be concealed or entirely unobserved, after going out . . . , hastened.*

499. **Verbigenus:** see §85.

500–505. **perterritī, inductī, ēgressī:** agree with the subject of **contendērunt,** which is supplied from **hominum.**

501. **quod,** etc.: states the reason for **spē . . . inductī.**

503. **prīmā nocte:** *in the first part of the night.*

EXERCISES

Review: Gerund, §681.
Gerundive, §682.
Supine in **-um,** §737.
Five ways of denoting purpose, §740.
Declension of **deus,** §715.

1. The soldiers were sent to hunt up the slaves. (*Translate in five ways.*) 2. The Helvetians obeyed Caesar because they feared him. 3. Caesar demanded all who had fled to the Helvetians. 4. The hope of safety was taken away by the scarcity of grain. 5. The Helvetians thought that the gods were a help to the Romans. 6. Those things that Caesar demanded were brought because of their fear of the Romans.

505 **28.** Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in 510 fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit: et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 515 eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten-

505. **quod:** *and . . . this.* **quōrum:** the antecedent is **hīs,** the indirect object of **imperāvit.**

506. **utī conquīrerent et redūcerent:** *to search out and bring back* (the six thousand men who had escaped). **utī:** how distinguished from the present infinitive of **ūtor?** **sī sibi . . . vellent:** *if they wished to be blameless before him* (or *in his eyes*). The dative **sibi** indicates the person *in reference to whom* the statement is made.

507. **reductōs:** supply **eōs;** render by a temporal clause, *after they had been brought back.* **in . . . habuit:** *he treated them as enemies,* i. e., he put them to death.

508. **obsidibus . . . trāditīs:** *after the hostages,* etc., *had been given over.*

511. **omnibus . . . āmissīs:** *now that all the produce was lost.* **quō famem tolerārent:** *on which they could live.*

512. **ut eīs . . . facerent:** *to provide them* (the Helvetians, etc.) *with,* etc.

513. **ipsōs:** i. e., the Helvetians, etc.

514. **eā ratiōne:** *for this reason.*

515. **eum locum:** the subject of **vacāre.**

517. **suīs** = **Germānōrum.**

518. **prōvinciae:** see §546. **Bōiōs . . . concessit:** translate in the following order: concessit Aeduīs petentibus ut collocārent Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus quod erant cognitī ēgregiā virtūte.

Bōiōs is placed first for emphasis.

tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

519. **virtūte:** see §611.

520. **concessit:** *he gave permission.* **quibus** and **quōs:** i. e., the Boii; translate by demonstratives.

521. **parem . . . atque . . . erant:** *the same as they themselves were in.*

522. **atque** (ac) generally means *as* or *than* after words of likeness and comparison.

EXERCISES

Review: Subjunctive of Result, §437.
Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing, §430.
Sequence of Tenses, §371.
Questions, Direct and Indirect, §§368, 370.
Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective, §595.
Possessive Adjectives, §553.

1. Their hunger has very recently been so great that they are not able to fight. 2. I am afraid that the Helvetians have lost everything. 3. They feared that the Romans would not leave them anything. 4. Were not the Helvetians equal to the Romans in bravery? 5. The Helvetians were not equal to the Romans, were they? 6. Caesar asked from what place the Tulingi had started out. 7. I do not remember whether the Helvetians got back their property. 8. I do not know who has set-fire-to my home and yours. 9. The Helvetians were so cast down that they returned to their homes. 10. Do you think they made war on the Romans afterward?

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināti̇m ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus

524. **et:** connects **repertae** and **relātae.** **quibus in tabulīs:** *in which.*

525. **ratiō cōnfecta erat quī:** *a list had been made up (telling) what.*

domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

526. **eōrum**: modifies **numerus**.
527. **summa erat capitum**: *the aggregate of persons was.*
528. **mīlium**: genitive of measure.
530. **ex hīs**: supply **erant**, of which **nōnāgintā duo** is subject.

In reading the numerals, give the Latin words representing them, instead of the abbreviations: **CCLXIII**, **ducenta sexāgintā tria**; **XXXVI**, **trīgintā sex**; **XIIII**, **quattuordecim**; **XXIII**, **vīgintī tria**; **XXXII**, **trīgintā duo**; **CCCLXVIII**, **trecenta sexāgintā octō**; **C et X**, **centum et decem**. See App. 47 and 50.

531. **ad**: *about;* here an adverb modifying the numeral adjective. **fuērunt**: agrees with the plural predicate.
533. **mīlium**: see §648, *c*.

EXERCISES

Review: **Cum** Causal, §694.
Cum Temporal, §701.
Quod, quia, quoniam, §692.
Numerals, §708.

1. When the Helvetians went out to the war, there were three hundred sixty eight thousand men, women, and children. 2. When they had returned, there were one hundred ten thousand. 3. All these persons (**caput**) had been lost because (as they said) Orgetorix had been desirous of royal power. 4. Since the Helvetians had a narrow territory, they desired to go out of their territory. 5. But they were conquered because they did not have enough (of) men.

C. IULII CAESARIS

BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS

(*The first three chapters are given in simplified form.*)

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae. Nostrā linguā Celtās Gallōs appellāmus. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit; Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, et nōn saepe mercātōrēs ad eōs commeant et ea quae animōs effēminant important; et proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Ob eam causam Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut in Germānōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Hōrum omnium ūna pars, quam Gallī obtinent, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus initium capiunt; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occidentem sōlem et septentriōnem.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent. Orgetorīx, "Facile est," inquit, "quod virtūte omnibus praestāmus, tōtīus Galliae imperium occupāre." Helvētiīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī nostram prōvinciam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Ob eās rēs Helvētiī et minus lātē errābant et minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gerēbant. Ob eam causam hī hominēs, quī erant bellī cupidī, magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs fīnēs, ut exīstimābant, habēbant, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ducenta et quadrāgintā, in lātitūdinem centum et octōgintā patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī, Helvētiī cōnstituērunt omnia ad profectiōnem comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in

cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, persuādet ut hoc in cīvitāte suā faceret, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Orgetorīx, "Facile est," inquit, "cōnāta nostra perficere, propterea quod meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum; atque Helvētiī potentissimī sunt omnium Gallōrum; meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō." Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae imperium occupāre cōnantur.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exustīs, ūnā cum eīs proficī-

scantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Ɲōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar,

quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et

quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tem-

pore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque

ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius

hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae pollicēantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flagitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī

āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō

ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animad-

vertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat,

quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum

quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab cōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab eīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē

locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō · praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impētūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vīdēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere inter-

missō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit: et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,

ex suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

SELECTED RULES

GENDER

GENERAL RULES

Masculine.—The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are masculine. App. 13, *a*.

Feminine.—The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, and trees are feminine. App. 13, *b*.

Neuter.—Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter. App. 13, *c*.

SPECIAL RULES

First Declension.—Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except names of male beings. §59.

Second Declension.—Nouns of the second declension ending in **-um** are neuter; others are masculine. §60.

Third Declension.—*a*. Masculine are names of male beings and nouns ending in **-or, -ōs, -er, -es.** §98, 1.

b. Feminine are names of female beings and nouns ending in **-ō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -x,** and "consonant-and-s." §98, 2.

c. Neuter are all others; namely, nouns in **-c, -i, -t, -y, -l, -a, -n, -e; -ar, -ur, -us.** §98, 3.

Fourth Declension.—Nouns of the fourth declension ending in **-us** are masculine, except **domus, manus,** and **Īdūs,** which are feminine; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. §291.

Fifth Declension.—Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs,** which is usually masculine. §298.

AGREEMENT

Verb.—A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number. §34.

Adjective.—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. §63.

Appositive.—An appositive or a predicate noun agrees in case with the word it explains. §85.

Relative Pronoun.—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause. §152.

CASES

NOMINATIVE

Subject.—The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case. §32.

GENITIVE

General Use.—A noun which modifies another noun and does not mean the same person or thing is put in the genitive. §35.

Possessive.—The possessive genitive is used to denote the person or thing that possesses something. §489.

Partitive.—The partitive genitive (or genitive of the whole) is used to express the whole of which a part is mentioned. §491.

Objective.—An objective genitive is used to denote the person or thing that receives the act or feeling implied in a noun or adjective. §499.

Description.—The ablative, or genitive, modified by an adjective, describes a person or thing by naming some quality. §649.

DATIVE

Indirect Object.—The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative. §53.

With Special Verbs.—A dative which is translated by a direct object is used with most Latin verbs signifying *benefit* or *injure, please* or *displease, serve* or *resist, trust* or *distrust, command* or *obey; believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten,* and the like. §529.

With Compound Verbs.—The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.** §537.

Purpose.—The dative is used to denote the purpose which a thing serves. §544.

With Adjectives.—Adjectives meaning *near,* also *fit, friendly, similar,* and the like, with their opposites, may have a modifying dative. §546.

Agent.—The dative is used with the second (passive) periphrastic conjugation to denote the person who has the thing to do. §727.

ACCUSATIVE

Direct Object.—The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative case. §33.

Extent.—The accusative without a preposition is used to express duration of time and extent of space. §327.

Place to Which.—Place to which is denoted by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, omit the preposition. §460.

Subject of Infinitive.—The accusative is used as the subject of infinitives. §521.

ABLATIVE

Agent.—Agency with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. §306.

Means.—Means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. §313.

Time.—Time, when or within which, is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. §320.

Absolute.—A noun and an agreeing participle (or their equivalents) are used in the ablative independently. §398.

Place from Which.—Place from which is denoted by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**; but names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, omit the preposition. §468.

Place in Which.—Place in which is denoted by the ablative with **in**, but names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, omit the preposition and use the locative if there is one. §476.

Separation.—Separation is expressed by the ablative, with or without **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. §609.

Cause.—Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition. §611.

Comparison.—A comparative without **quam** is followed by the ablative. §618.

Measure of Difference.—The ablative without a preposition is used with comparatives to express the measure (or degree) of difference. §620.

Manner.—Manner is expressed by the ablative with either **cum** or a modifying adjective, rarely with both. §627.

With Certain Deponent Verbs.—**Utor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor,** and their compounds, govern an ablative which is translated by a direct object. §635.

Accompaniment.—Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum.** §642.

Description.—The ablative, or genitive, modified by an adjective, describes a person or thing by naming some quality. §649.

Specification.—The ablative, without a preposition, is used to denote that in respect to which a statement is true. §656.

MOODS

INFINITIVES

With Verbs of Saying, etc.—After verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving,* and the like, the main verb of a statement is in the infinitive mood with its subject in the accusative. §522.

Indirect Discourse.—In indirect discourse main clauses containing a statement require the infinitive with subject accusative; subordinate verbs require the subjunctive. §752.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Sequence of Tenses.—If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, a subordinate subjunctive verb is present or perfect; if the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect, a subordinate subjunctive verb is imperfect or pluperfect. The present and imperfect subjunctive denote incomplete action; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote completed action. §371.

Indirect Question.—The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. §370.

Purpose.—The subjunctive is used to express purpose, introduced by **ut** (affirmative), **nē** (negative). §414.

With Verbs of Fearing.—Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with **nē** (affirmative), **ut** (negative). §430.

Result.—Result is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** (affirmative), **ut nōn** (negative). §437.

Commands.—(1) A command in the first person is expressed by the first person plural of the present subjunctive, the negative being **nē**. §673, 1.

(2) A command in the third person is expressed by the present subjunctive, the negative being **nē**. §673, 3.

Wishes.—Future (possible) wishes are expressed by the present subjunctive with or without **utinam**; present and past (impossible) wishes are expressed by the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **utinam**. The negative is **nē**. §782.

IMPERATIVE

Commands.—A positive command in the second person is expressed by the present imperative. The negative is usually expressed by **nōlī** or **nōlīte**, the present infinitive. §673, 2.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

With Quod, Quia, Quoniam.—**Quod, quia, quoniam** are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted. §692.

With Cum.—**Cum**, meaning *since* or *because*, is used with the subjunctive. §694.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

With Cum.—When the main verb is historical, **cum** temporal takes the subjunctive; otherwise the indicative is regularly used. §701.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

Assumed.—Assumed and more vivid future conditional sentences have both verbs in the indicative. §764.

Contrary to Fact.—Contrary to fact conditional sentences have both verbs in the imperfect subjunctive, if referring to present time; in the pluperfect subjunctive, if referring to past time. §772.

Less Vivid Future.—Less vivid future conditional sentences have both verbs in the present (or perfect) subjunctive. §774.

SUPINES

Accusative.—The accusative of the supine is used with verbs of motion to express purpose. §737.

Ablative.—The ablative of the supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. §739.

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

In this Appendix the regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as **eō, nihil.**
   b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as **laudandus, laudant.**
   c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than **s**; as **laudem, laudat.**

2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before **nf, ns, nx,** and **nct**; as **īnferō, cōnsul, iūnxī, iūnctum.**
   b. When it results from contraction; as **īsset,** for **iisset.**

3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. In monosyllables not ending in **b, d, l, m,** or **t**; as **mē, hīc**; but **ab, ad.**

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a = *a* in *Cuba*	**ā** = *ah!*
e = *e* in *net*	**ē** = *e* in *they*
i = *i* in *pin*	**ī** = *i* in *machine*
o = *o* in *for* (not as in *got*)	**ō** = *oh!*
u = *oo* in *foot*	**ū** = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*; it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*
oe = *oi* in *oil*
au = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ee*. The diphthong appears in **cui, huic, cuius,** and **huius.**

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in **maior, eius, Troia,** and **cuius,** though **i** was written only once, it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior, eiius, Troiia,** and **cuiius.** The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet.*

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = *ai* in *aisle*
ei = *ey* in *they*
oi = *oi* in *oil*
ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*
i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*
n before **c, g, q,** and **x** = *ng* in *sing*
r pronounced distinctly
s as in *this,* never as in *these*
t as in *tin,* never as in *nation*

v = *w*
x = *ks*
ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*
bs, bt = *ps, pt*
qu = *qu* in *quart*
ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*
su = *sw* in **suādeō, suāvis, suēscō,** and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in **mittō, annus,** both consonants should be sounded; as they are in *out-talk, pen-knife.* We sound only one consonant in *ditty, penny*

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of **iaciō,** the form **iciō** was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as **dēiciō,** pronounced as if **dēiiciō**; **abiciō,** as if **abiiciō.**

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as **fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.**

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (**b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph,** or **th,** followed by **l** or **r**) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as **pa-tris, a-grī.** But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as **pat-ris, ag-rī.**

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as **mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of **laudō,** and the first syllable of **eius** (**5,** *a*).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants **x** and **z.** The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: **est** is **ĕst,** not **ēst.** The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (**8,** *c*) lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are

pronounced distinctly in **mit-tō** (6, *a*), **an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.**

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then **pat-ris, ag-rī** (8, *b*). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as **om'nis.**

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as **dīvī'sa, appel'lō, in'colunt.**

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as **Gallia'que.**

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine.*

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine.*

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter.*

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GENITIVE SINGULAR
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-ī
III.	consonant	-is
	i	
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēī or -eī

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in **-ā**; the nominative in **-a**. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, F., *tongue, language*

		SINGULAR	ENDINGS
Nom.	lingua	a language (*as subject*)	**-a**
Gen.	linguae	of a language, language's	**-ae**
Dat.	linguae	to *or* for a language	**-ae**
Acc.	linguam	a language (*as object*)	**-am**
Voc.	lingua	O (*or* thou) language	**-a**
Abl.	linguā, by, from, in, *or* with a language		**-ā**

		PLURAL	
Nom.	linguae	languages (*as subject*)	**-ae**
Gen.	linguārum	of languages, languages'	**-ārum**
Dat.	linguīs	to *or* for languages	**-īs**
Acc.	linguās	languages (*as object*)	**-ās**
Voc.	linguae	O (*or* ye) languages	**-ae**
Abl.	linguīs, by, from, in, *or* with languages		**-īs**

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as **Belgae**, M., *the Belgae;* **Matrona**, M., *the* (*river*) *Marne.*

b. The locative singular ends in **-ae**; as **Samarobrīvae**, *at Samarobriva.*

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in **-o**; the nominative masculine in **-us, -er, -ir**; the nominative neuter in **-um.**

	animus, M., *mind*	**puer**, M., *boy*	**ager**, M., *field*	**vir**, M., *man*	**bellum**, N., *war*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	animus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
Gen.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
Dat.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Acc.	animum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
Voc.	anime	puer	ager	vir	bellum
Abl.	animō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
			PLURAL		
Nom.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
Gen.	animōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	animōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
Voc.	animī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
Abl.	animīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

	fīlius, M., *son*	**Gāius**, M., *Gaius*	**Bōī**, M., *the Boii*	**deus**, M., *god*	
	SINGULAR	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	fīlius	Gāius	Bōī	deus	diī, dī
Gen.	fīlī	Gāī	Bōiōrum	deī	deōrum
Dat.	fīliō	Gāiō	Bōīs	deō	diīs, dīs
Acc.	fīlium	Gāium	Bōiōs	deum	deōs
Voc.	fīlī	Gāī	Bōī	deus	diī, dī
Abl.	fīliō	Gāiō	Bōīs	deō	diīs, dīs

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). **Vulgus**, *crowd*, is usually neuter. **Locus**, M., *place*, has plural **loca**, N., *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī**; as **Agedincī**, *at Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in **-ius** regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī** and **-ie**, and nouns in **-ium** form the genitive in **-ī**. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; **cōnsi'lī**, *of a plan;* **ini'tī**, *of a beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in **-āius**, **-ēius**, and **-ōius** are declined like **Gāius** and **Bōī**.

e. A few words have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies*.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i**. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p**. The nominative ending is **-s**.

prīnceps, M., *chief*
Stem **prīncip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
Gen.	prīncipis	prīncipum
Dat.	prīncipī	prīncipibus
Acc.	prīncipem	prīncipēs
Voc.	prīnceps	prīncipēs
Abl.	prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t**. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is **-s**, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

	laus, F., *praise* Stem **laud-**		**mīles**, M., *soldier* Stem **mīlit-**		**caput**, N., *head* Stem **capit-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
Gen.	laudis	laudum	mīlitis	mīlitum	capitis	capitum
Dat.	laudī	laudibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	capitī	capitibus
Acc.	laudem	laudēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	caput	capita
Voc.	laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
Abl.	laude	laudibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	capite	capitibus

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, **g** or **c**. The nominative ending is **-s**, which unites with the final **g** or **c** of the stem to form **x**.

	lēx, F., *law* Stem **lēg-**		**dux**, M., *leader* Stem **duc-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
Gen.	lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
Dat.	lēgī	lēgibus	ducī	ducibus
Acc.	lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
Voc.	lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
Abl.	lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, **l** or **r**. There is no nominative case-ending.

	cōnsul, M., *consul* Stem **cōnsul-**		**pater**, M., *father* Stem **patr-**		**aequor**, N., *sea* Stem **aequor-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
Gen.	cōnsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
Dat.	cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	patrī	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
Acc.	cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
Voc.	cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
Abl.	cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, **m** or **n**. There is no nominative case-ending, except in **hiems**, the only stem in **-m**. The nominative of the masculines and feminines usually drops the final **n** and changes the preceding vowel to **ō**.

	homō, M., F., *human being* Stem **homin-**		**ratiō**, F., *reason* Stem **ratiōn-**		**flūmen**, N., *river* Stem **flūmin-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
Gen.	hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
Dat.	hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
Acc.	hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
Voc.	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
Abl.	homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in **s** (apparently **r**, because **s** changes to **r** between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in **s**, sometimes in **r**.

	mōs, M., *custom* Stem **mōs-**		**honor**, M., *honor* Stem **honōs-**		**tempus**, N., *time* Stem **tempos-**	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
Gen.	mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
Dat.	mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	temporī	temporibus
Acc.	mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
Voc.	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
Abl.	mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs** if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in **-e, -al, -ar.**

25. Theoretically the **i** should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have accusative **-em**, ablative **-e**, accusative plural either **-ēs** or **-īs**. Neuters have ablative **-ī**.

	turris, F., *tower* Stem **turri-**	**hostis**, M., F., *enemy* Stem **hosti-**	**caedēs**, F., *slaughter* Stem **caedi-**
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	turris	hostis	caedēs
Gen.	turris	hostis	caedis
Dat.	turrī	hostī	caedī
Acc.	turrim *or* -em	hostem	caedem
Voc.	turris	hostis	caedēs
Abl.	turrī *or* -e	hoste	caede
		PLURAL	
Nom.	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
Gen.	turrium	hostium	caedium
Dat.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus
Acc.	turrīs *or* -ēs	hostēs *or* -īs	caedēs *or* -īs
Voc.	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
Abl.	turribus	hostibus	caedibus

	cubīle, N., *couch* Stem **cubīli-**	**vectīgal**, N., *tax* Stem **vectīgāli-**
	SINGULAR	
Nom.	cubīle	vectīgal
Gen.	cubīlis	vectīgālis
Dat.	cubīlī	vectīgālī
Acc.	cubīle	vectīgal
Voc.	cubīle	vectīgal
Abl.	cubīlī	vectīgālī

	PLURAL	
Nom.	cubīlia	vectīgālia
Gen.	cubīlium	vectīgālium
Dat.	cubīlibus	vectīgālibus
Acc.	cubīlia	vectīgālia
Voc.	cubīlia	vectīgālia
Abl.	cubīlibus	vectīgālibus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), M., *the Saône*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), M., *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, M., *fire*, and **nāvis**, F., *ship*, often have ablative **-ī**. **Mare**, N., *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās, -tātis.**

	cliēns, M., *retainer* Stem **client-**		**urbs**, F., *city* Stem **urb-**	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	cliēns	clientēs	urbs	urbēs
Gen.	clientis	clientium	urbis	urbium
Dat.	clientī	clientibus	urbī	urbibus
Acc.	clientem	clientēs *or* **-īs**	urbem	urbēs *or* **-īs**
Voc.	cliēns	clientēs	urbs	urbēs
Abl.	cliente	clientibus	urbe	urbibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

	senex, M., *old man*	**os**, N., *bone*	**vīs**, F., *force*	**bōs**, M., F., *ox, cow*	**Iuppiter**, M., *Jupiter*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
Gen.	senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
Dat.	senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
Acc.	senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
Voc.	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
Abl.	sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove

	PLURAL			
Nom.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
Gen.	senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum *or* boum
Dat.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus
Acc.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
Voc.	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
Abl.	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus *or* būbus

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (**13**). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules:

a. Masculine are nouns in **ō** (except those in **-dō, -gō, -iō**), **-or, -ōs, -er, -es.**

b. Feminine are nouns in **-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x,** and in **-s** when preceded by a consonant.

c. Neuter are all others; namely, nouns in **-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.**

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in **-u**; nominative masculine in **-us**; nominative neuter in **-ū.**

	passus, M., *pace*		**cornū,** N., *horn*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	passuī	passibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
Voc.	passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

a. **Domus,** *house,* **manus,** *hand,* **Īdūs,** *Ides,* are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in **-us** sometimes ends in **-ū.**

c. The dative and ablative plurals of a few nouns sometimes end in **-ubus.**

d. **Domus,** F., *house,* has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs	domuum
Dat.	domuī *or* domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs
Voc.	domus	domūs
Abl.	domō *or* domū	domibus
Loc.	domī (*at home*)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in -ē; nominative in -ēs. Usually feminine.

	diēs, M., *day*		rēs, F., *thing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Voc.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. Diēs in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is -ēī after a vowel, -eī after a consonant. -ē is sometimes used instead of either.

c. Diēs and rēs are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. Aciēs, spēs, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
Voc.	magne	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

līber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

noster, *our*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
Acc.	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Voc.	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN *-ĪUS*

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -īus (in **alter**, usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **ūllus**, *any*, **nūllus**, *no*, **ūnus**, *one*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **magnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**.

	SINGULAR					
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only **-i** in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

fortior, *braver*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but **plūs,** *more,* is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	Neut.	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūs	plūrēs *or* -īs	plūra
Abl.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

35. One Termination.

vetus, *old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Voc.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs **prīnceps,** *chief.* **Dīves,** *rich,* also belongs here, but has **dītia** for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three Terminations.

ācer, *sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācrēs *or* -īs	ācria
Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. Here belong **celeber,** *famous,* **equester,** *equestrian,* **pedester,** *pedestrian;* names of months in **-ber;** and a few others.

37. Two Terminations.

omnis, *all*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnēs *or* -īs	omnia
Voc.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

a. Here belong all adjectives in **-is, e.**

38. One Termination.

audāx, *bold*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs *or* -īs	audācia
Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

oriēns, *rising*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs *or* -īs	orientia
Voc.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Abl.	oriente *or* -ī	oriente *or* -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in **-āns** and **-ēns.** Participles usually have the ablative singular in **-ī** only when used as adjectives; in **e** when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are **-ior, -ius;** superlative, **-issimus, -a, -um.** They are added to the *base* of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, *high;* altior, **-ius,** *higher;* altissimus, **-a, -um,** *highest;* fortis, *brave;* fortior, *braver;* fortissimus, *bravest.*

40. Adjectives in **-er** form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: **ācer,** *sharp* (base, ācr-), ācrior, ācerrimus.

41. Most adjectives in **-ilis** are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the *base* of the positive. They are **facilis,** *easy;* **difficilis,** *difficult;* **similis,** *like;* **dissimilis,** *unlike;* **humilis,** *low;* **gracilis,** *slender.* Example: **facilis, facilior, facillimus.**

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, melior, optimus, *good, better, best.*
malus, peior, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst.*
magnus, maior, maximus, *great, greater, greatest.*
parvus, minor, minimus, *small, less, least.*
multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most.*
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *on the right, dexterous,* etc.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(**citra,** adv., *on this side*) **citerior, citimus,** *hither, hithermost.*
(**dē,** prep., *down*) **dēterior, dēterrimus,** *worse, worst.*
(**intrā,** prep., *in, within*) **interior, intimus,** *inner, inmost.*
(**prae,** prep., *before*) **prior, prīmus,** *former, first.*
(**prope,** adv., *near*) **propior, proximus,** *nearer, next.*
(**ultrā,** adv., *beyond*) **ulterior, ultimus,** *farther, farthest.*

44. Of the following, the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), *outer, outmost.*
īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus (īmus), *lower, lowest.*
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), *latter, last.*
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), *higher, highest.*

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis,** *more,* and **maximē,** *most.* Example: **idōneus,** *suitable;* **magis idōneus,** *more suitable;* **maximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-e** to the base; as lātus, *wide,* lātē, *widely;* from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in **nt** add only **-er;** as audāx, audācis, *bold,* audācter, *boldly;* fortis, *brave,* fortiter, *bravely;* prūdēns, prūdentis, *prudent,* prūdenter, *prudently.* But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as multum, *much,* facile, *easily.*

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as lātius, *more widely;* audācius, *more boldly;* fortius, *more bravely;* prūdentius, *more prudently;* plūs, *more,* facilius, *more easily.*

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as lātissimē, *most widely;* audācissimē, *most boldly;* fortissimē, *most bravely;* prūdentissimē, *most prudently;* plūrimum, *most,* facillimē, *most easily.*

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals,* answering the question, *how many?* as *one, two,* etc.; *ordinals,* answering the question *which in order?* as *first, second,* etc.; and *distributives,* answering the question *how many each?* as *one each, two each,* etc.

Roman Numerals	*Cardinal*	*Ordinal*	*Distributive*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter	bīnī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī *or* trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī

XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus	duodētrīcēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus	ūndētrīcēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī
C.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singulī
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending **-ēnsimus** is often used for **-ēsimus.**

48. Of the cardinals, **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs** are declined; **quattuor** to **centum,** inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī,** inclusive, are declined like the plural of **magnus (31); mīlle** as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of **cubīle (25)** and

generally spelled **mīlia**. Ordinals are declined like **magnus**, distributives like the plural of **magnus**.

49. For the declension of **ūnus**, see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, **ūna castra**, *one camp*. **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	duo, *two*			**trēs**, *three*	
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by **et**; as **trēs et quadrāgintā**, *three and forty;* or the tens may precede without an **et**; as **quadrāgintā trēs**, *forty three.* In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without **et**; as **ducentī (et) vīgintī**, *two hundred and twenty.* In combinations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English without **et**; as **duo mīlia sescentī vīgintī sex**, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six.*

PRONOUNS

51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, **ego**, *I*		Second person, **tū**, *you* (*thou*)	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually **is**, *he*, **ea**, *she*, **id**, *it*, 57; or, when *him*, *them*, etc., refer to the subject, by the reflexive pronoun.

b. **nostrum** and **vestrum** are the forms used as partitive genitives; **nostrī** and **vestrī**, as objective genitives.

c. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, **nōbīscum**, *with us.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

	First person, **meī**, *of myself*		Second person, **tuī**, *of yourself*		Third person, **suī**, *of himself, etc.*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Gen.	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

a. The preposition **cum** is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, **sēcum**, *with himself.*

53. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. **meus, -a, -um,** *my*
2d pers. **tuus, -a, -um,** *your* (of one)
3d pers. **suus, -a, -um,** *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)
eius (gen. sing. of **is**) *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)

noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one)
suus, -a, -um, *their* (when referring to the subject)
eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of **is**) *their* (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. **hīc,** *this* (near the speaker)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hīc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, **hoc**, is pronounced **hocc** when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See **6**, *a*.

55. **iste**, *that* (near the person spoken to)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. **Ille**, *that* (something more remote) is declined like **iste**.

57. **is**, *this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

58. **īdem**, *the same*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

59. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

60. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Mas.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quīcumque** and **quisquis**, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The **quī** of **quīcumque** is declined regularly. **Quisquis**, **quicquid** (**quidquid**), and **quōquō** are the only common forms of **quisquis**.

b. The preposition **cum** is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun; as **quibuscum**, *with whom*.

61. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, **quae**, **quod**, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. **Quis**, **quid**, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

	SINGULAR	
	Mas. and Fem.	*Neut.*
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis, quī,** and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE	ADJECTIVE
quis, quid, *any one*	**quī, quae (qua), quod,** *any*
aliquis, aliquid, *some one*	**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod,** *some*
quispiam, quidpiam, *some one*	**quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam,** *some*
quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), *any one* (abl. singular and entire plural supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**)	(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet** *any one*, etc., *you like*	**quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs** / **quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet** *any you like*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *a certain man*	**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam,** *a certain*
quisque, quidque, *each*	**quisque, quaeque, quodque,** *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua.**

b. In the declension of **quīdam, m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam.**

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	**ā**	**-āre**
II.	**ē**	**-ēre**
III.	**e (i, u)**	**-ere**
IV.	**ī**	**-īre**

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive,*—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active,*—present participle; gerund: *passive,*—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: *active,*—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive,*—future infinitive; *active,*—future participle; supine: *passive,*—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of **laudō** are:

laudō, laudāre (present stem, **laudā**).
laudāvī, (perfect stem, **laudāv**).
laudātum (supine stem, **laudāt**).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature, so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: **sum, esse, fuī**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum	**sumus**	**sim**	**sīmus**
es	**estis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
est	**sunt**	**sit**	**sint**

Imperfect		*Imperfect*			
eram	erāmus	essem	(*or* forem)	essēmus	(*or* forēmus)
erās	erātis	essēs	(*or* forēs)	essētis	(*or* forētis)
erat	erant	esset	(*or* foret)	essent	(*or* forent)

Future

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

Perfect		*Perfect*	
fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuērunt *or* -ēre	fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

Future Perfect

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. es este

Future

2d pers. estō estōte
3d pers. estō suntō

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse
Perf. fuisse
Fut. futūrus (esse) *or* fore

67. FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudō	laudāmus	laudem	laudēmus
laudās	laudātis	laudēs	laudētis
laudat	laudant	laudet	laudent
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
laudābam	laudābāmus	laudārem	laudārēmus
laudābās	laudābātis	laudārēs	laudārētis
laudābat	laudābant	laudāret	laudārent
Future			
laudābō	laudābimus		
laudābis	laudābitis		
laudābit	laudābunt		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
laudāvī	laudāvimus	laudāverim	laudāverīmus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudāverīs	laudāverītis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt *or* -ēre	laudāverit	laudāverint
Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudāveram	laudāverāmus	laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis	laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāverat	laudāverant	laudāvisset	laudāvissent
Future Perfect			
laudāverō	laudāverimus		
laudāveris	laudāveritis		
laudāverit	laudāverint		

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	laudā	laudāte

Future

2d pers.	laudātō	laudātōte
3d pers.	laudātō	laudantō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudāre
Perf.	laudāvisse
Fut.	laudātūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	laudāns
Fut.	laudātūrus

SUPINE

Acc.	laudātum
Abl.	laudātū

GERUND

Gen.	laudandī
Dat.	laudandō
Acc.	laudandum
Abl.	laudandō

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris *or* -re	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

Imperfect

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris *or* -re	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur

Future

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis *or* -re	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
lauder	laudēmur
laudēris *or* -re	laudēminī
laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris *or* -re	laudārēminī
laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect		*Perfect*	
laudātus sum	laudātī sumus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus es	laudātī estis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt	laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant	laudātus esset	laudātī essent

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	laudāre	laudāminī

Future

2d pers.	laudātor	
3d pers.	laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudārī
Perf.	laudātus esse
Fut.	laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	laudātus
Fut.	laudandus

68. SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

Imperfect

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

Future

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

Perfect

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt *or* -ēre

Perfect

monuerim	monuerīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

Pluperfect

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Future Perfect

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monē monēte

Future

2d pers. monētō monētōte
3d pers. monētō monentō

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre
Perf. monuisse
Fut. monitūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns *Fut.* monitūrus

SUPINE

Acc. monitum *Abl.* monitū

GERUND

Gen. monendī
Dat. monendō
Acc. monendum
Abl. monendō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **moneor, monērī, monitus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
moneor	monēmur
monēris *or* -re	monēminī
monētur	monentur

Imperfect

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris *or* -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis *or* -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Pluperfect

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
monear	moneāmur
moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus sīs	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

Pluperfect

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
Present			
2d pers.	monēre	monēminī	*Pres.* monērī
Future			*Perf.* monitus esse
2d pers.	monētor		*Fut.* monitum īrī
3d pers.	monētor	monentor	

PARTICIPLE

Perf. monitus
Fut. monendus

69. THIRD CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcō	dūcimus	dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcis	dūcitis	dūcās	dūcātis
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcat	dūcant
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūceret	dūcerent
Future			
dūcam	dūcēmus		
dūcēs	dūcētis		
dūcet	dūcent		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
dūxī	dūximus	dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxistī	dūxistis	dūxerīs	dūxerītis
dūxit	dūxērunt *or* -ēre	dūxerit	dūxerint

Pluperfect	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

Pluperfect	
dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

Future Perfect	
dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

IMPERATIVE

	Present	
2d pers.	dūc*	dūcite
	Future	
2d pers.	dūcitō	dūcitōte
3d pers.	dūcitō	dūcuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	dūcere
Perf.	dūxisse
Fut.	ductūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Prcs.	dūcēns
Fut.	ductūrus

SUPINE

Acc.	ductum
Abl.	ductū

GERUND

Gen.	dūcendī
Dat.	dūcendō
Acc.	dūcendum
Abl.	dūcendō

THIRD CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris *or* -re	dūciminī
dūcitur	dūcuntur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris *or* -re	dūcāminī
dūcātur	dūcantur

* Irregular for **dūce.**

Imperfect

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris *or* -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

Imperfect

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris *or* -re	dūcerēminī
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

Future

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris *or* -re	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

Perfect

ductus sum	ductī sumus
ductus es	ductī estis
ductus est	ductī sunt

Perfect

ductus sim	ductī sīmus
ductus sīs	ductī sītis
ductus sit	ductī sint

Pluperfect

ductus eram	ductī erāmus
ductus erās	ductī erātis
ductus erat	ductī erant

Pluperfect

ductus essem	ductī essēmus
ductus essēs	ductī essētis
ductus esset	ductī essent

Future Perfect

ductus erō	ductī erimus
ductus eris	ductī eritis
ductus erit	ductī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	dūcere	dūciminī

Future

2d pers.	dūcitor	
3d pers.	dūcitor	dūcuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	dūcī
Perf.	ductus esse
Fut.	ductum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus
Fut. dūcendus

70. FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

Imperfect

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

Perfect

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt *or* -ēre

Pluperfect

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

Future Perfect

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

Perfect

audīverim	audīverīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis
audīverit	audīverint

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
Present			
2d pers. audī	audīte	*Pres.*	audīre
Future		*Perf.*	audīvisse
2d pers. audītō	audītōte	*Fut.*	audītūrus (esse)
3d pers. audītō	audiuntō		

PARTICIPLE			GERUND	
Pres. audiēns	*Fut.* audītūrus		*Gen.*	audiendī
SUPINE			*Dat.*	audiendō
			Acc.	audiendum
Acc. audītum	*Abl.* audītū		*Abl.*	audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audior, audīrī, audītus sum**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
audior	audīmur	audiar	audiāmur
audīris *or* -re	audīminī	audiāris *or* -re	audiāminī
audītur	audiuntur	audiātur	audiantur
Imperfect		*Imperfect*	
audiēbar	audiēbāmur	audīrer	audīrēmur
audiēbāris *or* -re	audiēbāminī	audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audiēbātur	audiēbantur	audīrētur	audīrentur
Future			
audiar	audiēmur		
audiēris *or* -re	audiēminī		
audiētur	audientur		
Perfect		*Perfect*	
audītus sum	audītī sumus	audītus sim	audītī sīmus
audītus es	audītī estis	audītus sīs	audītī sītis
audītus est	audītī sunt	audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect		*Pluperfect*	
audītus eram	audītī erāmus	audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis	audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus erat	audītī erant	audītus esset	audītī essent

Future Perfect

audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	audīre	audīminī

Future

2d pers.	audītor	
3d pers.	audītor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīrī
Perf. audītus esse
Fut. audītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. audītus
Fut. audiendus

71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

Future

capiam	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capient

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiam	capiāmus
capiās	capiātis
capiat	capiant

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

Perfect	
cēpī	cēpimus
cēpistī	cēpistis
cēpit	cēpērunt *or* -ēre

Perfect	
cēperim	cēperīmus
cēperīs	cēperītis
cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect	
cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

Pluperfect	
cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

Future Perfect	
cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	cape	capite

Future

2d pers.	capitō	capitōte
3d pers.	capitō	capiuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere
Perf.	cēpisse
Fut.	captūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	capiēns	*Fut.*	captūrus

GERUND

Gen.	capiendī
Dat.	capiendō
Acc.	capiendum
Abl.	capiendō

SUPINE

Acc.	captum	*Abl.*	captū

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **capior, capī, captus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capior	capimur
caperis *or* -re	capiminī
capitur	capiuntur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris *or* -re	capiāminī
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris *or* -re	capiēbāminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris *or* -re	caperēminī
caperētur	caperentur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris *or* -re	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

Perfect

captus sum	captī sumus
captus es	captī estis
captus est	captī sunt

Perfect

captus sim	captī sīmus
captus sīs	captī sītis
captus sit	captī sint

Pluperfect

captus eram	captī erāmus
captus erās	captī erātis
captus erat	captī erant

Pluperfect

captus essem	captī essēmus
captus essēs	captī essētis
captus esset	captī essent

Future Perfect

captus erō	captī erimus
captus eris	captī eritis
captus erit	captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers.	capere	capiminī

Future

2d pers.	capitor	
3d pers.	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capī
Perf.	captus esse
Fut.	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus
Fut. capiendus

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in **v**, the **v** is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in **-āvī**, **-ēvī**, and **-ōvī**, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop **ve**, **vē**, or **vi** before **r** or **s**.

Examples: **laudāstī** for **laudāvistī**; **laudāsse** for **laudāvisse**; **dēlērunt** for **dēlēvērunt**; **nōrim** for **nōverim**.

b. Perfects in **-īvī**, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop **v** in all forms. When the resulting combination is **iis** it usually contracts to **īs**.

Examples: **audiī** for **audīvī**; **audieram** for **audīveram**; **audīsse** for **audīvisse**.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, *urge*	**vereor**, *fear*	**sequor**, *follow*	**partior**, *share*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	hortātūrus (esse)	veritūrus (esse)	secūtūrus (esse)	partītūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Perf.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
Fut. Pass.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partītum, -tū

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

74. Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. **laudātūrus sum,** *I am about to praise, I intend to praise.*
Imp. **laudātūrus eram,** *I was about to praise, I intended to praise,* etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity.* It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. **laudandus sum,** *I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.*
Imp. **laudandus eram,** *I was to be praised, I had to be praised,* etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of **sum,** see **66.** **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.** **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns.**

78. In **absum,** sum is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f,** giving **āfuī, āfutūrus,** etc. There is a present participle **absēns.**

79. In **prōsum, sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam.** The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.**

80. **Possum,** *be able, can,* is a compound of **pot-** and **sum.**

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim
Imp.	poteram	possem
Fut.	poterō	
Perf.	potuī	potuerim
Plup.	potueram	potuissem
Fut. Perf.	potuerō	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	posse	*Pres.* potēns
Perf.	potuisse	

81. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
Imp.	ferēbam	ferrem
Fut.	feram	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem
Fut. Perf.	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	fer	ferte	*Pres.*	ferre	*Pres.*	ferēns
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	*Perf.*	tulisse	*Fut.*	lātūrus
	fertō	feruntō	*Fut.*	lātūrus (esse)		

GERUND	SUPINE
ferendī, etc.	lātum, -tū

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	feror, ferris, fertur, ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	ferar
Imp.	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	ferar	
Perf.	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plup.	lātus eram	lātus essem
Fut. Perf.	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. ferre,	feriminī	*Pres.* ferrī	*Perf.* lātus
Fut. fertor		*Perf.* lātus esse	
fertor,	feruntor	*Fut.* lātum īrī	*Fut.* ferendus

82. **volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imp.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Fut. Perf.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
Imp.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns	nōlēns

83. Fīō, *be made, be done, become, happen,* is the irregular passive of **faciō**, *make.* Note the **ī** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er.**

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit, fīmus, fītis, fīunt	fīam
Imp.	fīēbam	fierem
Fut.	fīam	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
Fut. Perf.	factus erō	

	IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	fī, fīte	*Pres.* fierī	*Perf.* factus
		Perf. factus esse	*Fut.* faciendus
		Fut. factum īrī	

84. **eō, īre, iī, itum,** *go*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	eō, īs, it, īmus, ītis, eunt	eam
Imp.	ībam	īrem
Fut.	ībō	
Perf.	iī (*for* īvī)	ierim
Plup.	ieram	iissem *or* īssem
Fut. Perf.	ierō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
Pres.	ī, īte	*Pres.*	īre	*Pres.*	iēns (*Gen.* euntis)
Fut.	ītō, ītōte	*Perf.*	iisse *or* īsse	*Fut.*	itūrus
	ītō, euntō	*Fut.*	itūrus (esse)		

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, etc.	itum, -tū

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, **ii** usually contracts to **ī** before **s.**

85. **Dō, dare, dedī, datum,** *give,* is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short **a. ā** appears only in the following active forms,—**dās, dā, dāns.**

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī,** *I remember;* **ōdī,** *I hate;* and **coepī,** *I have begun.* Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

Perf.	meminī	ōdī	coepī
Plup.	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
Fut. Perf.	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf.	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
Plup.	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

Sing.	mementō
Plur.	mementōte

INFINITIVE

Perf.	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
Fut.		ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Perf.	ōsus	coeptus
Fut.	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: **laudārī coeptus est,** *he began to be praised.*

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it.* They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third

person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit,** *it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet,** *it becomes;* **libet,** *it pleases;* **licet,** *it is permitted;* **miseret,** *it causes pity;* **oportet,** *it is right;* **paenitet,** *it repents;* **piget,** *it displeases;* **pudet,** *it shames;* **rēfert,** *it concerns;* **taedet,** *it wearies.* All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit,** *it is added,* from **accēdō,** *I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur,** *it is fought.*

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

References to the body of the book are thus: §736; to the Appendix thus: App. 86. The numerals refer to the lines as numbered in the continuous text, pages 317–333.

A

A., the abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman "first name" [**praenōmen**]

ā, ab, abs, preposition with ablative, *away from, from;* expressing agency with passive verbs, *by;* with verbs of happening, *at the hands of*, line 377; *at, on*, e. g., line 463. In composition with verbs it means *away, from*

ab-dō, ab-dere, ab-didī, ab-ditum [**dō, dare, dedī, datum**, *give*, which in composition often means *put*], literally, *put away;* regularly, *conceal, hide* (transitive). **sē abdere**, literally, *conceal one's self*, i. e., *hide* (intransitive), *withdraw*

ab-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead away, carry away*

abs-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**, *hold*], literally, *hold away*, i. e., *refrain*

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, (ā-futūrus), present participle **absēns**, *be away, be from;* in translating any adverbial modifier of this verb, put it before the word *away* or *from* in English; e. g., **longē abesse**, *to be far away;* **neque abest suspīciō**, literally, *and the suspicion is not away*, or *is not lacking*, i. e., *there is good reason to suspect*

ac, a form of **atque**, used before some consonants

ac-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [**ad**, *to*], literally, *go to* or *toward; approach; be added*, line 348.

acceptus, -a, -um, participle of **accipiō**

ac-cidō, ac-cidere, ac-cidī, ——, [**ad**, *to*, **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum**, *fall*], literally, *fall to* (anyone); regularly, *befall, happen*

ac-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ad**, *to*, **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**, *take*], literally, *take to* (one's self); regularly, *receive;* **acceptus, -a, -um**, perfect passive participle used as an adjective, literally, *having been received; acceptable*

ac-currō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum** [**ad**, *to*], literally, *run to; ride up, hasten*

ac-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ad**, *to*, and a verb derived from **causa**,

cause], literally, *call to account; reproach*, line 296; *accuse*, line 352

ācer, ācris, ācre, comparative **ācrior**, superlative **ācerrimus**, *sharp, keen*

aciēs, aciēī, F., plural limited to nominative and accusative [**ācer**, *sharp*], literally, *sharpness, point, edge;* regularly, *line of battle, battle line*, line 467

ācri-ter, adverb, comparative **ācrius**, superlative **ācerrimē** [**ācer**, *sharp*], *sharply*

ad, preposition with accusative; with verb denoting motion, *to, toward*, or in hostile sense, *against;* with verbs denoting situation, *in the vicinity of, near, at, on*, e. g., **ad Hispāniam**, line 22; before numerals, *as many as, to the number of, about*, e. g., line 71; denoting purpose or design, *for*, e. g., **ad eam rem**, line 81, and so with gerund and gerundive, e. g., line 47; in expressions of time, *to, till*, e. g., **ad vesperum, ad multam noctem**, lines 473, 474; in composition with verbs it means *to, toward, near*

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, literally, *lead on, induce;* regularly, in perfect passive participle modified by ablative, *induced*

ad-hibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum [**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum**, *have, hold*], literally, *hold near; have . . . present*, line 385

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, be surprised*

ad-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, literally, *let go toward* anything; **equō admissō**, literally, *his horse having been let go*, i. e., *at full speed, on the gallop*

ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, literally, *rise against;* regularly, *attack*

ad-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum [**sciō**, *know, receive as true*], literally, *receive to* anyone; *accept*

ad-sum, ad-esse, af-fuī, ——, *be near*

adulēscentia, -ae, F. [**adulēscēns**, *a youth*], *youth, youthfulness*

adventus, -ūs, M. [**ad-veniō**, *come to*], literally, *a coming to* anyone; i. e., *coming, arrival, approach*

adversus, -a, -um, participle of **ad-vertō**

ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, literally, *turn to;* **animum advertere**, literally, *turn the mind to*, i. e., *notice;* see **animadvertō**. Perfect passive participle used as an adjective, literally, *turned against*, i. e., *unsuccessful, adverse*

aedificium, -ī, N. [**aedificō**, *build*, from **aedēs**, *dwelling*, and **faciō**, *make*], *building*

Aeduus, -a, -um, adjective, *Aeduan; of the Aeduans, relating to the Aeduans.* Masculine used as a substantive: singular, *an Aeduan, the Aeduan*, lines 56, 151; plural, *the Aeduans, the Aedui*, the leading tribe of Gaul

aeger, aegra, aegrum, comparative **aegrior,** superlative **aegerrimus,** *ill, sick*

aegrē, adverb, comparative **aegrius,** superlative, **aegerrimē,** [**aeger,** *ill*], literally, *illy;* regularly, *hardly, with difficulty;* superlative, *with the greatest difficulty*

Aemilius, -ī, M. (*Lucius*) *Aemilius,* a Roman decurion of cavalry

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**aequus,** *even*], literally, *make even,* i. e., *equalize*

af-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**ad,** *to,* **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum** *do*], literally, *do to; affect, fill,* line 38; *visit,* line 500

affīnitās, affīnitātis, F. [**ad,** *to,* **fīnis,** *boundary*], *connection, relationship* by marriage

ager, agrī, M., literally, *cultivated land;* regularly, *field; territory,* lines 31, 91, 162; *land,* line 520

ag-gredior, ag-gredī, ag-gressus sum [**ad,** *to,* **gradior, gradī, gressus sum,** *step*], literally, *go toward, "go for";* regularly, *attack*

agmen, agminis, N. [**agō,** *drive*], *army* on the march; *line of march,* line 462; **novissimum agmen,** literally, *the newest part of the line of march,* i. e., *the rear*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, literally, *put in motion, drive; speak, discuss,* line 227; *do,* line 390

aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius,** *another*], literally, *belonging to another; unfavorable,* line 270

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, genitive **alicuius,** dative **alicui,** etc., indefinite adjective (*some*), *any*

alius, alia, aliud, genitive **alīus,** dative **aliī,** etc.; singular, *another;* plural, *other* or *others.* Masculine used as a substantive with the same meanings. **alia rēs,** literally, *another thing,* i. e., *anything else,* line 488. As correlatives, **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another;* plural, **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others.* See §283

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, M., *the Allobroges,* a tribe in that part of Italy beyond the Po, which was called Cisalpine Gaul

alō, alere, aluī, alitum or **altum,** literally, *nourish; support,* line 329

Alpēs, Alpium, F., *the Alps,* a term applied by the Romans to all the mountains in the vicinity of modern Switzerland

alter, altera, alterum, genitive **alterius,** dative **alterī,** etc., regularly, *the other* (of two), line 97; *the second* (of more than two), line 32. As correlatives, **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other;* plural, **alterī . . . alterī,** *the one party . . . the other party; the one force . . . the other force,* line 471. See §283

altitūdō, altitūdinis, F. [**altus,** *high, deep*], *height, depth*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M. [**ambī,** *about,* **Arar,** *the Saône*], *the Ambarri,* kinsmen of the Aeduans, southeast of them, near the Saône

amīcitia, -ae, F. [**amīcus,** *friendly*],

literally, *friendliness;* regularly, *friendship,* which in foreign relations practically meant *alliance,* line 47

amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly,* line 153. Masculine used as a substantive, *friend,* line 54

ā-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, literally, *let go away;* regularly, *lose*

amor, amōris, M. [**amō,** *love*], *love*

amplus, -a, -um, *large, great.* Neuter comparative used as a substantive, *more*

anceps, genitive **ancipitis,** adjective [**ambō,** *both, two,* **caput,** *head*], literally, *two-headed; doubtful,* line 469

angustiae, -ārum, F. [**angustus,** *narrow*], literally, *narrowness,* line 149; *narrow pass,* line 181

angustus, -a, -um, literally, *narrow,* line 94; *small, limited,* line 39

anim-ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [**animum,** accusative of **animus,** *mind*], literally, *turn the mind to;* **in eum animadvertere,** *attend to him, punish him*

animus, -ī, M., literally, *mind; energy, courage; feelings,* lines 358, 366; *sympathies,* line 380

annus, -ī, M., *year*

annuus, -a, -um [**annus,** *year*], *yearly, annual;* translated by adverb, *annually,* line 294

ante, adverb and preposition with accusative, *before;* **ante diem quīntum,** *the fifth day before*

anteā, adverb, *before*

antīquus, -a, -um [**ante,** *before*], *former*

a-periō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertum, *open.* Perfect passive participle, used as an adjective, literally, *opened;* regularly, *exposed, open, unprotected*

apertus, -a, -um, participle of **aperiō**

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call* (by name)

Aprīlis, -e, abbreviation **Apr.,** adjective, *of April*

apud, preposition with accusative; with plural object, regularly *among;* with singular object, *with,* lines 378, 383; **apud sē,** literally, *before himself,* i. e., *in his presence,* line 365

Aquilēia, -ae, F., *Aquileia,* a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic sea

Aquītānia, -ae, F. [**Aquītānī**], *Aquitania,* the southern of the three parts into which Caesar divided Gaul

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *of Aquitania, Aquitanian.* Masculine used as a substantive, *an Aquitanian, one of the Aquitani;* plural, *the Aquitanians, the Aquitani,* inhabitants of Aquitania

Arar, Araris, M., accusative **Ararim,** ablative **Ararī,** *the Saône,* a river of southern Gaul, tributary to the Rhone

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think*

arma, -ōrum, N., *arms*

a-scendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum [**ad,** *to,* **scandō, scandere,**

scandī, scānsum, *climb*], literally, *climb to; climb up, ascend*

ascēnsus, -ūs, M. [**ascendō,** *ascend*], *ascent*

atque, coördinate conjunction, *and,* usually emphasizing what follows; after words which imply comparison it means *than, as, from what,* etc., according to the English requirement; e. g., **pār atque,** *the same as,* lines 521, 522

at-tingō, at-tingere, at-tigī, at-tāctum [**ad,** *to,* **tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum,** *touch*], literally, *touch upon; border on*

auctōritās, auctōritātis, F., *influence*

audācia, -ae, F. [**audāx, audācis,** *daring, bold*], *daring, boldness*

audāc-ter, adverb, comparative **audācius,** superlative **audācissimē** [**audāx,** genitive **audācis,** comparative **audācior,** superlative **audācissimus** (from **audeō,** *dare*), *daring*], *daringly, boldly*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-deponent, *dare*

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase*

Aulus, -ī, M., abbreviation **A.,** *Aulus,* a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

aut, coördinate conjunction, *or;* **aut . . . aut,** correlative, *either . . . or*

autem, coördinate conjunction, *moreover*

auxilium, -ī, N. [**augeō,** *increase*], *aid, help; reinforcement,* line 345; plural, *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries*

āversus, -a, -um, participle of **āvertō**

ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn away.* Perfect passive participle used as an adjective, literally, *turned away,* i. e., *with his back turned, fleeing, retreating*

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather*

B

Belga, -ae, M., *Belgian,* an inhabitant of the northern of the three divisions of Gaul

bellicōsus, -a, -um [**bellum,** *war*], literally, *full of war; warlike*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**bellum,** *war*], *make war; fight*

bellum, -ī, N., locative **bellī,** *war*

beneficium, -ī, N. [**bene,** *well,* **faciō,** *do*], *kindness, kind deed*

Bibracte, Bibractis, N., locative ablative **Bibracte** or **Bibractī,** *Bibracte,* the most important town of the Aeduans

bīduus, -a, -um [**bis,** *twice,* **diēs,** *day*], literally, *of the space of two days, two days.* Neuter used as a substantive, with **tempus** understood, literally, *two days' time,* i. e., *two days*

biennium, -ī, N. [**bis,** *twice,* **annus,** *year*], literally, *the space of two years,* i. e., *two years*

bipertītō, adverb [**bis,** *twice,* **pars,** *part*], literally, *in two parts; in two divisions*

Biturīgēs, Biturīgum, M., *the Bituriges,* a tribe of central Gaul

Bōī, -ōrum, M., *the Boii,* a tribe that migrated with the Helvetians. See App. 16

bonitās, bonitātis, F. [**bonus,** *good*], literally, *goodness;* of land, *fertility*

bonus, -a, -um, comparative **melior,** superlative **optimus,** *good*

bracchium, -ī, N., *forearm, arm*

C

C., the abbreviation for **Gāius,** a Roman "first name" [**praenōmen**]

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall*

Caesar, Caesaris, M., a Roman family name [**cog-nōmen**]; especially (*Gaius Julius*) *Caesar,* the Roman general and statesman, author of the Commentaries on the Gallic War

calamitās, calamitātis, F., *disaster, defeat*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, regularly, *take; feel,* line 371; *occupy,* line 460

captīvus, -a, -um [**capiō,** *take*], *captive.* Masculine used as a substantive, *a captive*

caput, capitis, N., *head*

carrus, -ī, M., *cart*

Cassiānus, -a, -um [**Cassius**], *relating to Cassius;* **bellum Cassiānum,** *the war with Cassius*

Cassius, -ī, M., a Roman name (**nōmen**); (*Lucius*) *Cassius* (*Longinus,* consul in 107 B.C., who was attacked and defeated by the Helvetians

castellum, -ī, N. [diminutive of **castrum,** *fortress*], *fort*

Casticus, -ī, M., *Casticus,* a powerful chief of the Sequanians

castra, -ōrum, N. [**castrum, -ī,** singular, *fortress,* not used by Caesar], *a* (fortified) *camp*

cāsus, -ūs, M. [**cadō,** *fall*], literally, *a falling;* regularly, *chance*

Catamantaloedēs, Catamantaloedis, M., *Catamantaloedes,* a powerful Sequanian, father of Casticus

Caturīgēs, Caturīgum, M., *the Caturiges;* an Alpine tribe

causa, -ae, F., regularly, *reason, cause;* in legal matters, *case,* lines 68, 74, 367; ablative of cause, *for the sake,* line 331

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *go* (*from*); *yield*

celer, celeris, celere, comparative **celerior,** superlative **celerrimus,** *quick, swift*

celeri-ter, adverb, comparative **celerius,** superlative **celerrimē,** [**celer,** *quick*], *quickly*

Celta, -ae, M., *Celt;* as used by Caesar, the local name for the people of central Gaul

cēnsus, -ūs, M. [**cēnseō,** *estimate*], *estimate, enumeration, census*

centum, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *one hundred*

certus, -a, -um, literally, *certain, undoubted,* line 348; **eum certiōrem faciō,** literally, *I make him more certain;* regularly, *I inform him;* passive, **certior fīō,** literally, *I am made more certain,* regularly, *I am informed*

Ceutronēs, Ceutronum, M., *the Ceutrones,* an Alpine tribe

cibārius, -a, -um [**cibus,** *food*], *relating to food.* Neuter plural used as substantive (like English *food-stuffs*), *provisions*

circiter, adverb, *about*

circuitus, -ūs, M. [**circum-eō,** *go around*], literally, *a going around;* **in circuitū,** *by a roundabout route*

circum, preposition with accusative, *around, about*

circum-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, literally, *come around;* in military expressions, *outflank*

citerior, citerius, comparative adjective (no positive), superlative **citimus** [**citrā,** *on this side*], *nearer;* with **prōvincia** or **Gallia** it refers to the province of *Cisalpine Gaul,* the part of Italy north of the Po

citrā, preposition with accusative, *on this side of, this side*

cīvitās, cīvitātis, F. [**cīvis,** *citizen*], literally, *citizenship;* regularly, *state;* as collective noun, *citizens*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *close;* **agmen claudere,** literally, *close the line of march,* i.e., *bring up the rear*

cliēns, clientis, M. or F., *dependent, retainer*

co-emō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [**con,** intensive], *buy, purchase,* the compound resembles the English "buy up"

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, defective verb, *began* (or *have begun*); pluperfect, *had begun,* etc.; present system supplied by **incipiō,** *begin.* See App. 86

co-erceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum [**con,** *together,* **arceō, arcēre, arcuī, arcitum,** *enclose*], literally, *confine; restrain*

cognitus, -a, -um, participle of **cognōscō**

co-gnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, cognitum [(g)**nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvī, (g)nōtum,** *come to know*], literally, *become acquainted with,* regularly, *ascertain;* when the perfect means *I have ascertained,* it may be translated *I know,* and similarly the pluperfect *I knew,* etc. Perfect passive participle used as an adjective, *noted,* line 519

cōgō, cōgere, co-ēgī, co-āctum [**con,** *together,* **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** *drive*], literally, *drive together, collect;* [**con,** intensive] *compel;* with infinitive

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum [**con,** intensive, **hortor,** *urge*], regularly, *address;* i.e., speak a few words of encouragement and appeal before a battle

col-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con,** *together*], *fasten together*

collis, collis, M., *hill*

col-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con,** intensive, **locus,** *place*], *place; give in marriage, marry off,* line 332, and the same with **nūptum,** line 334 (literally, *place to marry*)

col-loquor, col-loquī, col-locūtus sum [**con,** *together*], *talk with*

com-būrō, -būrere, -bussī, -bustum

[con, intensive], *burn up*, the *up* being intensive in English

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con, intensive, **memor**, *mindful*], literally, *call to mind*, i. e., *mention*

com-meō, -meāre, -meāvī, -meātum [con, intensive], literally, *go back and forth*, i. e., *resort*

com-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [con, *together*], literally, *send together;* with **proelium**, *begin, join; allow, permit*, line 238; *do*, line 246

commodē, adverb, compared regularly [**commodus**, *convenient*], *conveniently, well*

com-mone-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [con, intensive, **moneō**, *warn*], passive **com-mone-fīō, -fierī, -factus sum**, literally, *make warned*, i. e., *impress upon*

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [con, intensive], literally, *move strongly;* regularly, *alarm; influence*, line 376

com-mūniō, -mūnīre, -mūnīvī, -mūnītum [con, intensive], literally, *fortify strongly;* **castella commūnīre**, literally, *fortify forts strongly*, i. e., *construct strong forts*

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, F. [**com-mūtō**, *change*], *a change*

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con, intensive], *change completely*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con, intensive], *prepare, provide*

com-periō, -perīre, com-perī, -pertum [con, intensive], *find out*

com-plector, -plectī, -plexus sum [con, *together*], literally, *weave together;* regularly, *embrace*

com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum [con, intensive], *completely fill; cover*

com-plūrēs, com-plūra (or **com-plūria**), genitive **com-plūrium** [con, intensive], *several, quite a number of*. Used also substantively

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con, *together*], *bring together, bring to one place*

con-, form of **cum** [**com**] in composition, meaning *with* or *together;* very often merely intensive

cōnātum, -ī, N. [really the neuter of the perfect, here passive, participle of **cōnor**], literally, *a thing attempted*, i. e., *an attempt*

cōnātus, -ūs, M. [**cōnor**, *attempt*], *attempt*

con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [con, intensive], *grant*

con-cīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [con, intensive, **caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum**, *cut down*], *cut to pieces, kill*

con-ciliō, -ciliāre, -ciliāvī, -ciliātum [**concilium**, *council*], literally, *bring together;* regularly, *win, gain*

concilium, -ī, N., *assembly, council*

concursus, -ūs, M. [**con-currō**, *run together*], literally, *a running together; charge*

condiciō, condiciōnis, F. [**con-dīcō**, *say together*], literally, *a saying together*, i. e., *terms*

con-dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con,

intensive, **dōnum**, *gift*], *forgive;* the dative accompanying this verb may be translated *out of regard for*

con-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead together, bring together, collect*

cōnfectus, -a, -um, participle of **cōnficiō**

cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, cōn-tulī, collātum, *bring together, collect;* **sē cōnferre,** literally, *convey one's self,* regularly, *retire*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded*

cōn-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**con,** intensive, **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,** *do*], literally, *do completely,* "*do up,*" i. e., *finish, complete; make out, write,* lines 524, 525

cōn-fīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, semi-deponent [**con,** intensive], *trust;* governs dative

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**con,** intensive], literally, *make firm, confirm,* i. e., *establish; affirm, declare,* line 49

con-iciō, -icere [pronounced as if spelled **coniiciō, coniicere**], **-iēcī, -iectum** [**con,** intensive, **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], *throw*

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, F., literally, *a swearing together,* i. e., *a conspiracy*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt;* **idem cōnārī,** literally, *attempt the same thing,* i. e., *make the same attempt*

con-quīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [**con,** intensive, **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum,** *seek*], *seek out, search out*

con-sanguineus, -a, -um [**con,** *together,* **sanguis,** *blood*], literally, *of common blood,* i. e., *related.* Masculine used as a substantive, *kinsman*

cōn-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum [**sciō,** *know*], literally, *decree;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** literally, *decree death to one's self,* i. e., *commit suicide*

cōn-scius, -a, -um [**con,** *with,* **sciō,** *know*], literally, *knowing with* some one, i. e., *conscious, aware*

cōn-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, literally, *write together,* i. e., *enroll*

cōn-sequor, cōn-sequī, cōn-secūtus sum [**con,** intensive], literally, *follow closely,* i. e., *pursue* or *overtake*

Cōnsidius, -ī, M. (*Publius*) *Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army

cōn-sīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum [related to **sedeō,** *sit*], literally, *sit down together, settle;* regularly, *encamp*

cōnsilium, -ī, N., *plan*

cōn-sistō, -sistere, cōn-stitī, —— [**con,** *together*], literally, *stand together;* regularly, *take one's stand*

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *comfort, console*

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., *sight*

cōn-spicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *see*

cōn-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**con,** intensive, **statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum,** *station* (transitive), from **stō,**

stand (intransitive)], with complementary infinitive, *decide;* with direct object or in passive, *determine; appoint,* lines 70, 139

cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accustomed;* perfect, *I have become accustomed* = (regularly) *I am accustomed;* pluperfect, *I had become accustomed* = *I was accustomed,* etc.

cōnsul, cōnsulis, M., *consul,* the title given to one of the two coördinate chief executive officers of the Roman republic

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, literally, *take away altogether,* i. e., *use up, destroy, consume*

con-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum [**con,** intensive, **tendō,** *stretch*], literally, *strain, struggle;* regularly, either (1) *fight, contend,* or (2) *hurry, hasten*

continenter, adverb [**continēns,** present participle of **contineō,** *hold together*], *continually; without stopping,* line 483

con-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**con,** intensive, **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum,** *hold*], literally, *hold fast; bound,* lines 16, 30; *keep,* line 275

contrā, adverb, *against; against him,* line 326

contumēlia, -ae, F., *insult, affront*

con-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, literally, *come together,* i. e., *assemble* (intransitive); *meet,* line 493

conventus, -ūs, M. [**conveniō,** *come together*], literally, *a coming together; assembly*

conversus, -a, -um, participle of **convertō**

con-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [**con,** intensive], literally, *turn completely, turn around; reverse,* line 433

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call together*

cōpia, -ae, F., singular, *plenty, supply; number,* line 292; plural, *forces, troops*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [**cōpia,** *supply*], literally, *full of supplies,* i. e., *well supplied, wealthy, prosperous*

cornū, cornūs, N., *horn;* of an army, *wing*

corpus, corporis, N., *body*

cotīdiānus, -a, -um [**cotīdiē,** *daily*], *daily; regular, usual,* line 360

cotīdiē, adverb [**quot,** *each,* **diēs,** *day*], *daily*

Crassus, -ī, M., a Roman family name [**cog-nōmen**]; (*Marcus Licinius*) *Crassus,* the wealthy Roman, who, with Caesar and Pompey, formed the first triumvirate

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *burn,* used of persons

creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, literally, *produce; elect,* line 294

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, literally, *grow, increase; become powerful,* line 373

cultus, -ūs, M. [**colō,** *cultivate*], *civilization, comfort*

cum, preposition with ablative, *with.* Enclitic with personal pro-

nouns, and often with **quis** and **quī**

cum, subordinate conjunction, *when, since,* or *although;* if it introduces a verb in the indicative it means *when;* if it introduces a verb in the subjunctive, it is necessary to consider which one of the three meanings makes the best sense. For more exact description of uses, see §§693, 700

cupidē, adverb, compared regularly [**cupidus,** *desirous, eager*], *eagerly;* comparative, *too cagerly,* line 269

cupiditās, cupiditātis, F. [**cupidus,** *desirous, fond*], *desire, fondness*

cupidus, -a, -um [**cupiō,** *desire*], *desirous, fond;* modified by a genitive

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, regularly, *desire; wish well,* line 334; governs dative

cūr, adverb, *why*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *care for;* with object modified by a gerundive, *cause*

custōs, custōdis, M. or F., regularly, *guard, watch; watchers,* "secret service men," line 389

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *condemn*

dē, preposition with ablative, regularly (1) *down from, down;* or (2) *concerning, of;* with **causā,** *for;* in expressions of time, *during;* taking place of partitive genitive, *of,* line 271. In composition with other words, *away, down, thoroughly* (intensive)

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, (1) *owe* or (2) *ought* (which was the past of *owe* in old English)

decem, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *ten*

dē-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,** *take*], literally, *take away* (one's security), i. e., *deceive;* compare the English "take in"

decuriō, decuriōnis, M. [**decem,** *ten*], *decurion,* the officer in command of a small squad of cavalry (originally ten men)

dēditicius, -a, -um, literally, *given up.* Masculine used as a substantive, *prisoner, captive*

dēditiō, dēditiōnis, F. [**dē-dō,** *give up*], *a giving up,* i. e., *surrender*

dē-fendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, literally, *ward off from;* usually, *defend*

dēfessus, -a, -um, *exhausted;* **vulneribus dēfessī,** literally, *exhausted with wounds,* i. e., *many being wounded, on account of their heavy losses*

dē-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **dēiiciō, dēiicere**), **-iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], literally, *throw down, cast down; disappoint,* line 143

de-inde, adverb, literally, *thence,* regularly, *then*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deliberate, consider*

dē-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose (from), select*

dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [**dē,** *from,* **minus,** *less*], *lessen, diminish*

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *point out, show*

dēmum, adverb, *at length*

dēnique, adverb, *finally*

dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, literally, *place down; lay aside*

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage* (completely)

dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, M., *intercessor, advocate;* **eō dēprecātōre,** ablative absolute, *he (being) intercessor,* i. e., *with him as intercessor*

dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**signum,** *mark*], literally, *mark down,* i. e., *designate, mean*

dē-sistō, -sistere, dē-stitī, ——, literally, *stop* (intransitive) *from* something, i. e., *cease*

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spēs,** *hope*], literally, *hope away,* i. e., *despair.* With this verb an accompanying preposition **dē** means *of*

dē-spiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, literally, *look down on,* i. e., *despise*

dē-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum,** *station* (transitive), from **stō,** *stand* (intransitive)], literally, *station* (transitive) *down, put aside,* i. e., *desert*

dēstrictus, participle of **dēstringō**

dē-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *draw (from)*

dē-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, *frighten (from), deter, prevent;* **nē** with subjunctive following is translated by *from* with the English verbal in *-ing*

deus, -ī, M., *god.* For declension see §713

dexter, dextra, dextrum, sometimes **dexter, dextera, dexterum,** *right* (opposite of *left*). Feminine used as a substantive, with **manus** understood, *right hand*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say; appoint,* line 107; **causam dīcere,** *plead a case*

dictiō, dictiōnis, F. [**dīcō,** *say*], literally, *a saying;* **causae dictiō,** *the pleading (of) the case*

didicī, perfect of **discō**

diēs, diēī, usually masculine, sometimes feminine in the singular (when referring to a definite day), *day; time,* line 129

dif-ferō, dif-ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātum [**dis-,** *apart*], literally, *bear apart,* i. e., *differ, be different*

dif-ficilis, -e, comparative **difficilior,** superlative **difficillimus** [**dis-,** *apart,* **facilis,** *easy*], *difficult, hard*

dī-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**dis-,** *apart*], literally, *send apart,* i. e., *dismiss, adjourn*

dis-, inseparable prefix meaning *apart,* having also the forms **dī-** and **dif-**

dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go apart,* regularly, *go away, depart*

discō, discere, didicī, ——, *learn*

dis-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **disiiciō, disiicere**), **-iēcī,**

-iectum [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], literally, *throw apart; break*

dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, literally, *place apart,* i. e., *place at intervals*

dītissimus, -a, -um, superlative of **dīves**

diū, adverb, comparative **diūtius,** superlative **diūtissimē,** *long, for a long time;* comparative *too long,* line 290

diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū,** adverb, *long*], *long,* adjective, referring to time

dīves, genitive **dīvitis,** adjective, (for declension see App. 35, *a*), comparative **dīvitior** or **dītior,** superlative **dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus,** *rich*

Dīviciācus, -ī, M., *Diviciacus,* a very influential Aeduan

Dīvicō, Dīvicōnis, M., *Divico,* a Helvetian chief

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum [**dis-,** *apart,* **videō,** *see*], *divide, separate*

dīvīsus, -a, -um [perfect passive participle of **dīvidō**], *divided*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give; allow,* line 242. See §52, last part

doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *feel pain, suffer*

dolor, dolōris, M. [**doleō,** *feel pain*], *distress*

dolus, -ī, M., *deceit*

domus, -ūs, F., *home.* For declension, see §457

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, F. [**dubitō,** *hesitate*], *hesitation*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**dubius,** *doubtful*], *hesitate;* when followed by **quīn,** usually, *doubt*

dubius, -a, -um [**duo,** *two*], *doubtful*

ducentī, -ae, -a [**duo,** *two,* **centum,** *hundred*], *two hundred*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, regularly, *lead;* sometimes *consider,* as line 48; *draw,* line 96; *put off,* lines 289, 290; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** literally, *lead into marriage,* i. e., *marry*

dum, subordinate conjunction, *while; until*

Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, M., *Dumnorix,* a troublesome Aeduan chief

duo, duae, duo, cardinal (numeral) adjective *two.* For declension, see §504

duo-decim, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**duo,** *two,* **decem,** *ten*], *twelve*

duo-dē-vīgintī, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, literally, *two from twenty,* i. e., *eighteen*

dux, ducis, M. or F. [**dūcō,** *lead*], *leader; guide,* line 396

E

ē, form of the preposition **ex,** before many of the consonants

ē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead out*

ef-fēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**fēmina,** *woman*], literally, *make womanish,* i. e., *weaken*

ef-ferō, ef-ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātum, literally, *bear out; take*

ego, meī, first personal pronoun, *I.* For declension, see §551

ē-gredior, ē-gredī, ē-gressus sum [**gradior, gradī, gressus sum,** *step*], *go out*

ēgregius, -a, -um [**ē,** *out,* **grex,** *flock*], literally, *out of the common herd,* i. e., *conspicuous, pre-eminent*

ē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, literally, *let go out of; drop*

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, literally, *take;* regularly, *buy*

enim, coördinate conjunction, *for*

ē-nūntiō, -nūntiāre, -nūntiāvī, nūntiātum [**nūntius,** *messenger*], literally, *tell out;* regularly, *disclose, report, announce*

eō, īre, iī, or **īvī, itum,** *go; travel,* line 481. For conjugation, see §465

eō, adverb, literally, *thither,* i. e., *to that point,* or, less exactly, *there*

eōdem, adverb, *to the same point*

eques, equitis, M. [**equus,** *horse*], *horseman;* plural, *horsemen, cavalry*

equester, equestris, equestre [**eques,** *horseman*], literally, *pertaining to cavalry,* i. e., *cavalry* (adjective)

equitātus, -ūs, M. [**eques,** *horseman*], (*body of*) *cavalry*

equus, -ī, M., *horse*

ē-ripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum [**rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum,** *snatch*], literally, *snatch out; take away,* line 310; *free;* **sē ēripere,** literally, *free one's self,* i. e., *escape,* line 74

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wander*

et, coördinate conjunction, *and;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and*

etiam, adverb [**et,** *and,* **iam,** *already*], *even; also*

ē-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *pull out*

ex, preposition with ablative, *out from, out of,* or merely *from;* taking place of partitive genitive, *of,* lines 481, 530; giving point of view, *on,* lines 30, 32; *in,* line 68; **diem ex diē,** *from day to day.* In composition with verbs, *from, out, completely*

exemplum, -ī, N., *example, precedent*

ex-eō, ex-īre, ex-iī or **ex-īvī, ex-itum,** *go out*

exercitus, -ūs, M. [**exerceō,** *exercise*], literally, *exercise, training;* regularly, (*a trained,* i. e., *Roman*) *army*

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis, F. [**exīstimō,** *think*], *opinion, judgment*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *think*

ex-pediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītum [**pēs, pedis,** *foot*], literally, *get one's foot out,* i. e., *extricate one's self.* Perfect passive participle as adjective, *quick, free*

expedītus, -a, -um, participle of **expediō**

explōrātor, explōrātōris, M. [**explōrō,** *find out*], literally, *one who finds out,* i. e., regularly, *scout*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pugna,** *fight*], literally, *fight out;* regularly, *take by storm*

ex-sequor, ex-sequī, ex-secūtus sum, literally, *follow out;* we say *follow up,* i. e., *enforce,* line 75

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *look out* (intransitive), *look out for* (transitive); regularly, *wait* (intransitive), *wait for* or *await* (transitive)

exterus, -a, -um, comparative **exterior,** superlative **extrēmus** (or **extimus**), *outside,* comparative *outer, exterior,* superlative *most distant, farthest*

extrā, preposition with accusative, *outside*

extrēmus, -a, -um, superlative of **exterus**

ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, literally, *burn out;* we say, *burn up*

F

facile, adverb, comparative **facilius,** superlative **facillimē,** [**facilis,** *easy*], *easily*

facilis, -e, comparative **facilior,** superlative **facillimus** [**faciō,** *do*], literally, *do-able;* regularly, *easy*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, regularly *make* or *do;* with **vīs,** *use;* with **proelium,** *fight;* with **pōns,** *build;* with **cōpia,** *give;* **iter facere,** literally, *make a march,* i. e., *march;* with **certior,** see **certus;** with **satis,** see that word. Passive, **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** regularly, *be made* or *be done; happen,* line 379. For conjugation, see §632

facultās, facultātis, F. [**facilis,** *easy*], *opportunity;* plural, *resources*

famēs, famis, F., ablative **famē,** *hunger;* **famem tolerāre,** literally, *satisfy hunger,* i. e., *live*

familia, -ae, F. [**famulus,** *servant*], literally, *a body of servants,* i. e., *retinue*

familiāris, -e [**familia,** *body of servants*], literally, *belonging to the household.* **rēs familiāris,** *private property.* Masculine used as a substantive, literally, *one belonging to the household.* i. e., *personal friend*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable, favor;* governs dative

ferē, adverb, *almost; nearly*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry;* with **auxilium,** *bring;* **gravius ferre,** literally, *bear more heavily,* i. e., *be more displeased.* For conjugation, see §714

fidēs, fidei, F., plural limited to nominative and accusative, *pledge; fidelity, loyalty,* line 356; *confidence,* line 362

fīlia, -ae, F., dative and ablative plural **fīliābus;** *daughter*

fīlius, fīliī, M., *son*

fīnis, fīnis, M.; ablative **fīnī** or **fīne;** singular, *end;* plural regularly *territory,* sometimes *boundaries*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis,** *end, boundary*], literally, *neighboring, near,* lines 330, 517. Masculine used as a substantive, *neighbor*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, see **faciō**

firmus, -a, -um, *strong*

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand* (*strongly*); governs two accusatives

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep, cry.*

Present participle, literally, *weeping*, better translated, *with tears*

flūmen, flūminis, N. [**fluō**, *flow*], *river*

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow*

fortis, -e, *brave*

forti-ter, adverb, compared regularly [**fortis**, *brave*], *bravely*

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, F. [**fortis**, *brave*], *bravery*

fortūna, -ae, F., *fortune;* plural in the sense of *possessions, property,* line 195

fossa, -ae, F. [**fodiō**, *dig*], *ditch, trench*

frāter, frātris, M., *brother*

frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter**, *brother*], *brotherly*

frīgus, frīgoris, N., *cold;* plural, literally, *cold spells*

frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum**, *grain*], literally, *pertaining to grain; productive* (of grain), line 167; **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain supply, supply of grain*

frūmentum, -ī, N. [**fruor**, *enjoy*], literally, *the means of enjoyment;* regularly, *grain;* plural, *standing grain, grain in the fields*

frūx, frūgis, F., usually plural, *crops, produce*

fuga, -ae, F. [**fugiō**, *flee*], *flight*

fugitīvus, -a, -um [**fugiō**, *flee*], *fleeing, fugitive.* Masculine used as substantive, *deserter*

G

Gabīnius, -ī, M. (*Aulus*) *Gabinius,* consul 58 B.C.

Gallia, -ae, F. [**Gallus**, *a Gaul*], *Gaul,* the country, a name used by Caesar in two senses (1) the territory comprising what is now France with all the country north of it to the Rhine; used thus, line 1; (2) the central division of the above, described in lines 2-5

Gallicus, -a, -um [**Gallī**, *the Gauls*], *pertaining to the Gauls,* i.e., *Gallic*

Gallus, -a, -um, *relating to Gaul,* i. e., *Gallic,* line 428. Masculine used as a substantive, singular, *a Gaul,* plural, *the Gauls,* terms used in two senses as in the case of **Gallia** above

Garumna, -ae, M., *the Garonne* river, in southwestern Gaul

Genava, -ae, F., modern *Geneva,* a city of the Allobroges

gēns, gentis, F., *race, tribe*

Germānus, -a, -um, *relating to Germany,* i. e., *German.* Masculine used as a substantive, *German*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, usually with **bellum**, *carry on, wage; do,* line 311

gladius, -ī, M., *sword*

glōria, -ae, F., *reputation*

glōrior, glōriārī, glōriātus sum [**glōria**, *glory*], *boast* (of), *glory* (in)

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M., *the Graioccli,* a Gallic tribe living in the Graian Alps

grātia, -ae, F., *favor, popularity*

gravis, -e, literally, *heavy;* comparative, *too serious,* lines 369, 377

graviter, adverb, compared regularly [**gravis**, *heavy*], literally, *heavily; bitterly;* see also **ferō**

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have; have* means *hold,* and in the passive the regular meaning of this verb is *be held,* in the sense of *be considered*

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *Helvetian*

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian* (*Swiss*). Masculine used as a substantive, singular, *a* or *the Helvetian* (*Swiss*), plural, *the Helvetians, Helvetii* (*Swiss*), the ancient inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland

hībernus, -a, -um, *winter.* Neuter plural used as a substantive with **castra** understood, literally, *winter camp,* i. e., *winter quarters*

hīc, haec, hoc, demonstrative adjective and pronoun, *this,* plural, *these.* For declension, see §134, and for uses, §136

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**hiems,** *winter*], *winter, pass the winter*

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain*

homō, hominis, M. or F., literally, *a human being* (as distinguished from an animal); usually *man* (in the above sense)

honor or **honōs, honōris,** M., *office, distinction, honor*

hōra, -ae, F., *hour,* among the Romans one of the twelve equal divisions of the daylight

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *urge*

hostis, hostis, M., a public *enemy;* singular, *an enemy, one of the enemy;* usually plural, *the enemy,* which is generally a collective noun in English

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, F. [**hūmānus,** *human,* from **homō,** *man*], *refinement*

I (*vowel*)

ibi, adverb, *there, in that place*

ictus, -ūs, M., *blow*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.* For declension, see §482

Īdūs, Īduum, plu., F., *the Ides* of a month, the 15th of March, May, July, and October, the 13th of other months

ignis, ignis, M., ablative **ignī,** *fire*

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be unacquainted with, ignore;* passive, *be unknown, be overlooked*

ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adjective and pronoun, *that,* plural, *those.* For declension, see §135, and for uses, §136

illīc, adverb [**ille,** *that*], *there*

im-mortālis, -e [**in-,** *not,* **mors,** *death*], literally, *not liable to death,* i. e., *immortal*

impedīmentum, -ī, N. [**impediō,** *hinder*], *hindrance, impediment;* plural, regularly, *baggage* of an army

im-pediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītum [**in,** *in,* **pēs, pedis,** *foot*], literally, *cause a man to "get his foot into it,"* i. e., *hinder; impede, interfere with.* line 456; perfect passive participle, *at a disadvantage,* line 207

impedītus, -a, -um, participle of **impediō**

im-pendeō, -pendēre, ——, —— [**in,** *into*], literally, *overhang,*

i. e., in the case of a mountain, *tower above*

imperium, **-ī**, N. [**imperō**, *rule*], *control, rule*

im-perō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, with dative and **ut** clause, *command*, the dative being translated by an objective; with dative and accusative, *demand* (*from*), *levy* (*upon*)

im-petrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *obtain one's request*

impetus, **-ūs**, M. [**in**, *for*, **petō**, *seek*], *attack* or *charge*

im-portō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *bring in, import*

im-probus, **-a**, **-um** [**in-**, *not*, **probus**, *approved*], *reckless, malicious*

im-prōvīsō, adverb, not compared [**in-**, *not*, **prōvīsus**, participle of **prō-videō**, *fore-see*], *unexpectedly*

impūne, adverb (**im-pūnis**, *unpunished*), *without punishment, with impunity*

impūnitās, **impūnitātis**, F. [**im-pūnis**, *un-punished*], *freedom from punishment, impunity*

in, preposition with accusative and ablative. (1) With accusative, *into; to, toward;* with **lātitūdinem**, **longitūdinem**, **altitūdinem**, *in*, and so with many verbs that imply motion in Latin but not in English; also *upon, on to.* (2) With ablative, *in; on, at; among.* (3) In composition with verbs it means *in, on, into, against*

in-, an inseparable negative particle, used chiefly with adjectives, meaning *not;* like the English "incapable," "unbearable," etc.

in-cendō, **-cendere**, **-cendī**, **-cēnsum**, *set fire to, set on fire*

in-citō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *urge on, arouse*

in-colō, **-colere**, **-coluī** (**-cultum**), literally, *live in;* transitive, *inhabit*, line 2; elsewhere intransitive, *live*

in-commodus, **-a**, **-um**, *in-convenient.* Neuter used as a substantive, literally, *an inconvenient thing, an inconvenience; disaster*, line 231

in-crēdibilis, **-e**, literally, *un-believable; incredible, extraordinary*

inde, adverb, *thence, from that place;* in colloquial English, "*from there*"

indicium, **ī**, N., *information, evidence;* freely, *informers*, line 67

in-dūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, *lead on, induce, influence*

inductus, **-a**, **-um** [perfect passive participle of **indūcō**], *influenced*

īn-ferō, **īn-ferre**, **in-tulī**, **il-lātum**, literally, *bring upon;* with **calamitātem**, **iniūriās**, *inflict . . . upon*

īnferus, **-a**, **-um**, comparative **īnferior**, superlative **īnfimus** or **īmus**, *low*

īn-flectō, **-flectere**, **-flexī**, **-flexum**, *bend* (*in*), *bend over*

īn-fluō, **-fluere**, **-fluxī**, **-fluxum**, *flow* (*into*)

in-imīcus, **-a**, **-um** [**in**, *not*, **amīcus**, *friendly*], *unfriendly*, line 125. Masculine used as a substantive, (personal) *enemy*, line 166

initium, -ī, N. [**in-eō**, *go into, begin*], *beginning*

iniūria, -ae, F. [**in-iūrus**, *not right*, from **iūs**, *right*], *wrong; harm, damage*, lines 127, 160

in-iussū, adverb [**in-**, *not*, **iussū**, ablative, *by order*], *without command*

in-opia, -ae, F., *lack*

in-opīnāns, -opīnantis, adjective, literally, *not expecting, unaware;* when modifying a subject or an object, it may be translated by the adverb, *unawares, unexpectedly*

inquam, inquis, inquit, and perfect tense, third person singular, **inquit**, a defective verb, used only within a direct quotation, *say*

in-sciēns, -scientis, adjective [**in-**, *not*, **sciēns**, present participle of **sciō**, *know*], literally, *not knowing, unwitting*

in-sequor, in-sequī, in-secūtus sum, *follow* (close) *upon, follow closely, follow up*

insidiae, -ārum, F., *ambuscades*

in-signis, -e [**signum**, *mark*], literally, *having a mark upon one*, i. e., *marked.* Neuter used as a substantive, *a sign, signal;* plural, *decorations*

insolenter, adverb, compared regularly [**in-solēns**, *un-accustomed*], literally, *unwontedly; haughtily*

in-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum**, *station* (transitive), from **stō**, *stand* (intransitive)], literally, *station upon, establish; train*, line 262

īnstitūtum, -ī, N. [neuter of perfect passive participle of **īnstituō**, *establish*], literally, *a thing established*, i. e., *custom*

īn-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum [**stō, stāre, stetī, stātum**, *stand* (intransitive)], literally, *stand on; draw near*, line 290; *press forward*, line 465

īn-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, literally, *build on, construct;* with **aciem**, *draw up*

intel-legō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum [**inter**, *among*, **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum**, *choose*], *understand; realize*

inter, preposition with accusative; used with reference to two objects, *between;* with reference to more than two, *among.* **inter sē (eōs) dare**, literally, *give among themselves* (*them*), i. e., *exchange*

inter-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go between*, i. e., *intervene*

inter-clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [**claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**, *close*], literally, *close* something *between* two objects, regularly, *cut off*

inter-diū, adverb [**diēs**, *day*], *during the day, by day*

inter-dum, adverb, literally, as we say, *between whiles;* regularly, *meanwhile*

inter-eā, adverb (**eā**, some old case form of **is**), *meanwhile*

inter-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum

[**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,** *do, make*], literally, *make* to be *among* other things, as we say, *make away with;* regularly, *kill*

interim, adverb [**inter,** *between, among*], *meanwhile*

interior, interius, comparative adjective (no positive), superlative **intimus** [**inter,** *inside*], *inner, inmost*

inter-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, literally, *send into the midst of something,* i. e., *interrupt,* line 483; passive, *intervene,* line 489; *come on,* line 498

interneciō, interneciōnis, F. [**internecō,** *destroy*], *destruction*

inter-pres, inter-pretis, M. or F., literally, *one who explains between* two parties, i. e., *an interpreter*

inter-sum, inter-esse, inter-fuī, ——, *be between*

inter-vāllum, -ī, N. *interval*

in-vītus, -a, -um, *un-willing.* **sē (eō) invītō,** ablative absolute, literally, *he (being) unwilling,* i. e., *without his consent.* Similarly, **Sēquanīs invītīs,** *without the consent of the Sequanians*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pronoun, *himself, herself, itself,* plural *themselves.* For declension, see §404, and for uses, §406. The genitive may often be used instead of an agreeing form of **suus, a, um,** for emphasis or contrast, e. g., **ipsīus,** *his own,* lines 407, 413. Sometimes translated in other ways, e. g., **ipsum,** *the very one,* line 321

is, ea, id, demonstrative adjective and pronoun, *this, that, he, she, it,* etc. For declension, see §142, and for uses, §143

ita, adverb, *so,* in the sense of *in such a manner; as follows,* lines 227, 241. Contrast the meaning of **tam**

Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy*

ita-que, conjunction and adverb, *and so, therefore*

item, adverb [**īdem,** *the same*], *likewise*

iter, itineris, N. [**eō,** *go*], literally, *a going; journey; route; passage; march;* **iter facere,** literally, *make a march,* i. e., *march;* **ex itinere,** *on the march*

I (*consonant*)

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [frequentative or intensive verb of **iaciō,** *throw*], literally, *keep throwing, toss; jerk about,* line 457; figuratively, *discuss,* line 318

iam, adverb, *already; now*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*

iūdicium, -ī, N. [**iūdicō,** *judge*], *trial*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *judge*

iugum, -ī, N. [**iug,** stem of **iungō,** *join*], *yoke;* of a hill, the *ridge*

iūmentum, -ī, N. [**iugum,** *yoke*], literally, *a yoke animal,* i. e., *beast of burden, pack animal,* applied to oxen and horses

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*

Iūra, -ae, M., *the Jura mountain range, the Jura mountains,* which extend from the Rhine to the Rhone

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *swear,* in the sense of *take an oath*

iūs, iūris, N., *right*

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, N., compound noun, used only in the singular, *oath*

iūstitia, -ae, F. [**iūstus,** *just,* from **iūs,** *right*], *justice*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, F., abbreviation **Kal.,** *the Kalends,* the first day of the Roman month

L

L., abbreviation for **Lūcius,** a Roman "first name" [**praenōmen**]

Labiēnus, -ī, M. (*Titus*) *Labienus,* Caesar's favorite officer.

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, literally, *provoke;* in military language, *harass*

lacrima, -ae, F., *tear*

lacus, -ūs, M., dative and ablative plural **lacubus,** *lake*

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, literally, *give freely; bribe*

largiter, adverb, comparative **largius,** superlative **largissimē,** literally, *abundantly;* **largiter posse,** literally, *be abundantly able,* i. e., *have great influence*

largītiō, largītiōnis, F. [**largior,** *give freely*], *free giving*

lātē, adverb, compared regularly [**lātus,** *wide, broad*], *widely, broadly*

lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, F. [**lātus,** *wide, broad*], *width, breadth*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, M., *the Latobrigi,* a tribe living north of the Helvetians

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*

latus, lateris, N., *side;* in military language, *flank*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *praise*

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, F. [**lēgātus,** *ambassador*], *embassy*

lēgātus, -ī, M. [**lēgō, -āre,** *send as one's representative*], literally, *a man delegated with power;* hence in military language, *lieutenant* of any rank, especially a *lieutenant-general* or *staff-officer;* in diplomatic relations, *ambassador, commissioner*

legiō, legiōnis, F. [**legō, -ere,** *choose*], *legion,* a division of the Roman army of about 3600 men

Lemannus, ī, M., (*Lake*) *Geneva*

lēnitās, lēnitātis, F. [**lēnis,** *smooth*], *smoothness*

lēx, lēgis, F., *law*

līber, lībera, līberum, comparative **līberior,** superlative **līberrimus,** *free*

līberālitās, līberālitātis, F. [**līberālis,** *generous*], *generosity*

līberē, adverb, comparative **līberius,** superlative **līberrimē** [**līber, līberior, līberrimus,** *free*], *freely*

līberī, -ōrum, M. [**līber,** *free*], free *children*

lībertās, lībertātis, F. [**līber,** *free*], *freedom*

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, *bid* at auction; line 326

licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal verb, *it is permitted*

Lingonēs, -um, M., *the Lingones,*

a Gallic tribe north of the Aeduans

lingua, -ae, F., literally, *tongue,* but often in the sense of *language*

linter, lintris, F., genitive plural **lintrium,** *small boat,* probably a "dug-out"

Liscus, -ī, M., *Liscus,* a chief of the Aeduans

littera, -ae, F., a *letter* of the alphabet; plural, literally, *letters* of the alphabet, regularly *a letter* in the sense of *an epistle; dispatch*

locus, -ī, M., *place,* plural **loca, -ōrum,** N., *places.* [The regular masculine plural is used (not in Caesar) in the sense of *places in a book, passages, topics*]

longē, adverb, compared regularly [**longus,** *long*], *far; by far*

longitūdō, longitūdinis, F. [**longus,** *long*], *length*

longus, -a, -um, *long*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *talk, speak*

Lūcius, -ī, M., *Lucius,* a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

lūx, lūcis, F., *light;* **prīma lūx,** literally, *the first part of the light,* regularly, *daybreak*

M

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus,** a Roman "first name" [**praenōmen**]

magis, comparative adverb, positive supplied by **magnopere,** superlative **maximē** [**magnus, maior, maximus,** *great*], *more, rather; superlative most, mostly, especially*

magistrātus, -ūs, M., literally, *magistracy,* line 293; elsewhere, *magistrate*

magnō opere, a phrase often contracted into **magnopere,** literally, *with great work; especially,* line 235. See **magis**

magnus, -a, -um, comparative **maior,** superlative **maximus,** *great, large*

maior, comparative of **magnus;** with **lātū** understood, lines 236, 262, comparative of **senex**

maleficium, -ī, N. [**male,** *badly,* **faciō,** *do*], *wrong-doing*

mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *prefer.* For conjugation, see §560

malus, -a, -um, comparative **peior,** superlative **pessimus,** *bad*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**manus,** *hand,* **dō,** *give, put*], literally, *put into the hands,* i. e., *entrust;* **sē fugae mandāre,** *entrust one's self to flight,* i. e., *take to flight, flee*

manus, -ūs, F., *hand*

Mārcus, -ī, M., *Marcus,* a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

mare, maris, N., *sea*

matara, -ae, F., a Gallic *javelin*

māter, mātris, F., *mother*

mātrimōnium, -ī, N., [**māter,** *mother*], *marriage.* **in** with the accusative of this word is translated *in*

Matrona, -ae, M., *the Marne,* a tributary of the Seine from the northeast

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**mātūrus,** *ripe, early*], *hasten*

mātūrus, -a, -um, superlative **mātūrissimus** or **mātūrrimus**, *ripe*

maximē, superlative of **magis**

maximus, -a, -um, superlative of **magnus**

mē, accusative of **ego**

medius, -a, -um, *middle;* usually having partitive force, *the middle of;* hence, **in colle mediō**, *in the middle of the hill*, i. e., *half way up the hill*

memoria, -ae, F., *memory, recollection*

mēnsis, mēnsis, M., *month*

mercātor, mercātōris, M., *trader*

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, *deserve*

meritum, -ī, N. [neuter of perfect participle of **mereō**, *deserve*], *desert*

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure, measure out*

meus, -a, -um, possessive adjective, masculine singular vocative **mī**; *my*

mihi, dative of **ego**

mīles, mīlitis, M., *soldier*

mīlitāris, -e [**mīles**, *soldier*], literally, *pertaining to a soldier*, i. e, *military;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *military affairs*

mīlle, indeclinable in the singular, which is usually an adjective, *a thousand*, plural, **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus**, N., *thousands.* **mīlle passūs**, literally, *a thousand paces*, regularly, *a mile*; **mīlia passuum**, literally, *thousands of paces*, regularly, *miles.* See **passus**

minimē, superlative of **parum**

minimus, superlative of **parvus**

minor, comparative of **parvus**

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus**, *less*], *lessen*

minus, adverb, comparative of **parum**

miser, misera, miserum, *poor*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send; throw*, line 451. In composition it often means *let* (something) *go*

modo, adverb, *only*, lines 284, 340, 350

molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind;* **molita cibāria**, literally, *ground food stuffs*, i. e., *meal*

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *warn; advise*, line 387

mōns, montis, M., *mountain;* not necessarily as high as our strict use of the term requires, and often best translated *hill*

morior, morī (or **morīrī**), **mortuus sum**, future participle **moritūrus**, *die*

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay*

mors, mortis, F., *death*

mōs, mōris, M., *custom*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move;* with **castra**, *break*

mulier, mulieris, F., *woman*

multitūdō, multitūdinis, F. [**multus**, *much*], literally, "muchness," *multitude; number*, lines 273, 501; *great number*, line 75; *common people*, line 305; **multitūdō hominum**, literally, *multitude of human beings*, i. e., *large population*, lines 38, 39

multum, adverb, comparative **plūs**, superlative **plūrimum** [**multus**], *much, more, most;* **plūs posse**, *be more powerful*, line 304; **plūri-**

mum posse or **valēre**, *be the most powerful, be very powerful*

multus, -a, -um, *much;* plural, *many;* **multā nocte**, *late at night;* **multō diē**, *late in the day.* **multō**, ablative used as an adverb, (*by*) *much*, (*by*) *far*, lines 98, 299; see §619. Comparative, **plūs**; for declension, see §575; *more*, lines 371, 381; plural, *several, many*, lines 317, 454. Superlative **plūrimus, -a, -um**, *most*

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, *fortify*

mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, F. [**mūniō**, *fortify*], *fortification; strength*, line 146

mūrus, -ī, M., *wall*

N

nam, coördinate conjunction, *for*

Nammēius, -ī, M., *Nammeius*, a Helvetian ambassador

nātūra, -ae, F., *character*

nāvis, nāvis, F., accusative **nāvem** or **nāvim**, ablative **nāvī** or **nāve** (*ship*); *boat*

nē, negative subordinate conjunctive or adverb, *in order that . . . not, that . . . not;* after verbs of fearing, *that;* sometimes *for fear that*, line 515

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle; see §593, 2, *a*

nec, a form of **neque**

necessārius, -a, -um, literally, *necessary; critical*, lines 297, 312. Masculine used as a substantive, *close friend*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *deny;* or *say . . . not*, the English negative belonging with the objective verb

nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō, M. or F. [**nē**, negative, **homō**, *man*], *no one*

ne-que, negative coördinate conjunction, *and not;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*

nervus, -ī, M., literally, *sinew, tendon;* plural, *powers*

nē-ve, a continuing negative subordinate conjunction, used in second member of clause introduced by **nē**, literally, *or not; or*

nex, necis, F., *death*

nihil, N., indeclinable noun used only in the nominative and accusative, other cases supplied from (**nihilum**), **-ī**, N., *nothing.* **nihilō minus**, literally *none the less* (see §619), i. e., *nevertheless*

nisi, subordinate conjunction [**nē**, *not*, **sī**, *if*], literally, *if not*, often, *unless*

nītor, nītī, nīsus or **nīxus sum**, literally, *lean, rest; rely*

nōbilis, -e [**nōscō**, *know*], *well known*, also *noble* in the sense of *well-born;* superlative, *most prominent*

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, F. [**nōbilis**, *noble*], *nobility*, in the sense of a collective noun, i. e., *nobles*

nōbīs, dative and ablative plural of **ego**

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, ——, *harm;* governs dative

noctū, adverb [**nox**, *night*], *by night*, i. e., *during the night*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [**nē** or **nōn**, *not*, **volō**, *wish*], *be unwilling, not*

wish. For conjugation, see §560

nōmen, nōminis, N. [**nōscō**, *know*], *name*

nōminātim, adverb [**nōmen**, *name*], *by name*

nōn, adverb, *not*

nōnāgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *ninety*

nōn-dum, adverb, *not yet*

nōn-ne, interrogative particle, hinting an affirmative answer, *not.* See §593, 2

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, literally, *not not any*, regularly, *some.* For declension, see §283

nōn-numquam, adverb, literally, *not never*, regularly, *sometimes*

Nōrēia, -ae, F., *Noreia*, a town of the Norici

Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici*, a people living north of the Alps

nōs, plural of **ego**

noster, nostra, nostrum [**nōs**, *we*], possessive adjective, *our.* Masculine plural used as a substantive, *our* (*men*), i. e., *our soldiers*, i. e., in Caesar's narrative, the Roman forces

novem, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *nine*

novus, -a, -um, no comparative, superlative **novissimus**, *new.* **novae rēs**, literally, *new things*, regularly, *change, revolution.* **novissimum agmen**, literally, *the newest part of a marching column;* regularly, *the rear*, and so **novissimī**, the masculine superlative used substantively, line 463

nox, noctis, F., *night*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, literally, *veil one's self;* regularly, *marry*, used of the woman

nūdus, -a, -um, literally, *bare; unprotected*, line 458

nūllus, -a, -um [**ne**, *not*, **ūllus**, *any*], literally, *not any*, i. e., *no* (adjective). For declension, see §283

num, interrogative particle hinting a negative answer, not translatable by any one word. For uses, see §593, 2, *c*

numerus, -ī, M., *number*

numquam, adverb [**nē**, *not*, **umquam**, *ever*], literally, *not ever*, i. e., *never*

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum [**nūntius**, *messenger*], *report*

nūntius, -ī, M., *messenger; message*

nūper, adverb, no comparative, superlative **nūperrimē**, *recently*

O

ob, preposition with accusative, used in Caesar only with forms of **rēs** and **causa**, *on account of.* In composition with other words it means *against, toward*

ob-aerātus, -ī, M., *debtor*

ob-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **obiiciō, obiicere**), **-iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum**, *throw*], literally, *throw toward; throw up*

ob-līvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus sum, *forget;* governs the genitive

ob-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *implore*

obses, obsidis, M. or F., *hostage*, a person given by one party to another as security for an agreement

ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *bind*

ob-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum,** *hold*], *hold;* stronger than **teneō,** For pronunciation, see §6

occāsus, -ūs, M. [**oc-cidō,** *fall upon,* from **cadō,** *fall*], literally, *a falling.* **occāsus sōlis,** literally, *the setting of the sun,* i. e., *sunset,* i. e., *the west*

occidēns, occidentis, adjective [present participle of **occidō,** *fall, set*], literally, *falling,* i. e., *setting.* **occidēns sōl,** literally, *the setting sun,* i. e., *the west*

oc-cīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum [**ob,** intensive, **caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum,** *cause to fall, cut, kill*], *cut off, kill.* **occīsī, occīsōrum,** masculine plural of perfect passive participle used as a substantive, *the slain, the dead*

oc-cultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hide*

oc-cupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize*

Ōceanus, -ī, M., *the ocean*

Ocelum, -ī, N., *Ocelum,* a town of Cisalpine Gaul

octō, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *eight*

octō-decim, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**octō,** *eight,* **decem,** *ten*], *eighteen*

octōgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**octō,** *eight*], *eighty*

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, defective verb, *hate.* For conjugation, see App. 86

of-fendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, literally, *ward off against* some one; regularly, *offend*

offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis, F. [**offendō,** *offend*], *offence*

omnīnō, adverb [**omnis,** *all*], *in all; entirely,* line 502

omnis, -e, *all;* singular often in the sense of *as a whole*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impersonal verb, *it is fitting, it is right;* freely translated by the auxiliary *ought*

oppidum, -ī, N., *town*

op-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**ob,** *against*], literally, *fight against;* regularly, *assault, attack, storm*

(ops), opis, F., no dative singular, *power;* plural, *resources*

opus, operis, N., *work;* in the sense of *fortification,* line 146

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, F. [**ōrō,** *speak*], *speech*

Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, M., *Orgetorix,* a chief of the Helvetians

oriēns, orientis, adjective [present participle of **orior,** *rise*], *rising.* **oriēns sōl,** literally, *the rising sun,* i. e., *the east*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, future participle **oritūrus,** *rise*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *speak; entreat*

os-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *show*

P

P., abbreviation for **Pūblius,** a Roman "first name" [**praenōmen**]

pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, F. [**pābu-**

lor, *forage*, from **pābulum**, *fodder*], *foraging*

pābulum, -ī, N., *fodder*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pāx, pācis**, *peace*], literally, *pacify;* regularly, *subdue*

paene, adverb, *almost*

pāgus, -ī, M., *canton, district*

pār, paris, adjective, *equal, same.* For declension, see App. 38

parātus, -a, -um [perfect passive participle of **parō**, *prepare*], literally, *prepared*, i. e., *ready*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, ——, *obey;* governs dative

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare*

pars, partis, F., *part; side*, lines 30, 32, where **ex** is translated *on; direction*, lines 200, 269

parum, adverb, *too little*, comparative **minus**, *less*, superlative **minimē**, *least, very little*

parvus, -a, -um, *little, small;* comparative **minor, minus**, *less*, line 241; superlative **minimus, -a, -um**, *least* (*very little*); **minimum posse**, literally, *be very little powerful*, i. e., *have very little power*

passus, -ūs, M., *pace*, which with the Romans was a double step, a little over five of our feet. See **mīlle**

pateō, patēre, patuī, ——, literally, *be open, be exposed; extend*, line 42. Present participle used as an adjective, *open, exposed*, line 166

pater, patris, M., *father*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer*, usually in the sense of *allow* or *permit*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few*

pāx, pācis, F., *peace*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, literally, *drive; beat*

per, preposition with accusative, *through.* In composition, *through* or *thoroughly*, intensive

per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, literally, *lead through; construct, extend*

per-ferō, per-ferre, per-tulī, per-lātum, literally, *bear through*, i. e., *endure*

per-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum**, *do*], literally, *do thoroughly*, i. e., *complete; arrange*, line 159

per-fringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [**frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum**, *break*], *break through*

per-fuga, -ae, M. [**per-fugiō**, *desert*], *deserter*

per-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, literally, *flee through*, i. e., *desert*

perīculum, -ī, N., *danger*

perītus, -a, -um, *skilled;* a modifying genitive is translated by the preposition *in*

per-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, literally, *move thoroughly*, i. e., *arouse*

perniciēs, perniciēī, F., no plural, *destruction*

per-paucī, -ae, -a, *very few*

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through*

per-sequor, per-sequī, per-secūtus sum, literally, *follow thoroughly*, i. e., *follow up*

per-sevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *continue*

per-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, literally, *release completely; pay (in full)*

per-suādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, literally, *urge through,* i. e., *persuade;* governs dative

per-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, *frighten thoroughly;* **(timōre) perterritus,** literally, *terrified (by fear),* i. e., *demoralized, panic-stricken*

per-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum,** *hold*], literally, *hold through;* usually, *extend; pertain, be necessary;* **eōdem illō** (adverbs) **pertinēre,** literally, *hold through to that same (point),* i. e., *amount to the same thing*

per-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, literally, *come through,* i. e., *arrive*

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, *seek*

phalanx, phalangis, F., *phalanx,* a closely massed body of troops

pīlum, -ī, N., *spear, javelin*

Pīsō, Pīsōnis, M., a Roman "last name" [**cog-nōmen**]. In lines 109 and 217, *Lucius (Calpurnius) Piso (Caesonius),* consul 58 B.C. In line 218, *Lucius (Calpurnius) Piso,* consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last mentioned

plēbs, plēbis [also **plēbēs, plēbeī**], F., *the common people,* corresponding to the plebeians at Rome. For the pronunciation of the nominative, see §6

plūrimum, adverb, superlative of **multum**

plūrimus, -a, -um, superlative of **multus**

plūs, plūris, etc., comparative of **multus;** for declension, see §501

poena, -ae, F., *punishment;* with **persolvere,** *penalty*

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place;* with **castra,** *pitch;* passive, *be situated,* line 284

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge*

populātiō, populātiōnis, F. [**populor,** *ravage*], *ravaging*

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage*

populus, -ī, M., *people;* plural, *peoples*

porta, -ae, F., *gate*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry*

portōrium, -ī, N. [**portō,** *carry*], literally, *a duty on imports;* translate, *customs taxes*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, ——, *demand*

possessiō, possessiōnis, F., *possession*

possum, posse, potuī, —— [**potis,** *able,* **sum,** *be*], *be able;* with an infinitive it is translated by the auxiliary, *can, could.* For conjugation, see §505

post, preposition with accusative, *after*

posteā, adverb, *afterwards*

posterus, -a, -um, comparative **posterior,** superlative **postrēmus** or **postumus** [**post,** *after*], *following*

postquam, subordinate conjunction, *after*

postrīdiē, adverb [**posterus**, *following*, **diēs**, *day*], *the following day;* **postrīdiē eius diēī**, literally, *on the following day of this day*, i. e., *the next day*

potēns, potentis, adjective [present participle of **possum**, *be able*], *powerful*

potentia, -ae, F. [**potēns**, *powerful*], *power*

potestās, potestātis, F. [**potis**, *able*], literally, *ability; power*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum [**potis**, *able*], literally, *become powerful, obtain control of* or *over, gain;* governs ablative which is translated by an objective

prae, preposition with ablative. In composition, *before, very*

prae-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go before*, i. e., *surpass;* governs accusative

prae-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**, *take*], literally, *take in advance, give precepts to;* usually, *direct*

prae-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum**, *make*], literally, *make* to be *before;* regularly, *place . . . in command of, put . . . in charge of*

prae-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *send in advance, send ahead*

prae-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *choose before*, i. e., *prefer*

praesēns, praesentis, present participle of **praesum**

praesentia, -ae, F. [**praesēns**, *present*], *the present;* **in praesentiā**, *for the present*

prae-sertim, adverb, *especially*

prae-sidium, -ī, N., *garrison, protection*, line 137; *guard*, line 463

prae-stō, prae-stāre, prae-stitī, prae-stātum [**stō, stāre, stetī, stātum**, *stand*], literally, *stand before;* i. e., *surpass*, with dative, line 28; impersonal (direct discourse, **prae-stat**), *it is better*, line 306

prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-fuī, ——, literally, *be before*, usually, *be in command of; hold*, line 293. Present participle, **praesēns, praesentis**, *present*

praeter, preposition with accusative, *except*. In composition, *past*

praeter-eō, praeter-īre, praeter-iī or **praeter-īvī, praeter-itum**, *go past*. **praeter-ita**, neuter plural of perfect passive participle, literally (*things*) *gone past*, i. e., *the past*

praeterita, see **praeter-eō**

praetor, praetōris, M. [**prae-eō**, *go ahead*], *general*. **lēgātus prō praetōre**, literally, *lieutenant for general*, i. e., *lieutenant-general*

prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, often contracted to **prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum**, *grasp*

pretium, -ī, N., *price*

prex, precis, F., *prayer*

prīdiē, adverb [**prior**, *former*, **diēs**, *day*], *the day before*

prīmum, adverb, superlative of **prius**

prīmus, -a, -um, superlative of **prior**

prīnceps, prīncipis, adjective [**prī-**

mus, *first*], *first,* lines 119, 216. Masculine used as a substantive, literally, *the first man,* i. e., *chief, leader,* lines 226, 292, 361

prīncipātus, -ūs, M. [**prīnceps,** *leader*], *leadership*

prior, prius, comparative adjective (no positive), *former,* superlative **prīmus,** *first*

prīstinus, -a, -um [**prior,** *former*], *former*

prius, comparative adverb (no positive), *sooner,* superlative **prīmum,** *first*

priusquam, subordinate conjunction, literally, *sooner than,* i. e., *before*

prīvātim, adverb [**prīvātus,** *private*], *personally*

prīvātus, -a, -um, *private; personal,* line 216

prō, preposition with ablative, *for; in view of,* lines 38, 39. In composition with other words it means *forth, forward*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prove*

prō-dō -dere, -didī, -ditum [**dō, dare, dedī, datum,** *give*], literally, *give forth; hand down* (to future generations)

proelium, -ī, N., *battle*

profectiō, profectiōnis, F. [**proficīscor,** *depart*], *departure*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *start out*

pro-hibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum [**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum,** *have, hold*], literally, *hold forth; keep away,* lines 13, 191; *check (them),* lines 97, 138, 142; *prevent,* line 277, and lines 160 and 175, where **itinere** means *from passing*

pro-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **proiiciō, proiicere**), **-iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], literally, *throw forward; throw on the ground,* line 493

prope, adverb and preposition with accusative, *near;* comparative **propius,** *nearer;* superlative **proximē,** *nearest; last,* line 440

prō-pellō, -pellere, prō-pulī, -pulsum [**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,** *drive*], *drive off*

propinquus, -a, -um, *near.* Feminine used as a substantive, *female relative*

propior, propius, comparative adjective (no positive), *nearer;* superlative **proximus, -a, -um,** *nearest, next, very near*

prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, literally, *place before,* i. e., *set forth*

propter, preposition with accusative, *on account of*

propterea, adverb [**propter,** *on account of,* and some case form of **is**], *on this account.* With a following **quod,** *because,* the translation of **propterea** may be omitted

prō-spiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *look out*

prōvincia, -ae, F., *province*

proximē, superlative of **prope**

proximus, -a, -um, superlative of **propior**

pūblicē, adverb [**pūblicus,** *public*], *officially*

pūblicus, -a, -um, *public.* **rēs pūblica,** *public interests*

Pūblius, -ī, M., *Publius,* a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

puer, puerī, M., *boy; child*

pugna, -ae, F., *fight, fighting*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pugna,** *fight*], *fight*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *cleanse.* Perfect passive participle used as an adjective, literally, *cleansed,* i. e., *blameless*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *reckon;* regularly, *think*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *Pyrenees*

Q

quā, relative adverb, *where* lines 95, 144, 171

quadrāgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**quattuor,** *four*], *forty*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, cardinal (numeral) adjective [**quattuor,** *four,* **centum,** *hundred*], *four hundred*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī or **quaesiī, quaesītum,** *ask*

quālis, -e, interrogative adjective, *of what sort, what*

quam, adverb; preceding superlative, translated by *possible* placed after superlative in English

quam, coördinate conjunction with words implying a comparison, *than.* **quam diū,** line 314, *as long as*

quantus, -a, -um, interrogative adjective, *how great*

quārē, see **rēs**

quārtus, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective [**quattuor,** *four*], *fourth*

quattuor, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *four*

quattuor-decim, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**quattuor,** *four,* **decem,** *ten*], *fourteen*

-que, enclitic coördinate conjunction, *and;* appended to the initial word of the second of two connected expressions. For the place of accent, see §12

queror, querī, questus sum, *complain, complain of*

quī, quae, quod, as relative pronoun or adjective, and interrogative adjective, *who, which,* etc. See §§150, 154. As indefinite, *any.* See §570, Note 5

quidem, adverb, *indeed.* **nē . . . quidem,** *not . . . even,* always separated, and emphasizing what intervenes

quīn, conjunction; introducing subjunctive, *that.* **quīn etiam,** literally, *nay, more,* i. e., *indeed, in fact*

quīn-decim, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, [**quīnque,** *five,* **decem,** *ten*], *fifteen*

quin-gentī, -ae, -a, cardinal (numeral) adjective [**quīnque,** *five,* **centum,** *hundred*], *five hundred*

quīnī, -ae, -a, distributive (numeral) adjective [**quīnque,** *five*], literally, *five by five; five each,* line 279

quīnque, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *five*

quīntus, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective [**quīnque,** *five*], *fifth*

quis, quae, quid, (1) interrogative pronoun, *who, what.* (2) indefi-

nite pronoun, when used after **sī, nisi, nē,** or **num,** *anyone, anything*

quis-quam, no feminine, **quid-quam** or **quic-quam,** indefinite pronoun, *anyone, anything*

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que (**quod-que**), indefinite pronoun, *each one*

quō, subordinate conjunction, used to introduce a purpose clause that contains a comparative, *that;* lines 138, 254

quod, subordinate conjunction, *because.* See §690

quoque, adverb, *also.* Notice the short **o**

quot, indeclinable interrogative adjective, *how many*

R

raeda, -ae, F., *wagon*

rapīna, -ae, F., *plundering*

ratiō, ratiōnis, F., *reckoning*

ratis, ratis, F., *raft*

Rauracī, -ōrum, M., *the Rauraci,* a tribe living north of the Helvetians

re-, red-, an inseparable prefix, meaning *back* or *again*

recēns, recentis, adjective, *recent*

re-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,** *take*], literally, *take back,* i. e., *receive;* with reflective, **sē recipere,** literally, *take one's self back, betake one's self,* usually, *retreat, retire,* in good order

red-eō, red-īre, red-iī or **red-īvī, red-itum,** *go back,* i. e., *return*

red-imō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [**emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum,** *buy*], literally, *buy back,* i. e., *buy up*

red-integrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**integer,** *whole, fresh*], literally, *make fresh again,* i. e., *renew*

reditiō, reditiōnis, F. [**redeō,** *return*], (*a*) *returning*

re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, literally, *lead back; bring back*

re-ferō, re-ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātum, *carry* (*back*); **pedem referre,** literally, *carry back the foot,* i. e., *retreat, retire,* under pressure

rēgnum, -ī, N. [**rēx,** *king*], literally, *royal power, sovereignty*

rē-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **rēiiciō, rēiicere**), **-iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], literally, *throw back; drive back*

re-linquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *leave* (behind)

reliquus, -a, -um [**relinquō,** *leave behind*], literally, *remaining;* regularly, *the rest of, the remaining;* in the sense of *left,* line 204; **nihil reliquī,** literally, *nothing of left,* i. e., *nothing left.* Masculine used as a substantive, *the rest,* lines 208, 508

re-minīscor, -minīscī, ——, *remember*

re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, literally, *move back; remove*

re-nūntiō, -nūntiāre, -nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, [**nūntius,** *messenger*], literally, *announce back,* i. e., *report*

re-pellō, re-pellere, rep-pulī, re-

pulsum [**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,** *drive*], *drive back*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *unexpected*

re-periō, re-perīre, rep-perī, re-pertum, *find out*

re-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *blame*

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**pugna,** *fight*], literally, *fight back; offset, outweigh;* governs dative

rēs, reī, F., *thing, matter, affair, consideration,* etc. **quā-rē,** literally, *on account of which thing; and therefore;* introducing a questi· *why.* For **rēspūblica,** see **pūblicus**

re-scindō, -scindere, re-scidī, -scissum, literally, *cut back; cut down, break down*

re-scīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī or **re-sciī, -scītum** [**sciō,** *know*], literally, *begin to know again; find out*

re-sistō, re-sistere, re-stitī, ——, literally, *stand back; resist,* governs dative

re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply*

respōnsum, -ī, N. [neuter of perfect passive participle of **respondeō**], literally, *a thing replied,* i. e., *answer, reply*

rēspūblica, see **pūblicus**

re-stituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum [**statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum,** *station* (transitive), from **stō,** *stand* (intransitive)], literally, *put up again* (transitive); *restore*

re-tineō, tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum,** *hold*], literally, *hold back; retain*

re-vertor, re-vertī, re-vertī, reversum, deponent in present system, literally, *turn back,* intransitive; *return*

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone*

rīpa, -ae, F., *bank* (of a river)

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask*

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*

Rōmānus, -a, -um [**Rōma,** *Rome*], *Roman.* Masculine used as a substantive, *a Roman,* plural, *the Romans*

rūrsus, adverb [contracted from **reversus,** *turned back*], *again*

S

saepe, adverb, comparative **saepius,** superlative **saepissimē,** *often*

salūs, salūtis, F., *safety*

Santonēs, Santonum, line 162, and **Santonī, Santonōrum,** line 196; M., *the Santones,* a tribe living on the northern bank of the Garonne, in southwestern Gaul

sarcinae, -ārum, F., soldiers' *packs,* corresponding to our knapsacks

satis, adverb, *sufficiently, enough;* e. g., **satis magna,** *sufficiently large* or *large enough;* **satis commodē,** literally, *sufficiently conveniently,* i. e., *very well;* considered as an indeclinable adjective, *sufficient, enough,* lines 48, 276; **satis causae,** *sufficient* (of) *reason;* §589, *c*

satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, passive **satis-fīō, -fierī, -factus**

sum, literally, *do enough*, i. e., *satisfy; pay damages*

scelus, sceleris, N., *crime*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know*

scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*

sēcrētō, adverb, *secretly*

secundus, -a, -um, [**sequor**, *follow*], *second; favorable;* **secundiōrēs rēs**, literally, *more favorable things*, i. e., *greater prosperity*

sed, coördinate conjunction, *but*

sē-decim (or **sex-decim**), indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**sex**, *six*, **decem**, *ten*], *sixteen*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *seditious, treasonable*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., *the Segusiavi*, a tribe of Gaul to the south of the Aeduans

sēmentis, sēmentis, F., *sowing, planting*

semper, adverb, *always*

senātus, -ūs, M. [**senex**, *an old man*], literally, *a collection of elders*, regularly, *senate*, in the sense of a governing body of prominent men

senex, senis, adjective, comparative **senior** or **maior** (**nātū**), superlative **maximus** (**nātū**), *old.* Masculine used as a substantive, *old man.* **maiōrēs** (with **nātū** understood), literally, (*those*) *greater* (*as to* or *because of their birth*), i. e., *ancestors*, lines 236, 262

sēnī, -ae, -a, distributive (numeral) adjective [**sex**, *six*], literally, *six by six; six each*, line 279

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive*

sēparātim, adverb, *separately*

septen-triō, -triōnis, M., generally plural, **septen-triōnēs, -triōnum**, M., literally, *the seven plow-oxen*, i. e., the seven stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear; i. e., *the north*

septimus, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective [**septem**, *seven*], *seventh*

sepultūra, -ae, F., *burial*

Sēquana, -ae, M., *the Seine*

Sēquanus, -ī, M., *a Sequanian* or *one of the Sequani*, plural *the Sequanians* or *the Sequani*, a tribe living north of the Aeduans

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*

servitūs, servitūtis, F., [**servus**, *slave*], *slavery*

servus, -ī, M., *slave*

seu, another form of **sīve**

sex, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *six*

sex-āgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**sex**, *six*], *sixty*

sī, subordinate conjunction, *if*

signum, -ī, N., *standard*

silva, -ae, F., *forest*

simul, adverb, *at the same time*

sīn, subordinate conjunction, *but if*

sine, preposition with ablative, *without*

singulī, -ae, -a, distributive (numeral) adjective, *one by one, one at a time*

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left*

sīve, coördinate conjunction, *or if;* **sīve (seu) . . . sīve**, *either . . . or*

socer, -socerī, M., *father-in-law*

socius, -a, -um, *associated.* Masculine used as a substantive, *ally*

sōl, sōlis, M., no genitive plural, *sun*

solum, -ī, N., *soil,* line 194. Notice the short **o**

sōlum, adverb [**sōlus,** *alone, only*], *only,* lines 216, 329, 374

sōlus, -a, -um, genitive **sōlīus,** etc., *alone,* line 319. For declension, see §283

soror, sorōris, F., *sister.* **soror ex mātre,** literally, *sister from* (*his*) *mother,* i. e., *his half-sister* (from the same mother)

spatium, -ī, N., *space,* of time, line 128; *distance*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *look, face;* of countries, *lie, be situated*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**spēs** *hope*], *hope, hope for*

spēs, speī, F., plural limited to nominative and accusative, *hope*

sponte, ablative of a defective noun, meaning *free will,* whose only other form is **spontis,** genitive; **suā sponte,** *by their own influence*

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum [**stō,** *stand,* intransitive], literally, *station, stand,* transitive; *decide,* line 195; *take measures,* line 367; **nē quid gravius statueret,** literally, *not to decide anything too severe,* i. e., *not to take any too severe measures*

studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, *be eager, desire;* governs dative

studium, -ī, N., [**studeō,** *desire*], literally, *desire; devotion,* 356

sub, preposition with accusative (with verb implying motion) or ablative (with verb implying rest), *under; toward,* line 283; *at the foot of,* line 392; *close to,* line 447. In composition with other words it means *under, from under* (which often means *up*)

sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, literally, *lead from under;* regularly, *withdraw*

sub-eō, sub-īre, sub-iī, sub-itum, *under-go*

sub-iciō, -icere (pronounced as if spelled **subiiciō, subiicere**), **-iēcī, -iectum** [**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw*], *throw* (from under)

sublātus, -a, -um, perfect passive participle of **tollō**

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, literally, *lift from under; help,* line 298

sub-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, literally, *move from under;* plural of perfect passive participle used as a substantive, literally, *the having-been-moved-from-under,* i. e., *those who had been dislodged,* line 468

sub-sidium, -ī, N., *reserve, reinforcement*

sub-sistō, -sistere, sub-stitī, ——, literally, *stand under* (an attack); i. e., *make stands, stop*

sub-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, literally, *carry from under;* we say, *bring up*

suc-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, literally, *go under; approach*

suī, sibi, sē, reflexive pronoun, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves,* etc. See §§404, 405, 407

Sulla, -ae, M., a Roman "last name" [**cog-nōmen**]; (*Lucius*

Cornelius) *Sulla*, consul 88 B.C., and dictator

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*

summa, -ae, F. [feminine of **summus**, superlative of **superus**, *high*, with **rēs** understood], *sum*

summus, -a, -um, superlative of **superus**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take*

sūmptus, -a, -um, participle of **sūmō**

sūmptus, -ūs, M. [**sūmō**, *take*], *expense*

super-, in composition, *over*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**super**, *over*], literally, *get over*, as we say, "get on top"; regularly, *overcome, conquer*

super-sum, super-esse, super-fuī, literally, *be (left) over*, i. e., *remain*, line 422; *survive*, line 482

superus, -a, -um, comparative **superior**, superlative **suprēmus** or **summus**, *high;* **summus mōns**, *the highest part of the mountain, the top of the mountain*

sup-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, literally, *seek from under, seek to help;* regularly, *be on hand*

suppliciter, adverb, *humbly*

supplicium, -ī, N., *punishment*

sus-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**, *take*], *undertake*

suspīciō, suspīciōnis, F., *suspicion*

sus-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**, *hold*], literally, *hold under; sustain*

suus, -a, -um, reflexive, possessive adjective, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)*, according to the subject of the clause or sentence

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus**, a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

tabula, -ae, F., literally, *writing tablet; list*

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent*

tam, adverb, *so*, in the sense of *to such a degree*. Contrast **ita**

tamen, adverb, *nevertheless*

tandem, adverb, *at length*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*

tēlum, -ī, N., *missile*, line 147; *spear*, line 477

temperantia, -ae, F. [**temperō**, *refrain*], *moderation*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *refrain*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *try, attempt*

tempus, temporis, N., *time*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold;* **memoriā tenēre**, literally, *hold in memory*, i. e., *remember*

tertius, -a, -um, ordinal (numeral) adjective [**trēs**, *three*], *third*

testis, testis, M. or F., *witness*

Tigurīnus, -ī, M., *Tigurinus*, the name of one canton of the Helvetians; plural, *the Tigurini*, the name of the individuals of this canton

timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, *fear*

timor, timōris, M. [**timeō**, *fear*], *fear*

Titus, -ī, M., *Titus*, a Roman "first name" [**prae-nōmen**]

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *endure*

tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, literally, *raise;* very often, *take away,* lines 85, 450; *elate,* line 272

Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, M., *the Tolosates,* a tribe in southwestern Gaul near modern Toulouse

tōtus, -a, -um, genitive **tōtīus,** etc., *the whole, whole;* **tōta Gallia,** *the whole (of) Gaul.* For declension, see §283

trā-, form of **trāns** in composition

trā-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [**dō, dare, dedī, datum,** *give*], literally, *give over; give up*

trā-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead . . . across*

trāgula, -ae, F., a Gallic *lance*

trāns, preposition with accusative, *across, over.* In composition it often has the form, **trā-**

trāns-eō, trāns-īre, trāns-iī, trāns-itum, literally, *go across,* i. e., *cross*

trāns-fīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *pierce (across)*

tre-centī, -ae, -a, cardinal (numeral) adjective [**trēs,** *three,* **centum,** *hundred*], *three hundred*

trēs, tria, cardinal (numeral) adjective, *three.* For declension see §106

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *assign* (it)

trīduum, -ī, N., [**trēs,** *three,* **diēs,** *day*], (the space of) *three days*

trīgintā, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective [**trēs,** *three*], *thirty*

triplex, triplicis, adjective [**trēs,** *three*], literally, *three-fold;* regularly, *triple*

Troucillus, -ī, M. (*Gaius Valerius*) *Troucillus,* a Gallic leader

Tulingī, -ōrum, M., *the Tulingi,* a tribe north of the Helvetians

tum, adverb, *then*

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, personal pronoun, *you;* sometimes reflexive (except in the nominative), *of yourself,* etc. See §551

tuus, -a, -um, possessive adjective, *your,* referring to one person

U

ubi, relative or interrogative adverb, *where;* relative, *when*

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge,* line 217; *punish,* line 256

ūllus, -a, -um, genitive **ūllīus,** etc., *any;* as substantive, *any one,* line 141. See §283

ulterior, ulterius, comparative adjective (no positive), *farther;* superlative **ultimus. Gallia ulterior,** *farther Gaul,* i. e., the portion of modern France that had been overrun by the Romans, contrasted with **Gallia citerior** or **Cisalpina,** which was a part of northern Italy

ūnā, adverb [**ūnus,** *one*], *together;* lines 89, 309

unde, relative and interrogative adverb, literally, *whence,* i. e., *from which*

ūn-dē-vīgintī, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, literally, *one from twenty,* i. e., *nineteen*

undique, adverb, literally, *from all*

sides; on all sides, lines 30, 414; *from all directions*, line 71

ūnus, -a, -um, genitive **ūnīus**, etc., *one; only*, line 148. See §283

urbs, urbis, F., *city*, i. e., Rome, line 111. For pronunciation, see §6

ut or **utī**, subordinate conjunction; with subjunctive of purpose, *that* or *in order that;* see §414; with subjunctive of result, (*so*) *that;* see §436, *c;* as conjunctive adverb with indicative, *as*

uter, utra, utrum, genitive **utrīus**, etc.; interrogative adjective, *which* (of two). See §283

utī, see **ut**

ūtī, infinitive of **ūtor**

utinam, adverb, *may, would that, I wish that, I hope that*, used in the expression of a wish. See §778

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use;* with **cōnsiliō**, *adopt;* governs ablative

utrum, conjunction, *whether*

uxor, uxōris, F., *wife*

V

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *be vacant*

vadum, -ī, N., *ford*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wander*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *be strong;* **plūrimum valēre**, *be very strong*

Valerius, -ī, M., *Valerius;* see **Troucillus**

vāllum, -ī, N., *rampart, wall*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste*

vectīgal, vectīgālis, N., *tax, revenue*

vel, coördinate conjunction, *or;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*

Verbigenus, -ī, M., *Verbigenus*, the name of a canton of the Helvetians

verbum, -ī, N., *word*

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*

vergō, vergere, ——, ——, literally, *slope; stretch*

vergobretus, -ī, M., *vergobret*, the title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduans

Verucloetius, -ī, M., *Verucloetius*, a Helvetian ambassador

vērus, -a, -um, *true*

vesper, vesperis, or **vesper, vesperī**, M., *evening*

vester, vestra, vestrum, possessive adjective [**vōs**, *you*, plural], *your*, referring to more than one person

veterānus, -a, -um [**vetus**, *old*], *veteran*

vetus, veteris, adjective, literally, *old; former; comparative* **vetustior**, superlative **veterrimus**. For declension, see App. 35

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *trouble, harass*

via, -ae, F., *way*

victus, -a, -um, participle of **vincō**

victōria, -ae, F. [**victor**, *victor*], *victory*

vīcus, -ī, M., *village*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* in passive, *be seen; seem, appear*

vigilia, -ae, F., *watch*, one of the four equal divisions into which the Romans divided the time between sunset and sunrise

vīgintī, indeclinable cardinal (numeral) adjective, *twenty*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer;* plural of perfect passive

participle used as a substantive, literally, *the having-been conquered*, i. e., *those who had been conquered*

vinculum, -ī, N., *chain*

vir, virī, M., *man*

virtūs, virtūtis, F. [**vir,** *man*], literally, *manliness;* regularly, *bravery*

vīs, vīs, plural **vīrēs, vīrium,** F., singular, *force;* plural, *strength;* **per vim,** literally, *through force,* i. e., *forcibly;* **vim facere,** *use force.* See §496

vīta, -ae, F., *life*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *avoid*

vix, adverb, *with difficulty*

vōbīs, dative and ablative plural of **tū**

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, M., *the Vocontii,* a tribe living in farther Gaul

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing.* See §560

voluntās, voluntātis, F., [**volēns,** present participle of **volō,** *willing*], literally, *willingness; permission,* line 122; *goodwill,* line 356; *consent,* line 379; *wish,* line 384

vōs, plural of **tū**

vulgus, -ī, N., no plural, *the common people;* **exīstimātiō vulgī,** literally, *the thought of the common people,* i. e., *public opinion*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**vulnus,** *wound*], *wound*

vulnus, vulneris, N., *wound*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

(able) **be able,** possum
about, circum, *preposition;* circiter, *adverb*
abundant, cōpiōsus
accomplish, cōnficiō
(**account**), **on account of,** propter; *with forms of* rēs *and* causa, ob; *also expressed by ablative of cause;* **on this account,** propterea
(**accustomed**) **be accustomed,** cōnsuēvī; *see* cōnsuēscō
across, trāns; **lead across,** trādūcō
affect, afficiō
after, post, *preposition and adverb;* postquam, *subordinate conjunction;* **day after,** postrīdiē
afterwards, posteā
again, rūrsus
(**ahead**) **send ahead,** praemittō
aid, auxilium
alarm, commoveō
all, omnis
allow, patior; **it is allowed,** licet
ally, socius
almost, ferē; paene
alone, sōlus; ūnus (*one*)
already, iam
also, quoque
although, quamquam; etsī; cum
always, semper
ambassador, lēgātus
ambuscades, īnsidiae
among, inter (*amid*), apud (*with*)
and, et; atque, *emphasizing what follows;* -que, *connecting closely;* **and not,** neque; **and so,** itaque
another, alius
announce, ēnūntiō
answer, respondeō
any, aliquis; quis, *after* sī, nisi, nē, num
anyone, aliquis; quis, *after* sī, nisi, nē, num
anything, aliquid; quid, *after* sī, nisi, nē, num
appoint, cōnstituō
approach, adventus
arms, arma
army, exercitus
around, circum
arouse, commoveō
arrange, collocō
arrival, adventus
arrive, perveniō
as, ut *with indicative*
ask, rogō; quaerō (*ask a question*)
assault, oppugnō
assemble, conveniō
assert, exsequor
at first, prīmō; **at last,** dēmum; **at length,** tandem; dēnique (*finally*)
attack, aggredior; oppugnō (*assault*); impetum faciō (*make a charge*)
attempt, cōnor, *verb;* cōnātum, *noun*
avenge, ulcīscor

await, exspectō
(away) be away, absum; carry away, take away, tollō; keep away, prohibeō; away from, ab

B

(back) come back, redeō (*go back*); revertor (*turn back*); drive back, repellō; rēiciō (*throw back*)
baggage, impedīmenta, *plural*
bank, rīpa
battle, proelium; pugna (*hand to hand;* battle line, aciēs
be, sum; be away, be from, absum; be near at hand, īnstō; be on hand, suppetō; be over, be in command of, praesum
because, quod
become, fīō
before, ante, *preposition and adverb;* anteā, *adverb;* antequam, priusquam, *subordinate conjunction;* day before, prīdiē
began, coepī
begin, incipiō; coepī, *perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses*
beginning, initium
between, inter
block, impediō
boat, nāvis
body, corpus
bound, contineō
boy, puer
brave, fortis
bravery, virtūs; fortitūdō
bravest, fortissimus
breadth, lātitūdō
bridge, pōns
bring in, importō
bring together, condūcō, *of men;* cōnferō, *of things*
bring upon, īnferō
broad, lātus
brother, frāter
build, faciō
building, aedificium
but, sed; but if, sīn
buy, coëmō
by, ab, *or ablative*

C

call, appellō (*address*); vocō; *call* together, convocō
camp, castra, *plural*
can, possum (*be able*), *with infinitive*
canton, pāgus
carry, portō; carry away, tollō; carry on, gerō; carry through, perferō
cart, carrus
cause, causa, *noun;* cūrō, *verb*
cavalry, equitātus, *collective;* equitēs (*horsemen*)
cavalryman, eques
cease, dēsistō
certain, certus
chance, cāsus
change, commūtātiō
character, nātūra
charge, concursus
chief, prīnceps
child, puer; children, puerī; līberī (*free*)
choose, dēligō
close friend, necessārius
city, urbs
collect, condūcō (*lead together*), *of men;* cōgō (*drive together*), *of*

men; cōnferō (*bring together*), *of things*
come, veniō; **come back,** redeō (*go back*); revertor (*turn back*)
come together, conveniō
(command) be in command, praesum; **place in command,** praeficiō
common people, vulgus; multitūdō (*the multitude*)
compact, cōnfertus
compel, cōgō
complain, queror
complete, cōnficiō
conceal, abdō
concerning, dē
conference, concilium
conquer, superō; vincō
conspiracy, coniūrātiō
construct, perdūcō
consul, cōnsul
consume, cōnsūmō
continually, continenter
control, imperium
conveniently, commodē
corn, frūmentum
council, concilium
courage, virtūs
cross, trānseō
custom, īnstitūtum; mōs
cut to pieces, concīdō

D

daily, cotīdiānus, *adjective;* cotīdiē, *adverb*
danger, perīculum
dare, audeō
daughter, fīlia
day, diēs; **day after,** postrīdiē; **day before,** prīdiē
daybreak, prīma lūx
death, mors
deceive, dēcipiō
decide, cōnstituō
declare, cōnfirmō
deep, altus
defeat, calamitās
defend, dēfendō
delay, moror
demand, poscō
depart, discēdō
departure, profectiō
dependent, cliēns
depth, altitūdō
deserve, mereor
desire, studeō, *with dative;* cupiō, *with dative or with accusative and infinitive*
desirous, cupidus
despise, dēspiciō
determine, cōnstituō
difficult, difficilis
disappoint, dēiciō
disaster, calamitās
disclose, ēnūntiō
discuss, agō
dispatch, litterae
distance, spatium
(distant) most distant, extrēmus
distress, dolor
ditch, fossa
divide, dīvidō
do, faciō
doubleheaded, anceps
doubtful, dubius
down from, dē
draw up, īnstruō
drive, agō; **drive back,** repellō; rēiciō (*throw back*)

E

each, quisque
eagerness, studium

easily, facile
easy, facilis
eight, octō
eighty, octōgintā
either, aut, *excluding other alternative;* vel
elate, tollō
embassy, lēgātiō
eminent, ēgregius
encamp, cōnsīdō
end, fīnis
endure, perferō
enemy, hostis, hostēs
enough, satis
enroll, cōnscrībō
entrust, mandō
equal, pār
especially, maximē; praesertim
establish, cōnfirmō
even, etiam; **not even,** nē . . . quidem, *emphasizing the intervening word*
evening, vesper
except, praeter
extend, pertineō, pateō
extraordinary, incrēdibilis
eye, oculus

F

fact, rēs
faith, fidēs
fall, cadō
far, longē
farther, ulterior, *adjective;* longius, *adverb*
farthest, extrēmus, *adjective;* longissimē, *adverb*
father, pater
favor, grātia, *noun;* faveō, *verb, with dative*
favorable, secundus
fear, timor, *noun;* timeō, *verb (be timid about anything);* vereor, *verb (fear reasonably)*
feel, sentiō
few, paucī
field, ager
fiercely, ācriter
fifteen, quīndecim
fight, contendō
fill, compleō
finally, dēnique
find, reperiō
finish, cōnficiō
fire, ignis; **set fire to, set on fire,** incendō
first, prīmus, prīnceps, *adjectives;* prīmum, *adverb;* **at first,** prīmō
(fitting) it is fitting, oportet
five, quīnque; **five each,** quīnī; **five hundred,** quīngentī
flee, fugiō
flight, fuga
flow, fluō
follow, sequor
following, posterus
foot, pēs
for, *conjunction,* nam; enim, *postpositive*
force, vīs; **forces,** cōpiae
ford, vadum
forest, silva
forget, oblīvīscor
former, vetus
fort, castellum
fortification, mūnītiō
fortify, mūniō
fortune, fortūna
forty, quadrāgintā
four, quattuor; **four each,** quaternī; **four hundred,** quadringentī
fourth, quārtus

free, līber, *adjective;* ēripiō, *verb*
freely, libenter
free will, sponte
friend, amīcus
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcitia
frighten away, dēterreō; **frighten thoroughly**, perterreō
from, ab; dē; ex; **from there**, inde; **from all sides**, undique

G

gain, conciliō
garrison, praesidium
gate, porta
get back, recipiō; **get possession of**, potior, *with ablative*
give, dō
go, eō; **go across**, trānseō
god, deus
good, bonus
grain, frūmentum
grant, concēdō
great, magnus; **great number**, multitūdō
guard, praesidium; **be on one's guard**, caveō

H

half-way, medius
halt, cōnsistō
hand, manus; **be near at hand**, īnstō; **be on hand**, suppetō
happen, accidō (*befall*); fīō (*become*)
harm, iniūria, *noun;* noceō, *verb*
harass, lacessō
hardly, aegrē
hasten, contendō (*strive*); mātūrō; *with object infinitive*
hate, ōdī
have, habeō
he, is
head, caput
hear, **hear of**, audiō
heavily, graviter
height, altitūdō
help, auxilium
her, eam, *objective, when not reflexive;* **her (self)**, sē; **her**, eius, *when not reflexive;* **her (own)**, suus, -a, -um
here, hīc
hide, abdō (*put away*); occultō (*conceal*)
high, altus; **higher**, altior; superior, *when not definitely compared with something else*
hill, collis
him, eum, *when not reflexive*
hinder, prohibeō (*keep away from*); dēterreō (*frighten from*); impediō (*impede*)
hindrance, impedīmentum
his, eius, *when not reflexive;* his (own), suus, -a, -um
hither, citerior, *adjective*
hold, teneō; obtineō
home, domus
hope, spēs, *noun;* spērō, *verb*
horn, cornū
horse, equus
horseman, eques
hostage, obses
hour, hōra
how large, quantus
hundred, centum; *for* **two hundred**, *etc., see* **two**, *etc.*
hunger, famēs
hunt up, conquīrō

I

I, ego
if, sī; if not, nisi, *when the entire condition is negatived;* but if, sīn
ill, aeger
import, importō
in, in, *with ablative;* in all, omnīnō; in view of, prō; in that place, ibi
increase, augeō
induce, addūcō
inflict, īnferō
influence, auctōritās, *noun;* addūcō, *verb*
inform, certiōr(-em) faciō
inhabit, incolō
injure, noceō
injury, iniūria
insult, contumēlia
intervene, intercēdō
into, in, *with accusative*
iron, ferrum
it, id; *also* is, ea (*accusative* eum, eam), *if the gender of the Latin noun represented is masculine or feminine*
its, eius, *when not reflexive;* its (own), suus, -a, -um

J

javelin, tēlum, *general term* (*missile*); pīlum
join, iungō
journey, iter
judge, iūdicō

K

keen, ācer
keep away, prohibeō
kill, interficiō (*make way with*); occīdō (*slay*)
kindness, grātia
kinsman, cōnsanguineus
know, intellegō (*understand*); cognōvī (*I have ascertained*)
(knowing) not knowing, īnsciēns
(knowledge) without the knowledge of, īnsciēns (*not knowing*)
(known) well known, nōbilis

L

lack, inopia
lake, lacus
language, lingua
large, magnus
(last) at last, dēmum
lately, nūper
law, lēx
lay aside, dēpōnō
lay waste, vāstō
lead, dūcō; lead across, trādūcō; lead out, ēdūcō
leader, dux
leadership, prīncīpātus
learn, cognōscō
least, minimus, *adjective;* minimē, *adverb*
leave, relinquō
legion, legiō
length, longitūdō; at length, dēnique
less, minor, *adjective;* minus, *adverb*
letter, littera (*letter of the alphabet*); litterae (*epistle*)
levy, cōnscrībō
lie, vergō
lieutenant, lēgātus
light, lūx
likewise, item
limited, angustus

line of march, iter; **line of battle,** aciēs
(little) too little, parum
live (in), incolō
long, longus
long, for a long time, diū
lose, āmittō
love, amor
low, īnferus

M

(made) be made, fīō
make, faciō
magistrate, magistrātus
man, homō; vir
manliness, virtūs
many, multī
march, line of march, iter; **march,** iter faciō (*make a march*)
marked, īnsignis
marry off, collocō, *with* nūptum, *expressed or understood*
meanwhile, interim
memory, memoria
message, nūntius
messenger, nūntius
mile, mīlle passūs
miles, mīlia passuum
military, mīlitāris
mind, animus
mine, meus
mischief, maleficium
missile, tēlum
mission, lēgātiō
month, mēnsis
moreover, autem
most, plūrimus, *adjective;* maximē, *adverb; also by superlative*
mother, māter
mountain, mōns
move, moveō
much, multus; *adverb,* multō
multitude, multitūdō
my, meus

N

name, nōmen, *noun;* appellō, *verb*
narrow, angustus; **narrowness, narrows,** angustiae
near, prope, *preposition and adverb;* **nearer,** citerior (*nearer Rome*); propior, *adjective;* propius, *preposition and adverb;* **nearest,** proximus; **be near at hand,** īnstō
neighbor, fīnitimus
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um
neither, neque
nevertheless, nihilō minus
new, novus
night, nox; **night watch,** vigilia
nine, novem
nineteen, ūndēvīgintī, (*one from twenty*)
ninety, nōnāgintā
no, *adjective,* nūllus; *in answering a question,* minimē; **no one,** nēmō
noble, nōbilis
nobility, nōbilitās
none, nihil (*nothing*); nūllī (*no persons*)
nor, neque
north, septentriō(-nēs)
not, nōn; *sometimes* nē *with subjunctives, according to use;* **not even,** nē . . . quidem, *emphasizing the intervening word;* **not yet,** nōndum; **not only . . . but also,** nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam
noted, nōbilis; cognitus
nothing, nihil

now, iam
number, numerus; great number, multitūdō

O

oath, iūs iūrandum
obey, pāreō
obtain one's request, impetrō
ocean, Ōceanus
often, saepe
old, vetus (*former*); senex (*advanced in years*)
on, in *with ablative; sometimes* ex *when denoting the point of view;* on account of, propter; ob *with forms of* rēs *and* causa; *also expressed by ablative of cause;* on all sides, undique; on the other hand, contrā; carry on, gerō; on this account, propterea
one, ūnus; one by one, singulī
only, sōlum (*alone*); modo (*merely*)
(open), be open, pateō
opportunity, facultās
or, aut, *excluding other alternative;* vel
order, iubeō, *with accusative and infinitive;* imperō, *with accusative and dative, or dative and* ut *clause*
O that, *expression of wish* (*hope or regret*)
other, aliī (*of more than two*), the other, alter (*of two*); the others reliquī
ought, oportet (*it is fitting*); dēbeō (*owe*)
our, ours, noster
out of, out from, ex
outer, exterior
outmost, extrēmus
(over) be over, praesum
overcome, superō
overtake, cōnsequor

P

pace, passus
pardon, condōnō
part, pars
pay, persolvō
peace, pāx
people, populus; common people, vulgus; multitūdō (*the multitude*)
persuade, persuādeō
place, locus, *noun;* colloco, *verb;* place in command, praeficiō
plan, cōnsilium
pledge, fidēs
plenty, cōpia
point out, dēmōnstrō
popularity, grātia
population, multitūdō hominum (*multitude of human beings*)
possible, quam, *with superlatives*
power, potestās; royal power, rēgnum
powerful, potēns
praise, laudō
prefer, mālō (*wish more*); praeoptō (*choose in preference*)
prepare, comparō; parō
price, pretium
private, prīvātus
productive, frūmentārius
prominent, nōbilis
promise, polliceor
property, fortūnae
protection, praesidium
province, prōvincia
public, pūblicus

Q

(quarters) winter quarters, hīberna
quickly, celeriter

R

raft, ratis
ravage, populor
ready, parātus
realize, intellegō
rear, novissimum agmen (*the last part of the marching column;* novissimī (*the last ones*)
reason, causa
receive, recipiō
recent, recēns
recently, nūper
reckoning, ratiō
refinement, hūmānitās
refrain, temperō
rely, nītor
remaining, reliquus
remarkable, incrēdibilis
remember, reminīscor
reply, respondeō, *verb;* respōnsum, *noun*
report, ēnūntiō
republic, rēs pūblica
(request) obtain one's request, impetrō
reserve, subsidium
resort, commeō
resources, opēs
(rest) the rest of, reliquus
retreat, sē recipere
return, revertor (*turn back*); redeō (*go back*)
revolution, novae rēs
right, iūs
ripe, mātūrus
rise, orior
rising, oriēns
river, flūmen
road, iter; via
rout, pellō; prōpellō
royal power, rēgnum
rule, imperium
run, accurrō

S

safety, salūs
same, īdem; to the same place, eōdem
say, dīcō
scarcely, vix
scarcity, inopia
scout, explōrātor
sea, mare
second, the second, alter
see, videō
seek, petō
seize, occupō
senate, senātus
send, mittō; send ahead, praemittō
separate, dīvidō
servant, servus
set fire to, set on fire, incendō; set out, proficīscor
setting, occāsus
seven, septem
seventh, septimus
several, complūrēs
she, ea
shield, scūtum
ship, nāvis
show, ostendō (*declare*); dēmōnstrō (*point out*)
sick, aeger
side, latus

sight, cōnspectus
signal, īnsignis
sister, soror
six, sex
sixteen, sēdecim
skillful, perītus
slay, occīdō
slave, servus
slavery, servitūs
(**slope**) **half way up the slope**, in colle mediō
snatch, ēripiō
so, ita (*in such a manner*); tam (*to such a degree*); **so great**, tantus.
soldier, mīles
some, nōnnūllī; aliqui
son, fīlius
space, spatium
speech, ōrātiō
(**stand**), **take one's stand**, cōnsistō
start out, proficīscor
state, cīvitās, (*body of citizens*); rēs pūblica (*commonwealth*)
sternly, graviter
storm, oppugnō
strong, firmus
struggle, contendō
subdue, pācō
sudden, subitus
suffer, patior
sufficient, **sufficiently**, satis
sun, sōl
sunset = **the setting of the sun**
supply, cōpia
surpass, praecēdō (*get ahead of*), *with accusative;* praestō (*be ahead of*), *with dative*
suspicion, suspīciō
sword, gladius

T

take, capiō; sūmō (*take away*); **take away**, tollō (*raise*); **take by storm**, expugnō
talk, agō (*discourse*); loquor (*converse*)
tax, vectīgal
tear down, rescindō
ten, decem
territory, fīnēs
than, quam
that, is; ille
their, eōrum, eārum, *when not reflexive;* **their** (**own**), suus, -a, -um
them, eōs, eās, ea
thence, inde
there, ibi
these, hī, hae, haec
they, eī, eae, ea
thing, rēs
think, arbitror (*judge*); exīstimō (*estimate*); putō (*reckon*)
third, tertius
this, hīc
though, quamquam; etsī; cum
those, eī, illī
thousand, mīlle, *usually an adjective;* **thousands**, mīlia
three, trēs
through, per; **carry through**, perferō
throw, coniciō; **throw down**, dēiciō
thus, ita
time, tempus; **for a long time**, diū
to, ad; *also expressed by indirect object*
together, ūnā; **bring together**, condūcō, *of men;* cōnferō, *of things;* **call together**, convocō

too little, parum
(top) the top of, summus
touch upon, attingō
toward, ad
town, oppidum
trader, mercātor
train, īnstituō
triple, triplex
troops, cōpiae
trouble, vexō
trust, cōnfīdō
try, cōnor
turn aside, turn away, āvertō
twelve, duodecim
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo; **two hundred,** ducentī

U

under, sub, *with accusative or ablative*
undergo, subeō
undertake, suscipiō
unexpected, repentīnus
unexpectedly, improvīsō
unfavorable, adversus
unhampered, expedītus
unless, nisi
until, dum
unwilling, invītus; **be unwilling,** nōlō
urge (on), hortor
use, ūtor; **use up,** cōnsūmō

V

very, *translated by Latin superlative;* **very few,** perpaucī
victory, victōria
(view) in view of, prō
village, vīcus
violence, vīs

W

wall, mūrus; vāllum (*rampart*)
wander, errō; vagor
war, bellum
warn, moneō
(watch) night watch, vigilia
way, via; iter
weapon, tēlum
wearied, dēfessus
we, nōs
weep, fleō
well known, nōbilis
west = the setting of the sun
what? quid? quī, quae, quod, *when adjective;* **what sort of?** quālis
when, cum; ubi, *relative;* quandō, *interrogative*
whence, unde
where, ubi, quā
whether, utrum; sī
which, quod; **which (of two),** uter
while, dum
who, quī, *relative;* quis, *interrogative*
whole, tōtus
whom, quem
whose, cuius
why, cūr
wide, lātus
widely, lātē
width, lātitūdō
wife, uxor
will, sponte
(willing) be willing, volō
willingness, voluntās
win, conciliō
wing, cornū
winter, pass the winter, hiemō
winter quarters, hīberna

wish, volō; **wish that,** *optative subjunctive*
with, cum; **with difficulty,** vix
withdraw, discēdō
without, sine
woman, mulier
wonder, admīror
work, opus
would that, *optative subjunctive*
wound, vulnus, *noun;* vulnerō, *verb*
wrong, iniūria

Y

year, annus
(yet) not yet, nōndum
yield, concēdō
yoke, iugum
you, tū, *singular;* vōs, *plural*
your, tuus, *singular;* vester, *plural*

INDEX

(References are to Sections; light faced figures refer to the body of the book; heavy figures to the Appendix.)

A

Ablative, absolute, 397, 398; agent, 305, 306; accompaniment, 641, 642; accordance, 456, 2; cause, 610, 611; certain deponent verbs, 634, 635; comparison, 617, 618; description, 648, 649; manner, 626, 627; measure of difference, 619, 620; means, 312, 313; place from which, 467, 468; place in which, 475, 476; separation, 608, 609; specification, 655, 656; time, 319, 320; with prepositions, 113

absum, 78

Accent, 10-12, **10-12**

Accusative, extent, 326, 327; object, 32; to which, 459, 460; subject, 520, 521; with prepositions, 113

Active, *see* Voices

ad, expressing purpose, 733, 740

Adjectives, **declension of**, first and second declension, 61, **63**; in **-er**, 67, 85, **31**; third declension, 103, **33-38**; comparatives, 111, **34**; with genitive in **-īus**, 283, 284, **32**

comparison; 566, 567, 573-575, **39-45**

demonstrative, 134, 135, 142; **interrogative**, 154; **numeral**, 707, 708, **47-50**

possessive, 648, **53**

Use of; agreement, 63; with dative, 545, 546

Adjective pronouns, 63

Adverbs, formation and comparison of, 583, **46**; comparison of irregular adverbs, 589; numerals, **47**

Adversative clauses, *see* Clauses

Agreement, adjectives, 63; appositive and predicate noun, 85; verb, 34

aliquis, **52**

Alphabet, 1

Answers, 595, *d*

Antecedent, 152

Appositive, 85

atque, = *as*, note Ch. **28**, **16**

B

Base, 18, 40, 45, 290, 297

bōs, **27**

C

Caesar, page 14

Calends, 541, *5*

Cardinal numbers, 707, 708, **48**

Case endings, 19

Cases, 14; with prepositions, 113, 114

See also **nominative, genitive**, etc.

causā, 685

Causal clauses, *see* Clauses

Cause, *see* Ablative, and Clauses

Characterizing *or* characteristic clauses, *see* Clauses

Clauses,

subordinate: after verbs of fearing, 429, 430; causal, 691, 692, 693, 694; conditional, 759-764; (substantive of) desire (purpose), 558, *4*; indirect discourse, 520-522, 751, 752; indirect questions, 369, 370; (of) purpose, 413, 414; result (fact), 436, 437; temporal, 700, 701

coepī, **86**

Commands, 672-674

Comparative adjectives, meaning of, 583

Comparison, of adjectives, 111, 566, 567, 573-575, **39-45**; of adverbs, 583, 589; **46**

Complementary infinitive, 507

complūrēs, 576

Conclusions, *see* Conditional sentences

Conditional sentences, 759-764

Conjugations, 25, **63**;

first, 25, 30, 167, 188, 198, 243, 245, 263, 340, 356, 377, 388, 421, 443, 668, **67**;

second, 46, 167, 189, 198, 243, 245, 263, 341, 357, 377, 388, 422, 443, 669, **68**;

third, 118, 178, 209, 243, 245, 263, 348, 358, 377, 388, 422, 443, 669, **69**;

third in **iō**, 124, 180, 211, 243, 245, 263, 350, 360, 377, 388, 422, 443, 669, **71**;

fourth, 123, 179, 210, 243, 245, 263, 349, 359, 377, 388, 422, 443, 669, **70**;

periphrastic, 721-725, **75, 76**

Consonants, 6

Contingent futurity, *see* Subjunctive
Coordinate clauses, *see* Clauses
cum, conjunction, 205, 694; causal, 693, 694; temporal, 700, 701
cum, preposition, 552, *c*

D

Dative, agent, 726, 727; indirect object, 53; with intransitive verbs, 536, 537; with compound verbs, 536, 537; of purpose, 543, 544; of separation, note on, Ch. 17, 8; two datives (double dative), 543, *c*, with adjectives, 545, 546
Declarative sentences, *see* Statements
Declension: of nouns, 15, 14; first declension, 16, 17, 15; second declension, 40, 45, 51, 16; third declension, 77, 90, 17-28; fourth declension, 270, 29; fifth declension, 297, 30; declension of adjectives, 61; first and second declension, 55, 31; ending in **-er**, 67, 31; with genitive in **-ius**, 283, 284, 32; third declension, 103, 33-38; comparatives, 111, 34
Defective verbs, *see* Verbs
Demonstrative adjectives, 134, 135, 142, 54-58
Dependent clauses, *see* Clauses
Deponent, *see* Verbs
Descriptive cases, *see* genitive and ablative *under* Cases
Desire, subjunctive of, *see* Subjunctive; substantive clauses of, *see* Clauses
deus, 16
diēs, 30, *a*
Diphthongs, 5, 5
Distributives, 707, 708, 47
dō, 52, end; 85
domus, declension of, 392, 29, *d*; syntax of, 460, 468, 476
doubting, expressions of, note on Ch. 17, 8
dum, 571, *2*
duo, 505, 49

E

ego, 552, 51
Enclitics, 12, 12
Endings, personal, active, 30, 225; passive, 190
eō, verb, 446, 84
Exhortations, 672, *a*

F

Fact, clauses of, *see* Clauses
fearing, expressions of, 429, 430
Feminine, *see* Gender
ferō, 714, 81
fīō, 633, 83
Future, *see* Tenses
Future perfect, *see* Tenses

G

Gender, 57-60, 98, 291, 298, 13, *and see* rules under each declension
Generalizing, relative, 60, *a*
Genitive, attributive, 35; descriptive (of description or quality), 648, 649; objective, 498, 499; of measure, 648, *c*; partitive (of the whole), 490, 491; possessive, 488, 489; with nouns, 35
Gerund, 443, 680-685
Gerundive, 680, 682-685

H

Helvetians, page 14
hīc, 134, 54
hindering, verbs of, note on Ch. 17, 6
Historical, infinitive, note on, Ch. 16, 2

I

i, consonant and vowel, 7, 7
i- stems, 90, 24-26, 36-38
idem, 482, 58
ille, 135, 136, *2*
Imperative mood, 667-669
Imperfect, *see* Tenses
Impersonal verbs, 444, 445, 87
in, 114
Indefinite pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Indirect discourse, 522, 751, 752
Indirect object, *see* Dative
Indirect questions, 369, 370
Infinitives, subject of, 507, 521, 522; tenses of, 520; periphrasis for future, note on, Ch. 20, 12; in indirect discourse, 520-522; as subject, 507; historical, note on Ch. 16, 2
Intensive pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Interrogative adjectives, *see* Pronouns
Interrogative particles, 595, *2*
Interrogative pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Interrogative sentences, *see* Questions
ipse, 406, 59
Irregular verbs, 77-85
is, 142, 143, 157 note, 552, 57
iste, 55

J (I consonant)

i, consonant and vowel, 7, 7
Juppiter, 27

K

Kalends, 541, *5*

L

Legion, 550, *11*
Locative, 474

M

Mālō, 560, **82**
Masculine, *see* Gender
Memoranda, 131, **I**
Mile, Roman, 96, 328
Mīlle, mīlia, 96, 328, **48**
Mixed stems, 91, 97, 98
Modes, *see* Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative
Moods, *see* Modes

N

-nam, **61**, *a*
nē, with clauses of purpose, 413, 414, 740; after verbs of fearing, 429, 430; with hortatory (and jussive) subjunctive, 673; with optative subjunctive, 782
nē.....quidem, note on Ch. 16, 5
-ne, 595, *a*
Neuter nouns, rule for declension of, 84; *see* Gender
nisi, 759
nōlī, 672, 673
nōlō, 560, **82**
Nominative, 32
nōnne, 595, *b*
nōs, 552
Noun. predicate, 85
Nouns, irregular, **27**; *see also* Declensions, Gender, Stems
num, 595, *c*
Numerals, 707, 708; **47-50**

O

Object, direct, 33; indirect, 53
Optative subjunctive, 781-782
Ordinal numbers, 707, 708, 47

P

Pace, Roman, 292
Participles, 388; present, 390, **38**; perfect, 264; translation of, 391; agreement of, *see* Adjectives
Passive, *see* Voices
Perfect, *see* Tenses
Perfect stem, *see* Stems
Periphrastic conjugation, active, 721-723, **38**; and *see* Tenses; passive, 723-727, **76**
Personal endings, active, 30, 225; passive, 190
Personal Pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Place, from which, 467, 468; in which, 475, 476; to which, 459, 460.
Pluperfect, *see* Tenses
plūs, 576, **34**, *a*
Possessive adjectives (pronouns), *see* Pronouns
possum, 506, **80**
Potential subjunctive, *see* Subjunctive
potior, 634, 635
Predicate adjectives, 83-85; nouns, **85**
Prepositions, use of, 113; with ablative, 163, 164; verbs compounded with, 536, 537
Present, *see* Tenses
Present stem, *see* Stems
Principal parts, 234-242, **65**
Principal tenses, 371
Prohibitions (negative commands), 672-674
Pronouns, **51-62**; in indirect discourse, 751, *d*
demonstrative, 135, 136, 142, 143, 482, **54-58**
indefinite, 571, *d*
intensive, (ipse) 404-407, **59**
interrogative, 154, **61**
personal, 552, **51**
possessive, including **possessive adjectives**, 553, **53**
reflexive, 404-407, **52**
relative, 149-153, **60**; generalizing, **60**, *a*, *and see* Clauses
Pronunciation, 1-13, **1-12**
propior, 589
prōsum, 79
proximus, 589
Purpose, expressions of, 413, 414, 733

Q

quam, 617, 618; omitted, 618
Quantity, of vowels, 3, **3**; of syllables, 9, **3**
Questions, direct, 595; indirect, 369, 370
quī, relative, 150; indefinite, 571, *5*; interrogative, 154
quia, 692
quicumque, **60**
quidam, **62**
quīlibet, **62**
quis, indefinite, 571, *5*; **62**; interrogative, 154, **61**
quispiam, **62**
quisquam, **62**
quisque, **62**
quisquis, **60**, *a*
quivis, **62**
quod, 692
quoniam, 692

R

Reflexive pronouns, *see* Pronouns
Relative clauses, of purpose, 413, *a*
Relative pronouns, *see* Pronoun
Result, *see* Clauses
Rhetorical question, *see* Questions

S

saying, verbs of, 522
Semi-deponent verbs, note on, Ch. 18, 11, 74
senex, **27**
Sentences, *see* Statements, Questions, Commands, Prohibitions, Wishes; compound, complex

Separation, *see* Dative and Ablative
Sequence of tenses, 371
sī, 759
similis, 567
sīn, 759
Sounds of consonants, 6, **6**; of Diphthongs, 5, **5**; of vowels, 4, **4**
Stems of verbs, **64**, *a*, *b*, *c*
Subject, nominative, 32; accusative, 521, 522
Subjunctive, hortatory, 672-673; jussive, 673; of purpose, 413, 414; of result, 436, 437; of wish (optative), 781-782; with verbs of fearing, 429, 430; with **cum**, casual, 693, 694; with **cum**, temporal, 700, 701
Subordinate clauses, *see* Clauses
Substantive clauses, 558, 4; *and see* Clauses of Desire, Purpose, Result, Fact, **quod**, Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, *under* Clauses
Substantives, *see* Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives used substantively; agreement of, *see* Agreement
suī, suus, 205, 405, 407, **52**
sum, 69, 160, 224, 333, **66**; compounds of, 535, **77-80**
Superlative, meaning of, 583, *3*
Supine, 734-739
Supine Stem, *see* Stems
Syllables, 8, **9**, **8**, **9**

T

Temporal clauses, *see* Clauses
Tenses, sequence of, 371; principal and historical, 371; imperfect, 161, 169; perfect, 225, 226
of subjunctive, sequence of, 371; in indirect discourse, 520
of periphrastic conjugations, indicative, 721, 1, *a*; subjunctive, 721; 1, *d*
of infinitive, 678
Tense signs, 169, 226, 201, 342, 361, 362
Time, expressions of, cases, 320, 327; clauses, 701
trēs, 708, **49**
tū, 552, **51**

U

ūllus, 283
ūnus, 283
ut, 413, 414, 472, *2*; 436, 437
ut non, 437
utinam, 782
ūtor, 635

V

Verbs, **63-87**, *and see* Agreement, Clauses, Gerund, Gerundive, Infinitive, Modes, Participles, Sentences, Supine, Tenses, Voices
compound, 272
defective, **86**
deponent, 420-422, **72**, **73**
impersonal, 444, 445, **87**
irregular, **77-85**
semi-deponent, *see* note on Ch. 18, 10, **74**
vīs, 497, **27**
volō, 560, **82**
vōs, 552, **51**
vowels, 4, **4**

W

Watches of the night, 706
Wishes, 781, 782

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY,
BERKELEY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

Books not returned on time are subject to a fine of 50c per volume after the third day overdue, increasing to $1.00 per volume after the sixth day. Books not in demand may be renewed if application is made before expiration of loan period.

MAY 1 1931

28Sep...

REC'D LD

SEP 17 1956

Taken from Stack
for bdg.

75m-7,'30

YB 41214